

John Heber



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

LaL.Gr.
C3196p.2

Cl. Sem.

PRIMARY LATIN BOOK

CONTAINING

INTRODUCTORY LESSONS AND EXERCISES
IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION,

BASED ON CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES ON THE GALLIC WAR;

WITH

A COMPLETE SYNOPSIS OF ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX.

BY

ADAM CARRUTHERS, B.A.,

Classical Master, Jameson Avenue Collegiate Institute, Toronto;

AND

J. C. ROBERTSON, B.A.,

Head Master, Toronto Junction High School.

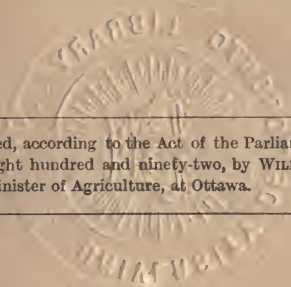
182319
9.7.23.

DEPARTMENTAL
LIBRARY

TORONTO:

WILLIAM BRIGGS.

1892.



Entered, according to the Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand
eight hundred and ninety-two, by WILLIAM BRIGGS, Toronto, in the Office of the
Minister of Agriculture, at Ottawa.

PREFACE.

THIS BOOK, it is hoped, will satisfy in a measure the widespread demand in Ontario for a more suitable text-book in Latin than those which have hitherto been used in our schools, and will furnish the pupil with a better means of acquiring early a reading power in that language, as a necessary foundation for all subsequent scholarship.

In any instance where some departure has been made from the usual methods, the one motive has been to make the work a more practical instrument of training in the hands of the teacher.

The scope of the book is more extended than is usual in Latin text-books, but there are many advantages in having a work which shall contain all that will be required in the ordinary High School course, with the exception of the authors prescribed from year to year.

The order of the lessons has been carefully considered, and the exercises have been so graded that a continuous progress is possible with no sudden increase of difficulty at any one part. Scarcely any words or phrases are employed which are not found in Cæsar, so that the vocabulary the pupil acquires in these lessons is of the same nature as that which he meets in the prose author he reads first in his course.

In the method adopted in Part I., a working compromise between the older system and the so-called inductive method has been followed, avoiding, on the one hand, the monotonous memory

work and almost total absence of inference drawing of the former, and, on the other hand, the very great indefiniteness and the continually and unexpectedly recurring difficulties of the latter ; but the arrangement is such that the teacher is left to do all the real teaching himself, and is free to adopt his own method of reaching the desired goal.

Under the heading **Observation**, all the various points are referred to which are required for the intelligent translation of the exercise which follows, and sufficient help and illustration are given to enable the pupil, under the teacher's guidance, to learn by observation and inference the new usages, etc., which are treated of in the exercise. For instance, in Lesson **XXV.** examples are given of the ablative and the accusative of time—from such examples the pupil can readily, under the direction of the teacher, gain for himself the knowledge required to use these constructions in the accompanying exercise. But if any teacher prefers simply to tell his pupils the rule, and set them to work to memorize and then apply it, he may do so as readily with this work as with any other. It need not be said, however, that the book is intended to suggest and make possible a better way than this.

Many more sentences are given in each exercise than may be found advisable for a single lesson. There will thus be abundance of material for review, for additional practice at difficult points, and for a change in the routine of exercises from year to year. By such a change new work is secured for the teacher, and fresh practice for pupils who are not promoted, while the exercise can be readily suited to the capacity of the students.

The supplementary exercises beginning on page 106 will, it is believed, lend additional interest to the study of the language, and, if introduced at the points suggested, will materially aid in the progress of the pupil in reading connected sentences.

In Part II., which is intended to accompany the reading of *Cæsar*, the most important idioms in Latin are dealt with as far as possible in what is thought to be the order of their importance, this order being varied at times through due regard to the difficulties of the points to be discussed. In the illustrative examples, the English sentence is given first, as the student in Latin prose is not chiefly observing Latin usage, but endeavoring to find some equivalent for the English which he is given to translate; and moreover, by having his attention rest first on the English, he is more likely to catch the exact meaning of the sentence in that tongue, the ignorance of which meaning is often a great drawback to the pupil's progress in writing correct Latin. The lessons dealing with special usages are supplemented by a few exercises in the writing of continuous prose Latin. As these exercises also have for their basis the style and vocabulary of *Cæsar*, the pupil has the same model constantly before him throughout the book, and is more likely to have developed a correct style of writing narrative Latin after the manner of this model than if the vocabulary and sentences had been taken at random from different authors.

Part III. is for reference mainly. The grouping of all the paradigms in one place will be found a great convenience, and the arrangement of the conjugation of the regular verb is specially adapted for the purpose of comparison.

In the paradigms of the verb, no translations of the various forms have been given. These should be learned in the introductory lessons of Part I., and for use as a book of reference the names of the tenses and moods should be sufficient. This will discourage the pernicious habit many students have of being blindly guided, in their translations from or into Latin, by the translation, often necessarily inadequate, given side by side with the conjugation in most Latin grammars and introductory books.

The ordinary translations given for the subjunctive (*e.g.*, *amen*, I may or can love, *amārem*, I might, could or would love) and for the participles are much more misleading than helpful.

The synopsis of accidents and compendium of syntax are sufficiently complete to cover the forms and usages met with in the authors (in both prose and poetry) ordinarily read in High Schools and Collegiate Institutes. Throughout Parts II. and III., the more essential matter is as a rule distinguished from the less essential by the use of different types.

In the exercises, examples and vocabularies, the quantity of all vowels long by nature has been marked. This will be found especially convenient in using the Roman method of pronunciation.

In order to make the book a complete manual of reference for High School work in Latin, a few sections have been added on the metre of Virgil.

Thanks are due for valuable hints and suggestions which have been received from Mr. L. E. Embree, M.A., Principal of Jameson Avenue Collegiate Institute, Toronto, and from Mr. I. M. Levan, B.A., Principal of Owen Sound Collegiate Institute.

J. C. ROBERTSON.

TORONTO, 1892.

A. CARRUTHERS.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
PART I.—Introductory Lessons and Exercises	1
PART II.—Rules of Syntax and Exercises in Prose Composition	115
PART III.—Accidence, Compendium of Syntax and Vocabularies	218

PART I.

INTRODUCTORY LESSONS AND EXERCISES.

LESSON

Introductory.—Pronunciation, Syllabication, Accent.	1
I. Present Indicative Active of Conjugations I. and II.	3
II. Nominative Singular and Plural of Declensions I. and II.	5
III. Accusative Singular and Plural of Declensions I. and II.	6
IV. Genitive Singular and Plural of Declensions I. and II.	7
V. Dative Singular and Plural of Declensions I. and II. <i>Ad</i> with Accusative	8
VI. Imperfect Indicative Active of Conjugations I. and II.	10
VII. Ablative Singular and Plural of Declensions I. and II. <i>Cum, in, ā, ab,</i> with Ablative	11
VIII. Vocative Singular and Plural of Declensions I. and II. Nouns in <i>er</i> and <i>ir</i> of Declension II. Use of <i>-que</i>	13
IX. Nouns in <i>um</i> of Declension II. Gender	15
X. Adjectives of Declensions I. and II.	16

LESSON	PAGE
XI. Future Indicative Active of Conjugations I. and II.	18
XII. Masculine and Feminine Nouns of Declension III.	19
XIII. Perfect Indicative Active of all Conjugations	20
XIV. Neuter Nouns of Declension III.	22
XV. Pluperfect Indicative Active of all Conjugations	24
XVI. Prepositions, <i>ā, ab, ad, cum, dē, cē, in, inter, per, post, propter, sine, trans.</i>	25
XVII. Future Perfect Indicative Active of all Conjugations	26
XVIII. Adjectives of Declension III.	28
XIX. Complementary Infinitive (Active Voice)	29
XX. Nouns of Declension IV.	30
XXI. Perfect Indicative Passive of all Conjugations	32
XXII. Ablative of Agent with <i>ā, ab</i>	34
XXIII. Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative Passive of all Conjugations	36
XXIV. Nouns of Declension V. Ordinal Numerals	38
XXV. Ablative of Point of Time. Accusative of Duration of Time	39
XXVI. Nouns of Declension III. with <i>I</i> -stems	40
XXVII. Present, Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive of Conjugations I. and II.	42
XXVIII. Regular Comparison of Adjectives	43
XXIX. Indicative and Present Infinitive of <i>sum</i> . Predicate Adjectives	44
XXX. Dative with Adjectives	45
XXXI. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives	46
XXXII. Present Indicative Active and Passive of Conjugations III. and IV.	48
XXXIII. Adjectives with Genitive in <i>-tus</i>	49
XXXIV. Imperfect and Future Indicative Active and Passive of Conjugations III. and IV.	50
XXXV. Cardinal Numerals	51
XXXVI. Active Periphrastic Conjugation	52

LESSON	PAGE
XXXVII. Use of <i>Mille</i> . Accusative of Extent of Space	53
XXXVIII. Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs	55
XXXIX. Relative Pronoun.	56
XL. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.	58
XLI. Conjunctions <i>quod, dum, ubi, postquam, simul</i> <i>atque, ut</i> , with the Indicative	59
XLII. Personal Pronouns, <i>ego, tū, is</i>	61
XLIII. Dative of Agent with Gerundives	62
XLIV. Reflexive Pronoun, <i>suī</i> . Possessive Pronouns	63
XLV. Perfect Participle Passive	65
XLVI. Verbs in <i>-iō</i> of Conjugation III.	67
XLVII. Demonstrative Pronouns, <i>hic, ille, is</i>	68
XLVIII. Present Participle Active. Present Infinitive Pas- sive	69
XLIX. Demonstrative Pronouns, <i>ipse, īdem</i>	71
L. Ablative Absolute	72
LI. Interrogative Pronouns	74
LII. Adverbs; Formation and Comparison. <i>Quam</i> with Superlative	76
LIII. Deponent Verbs	78
LIV. Ablative of Specification. <i>Quam</i> with Comparative	79
LV. Accusative and Infinitive	81
LVI. Genitive and Ablative of Characteristic	84
LVII. Present and Perfect Infinitive Passive. Infinitives of Deponents. Dative of Purpose	85
LVIII. Ablative of Manner and Accompanying Circum- stances	87
LIX. Present and Imperfect Subjunctive Active. Sub- junctive of Result	88
LX. Pluperfect Subjunctive Active. Subjunctive of <i>sum</i> . <i>Cum</i> with Subjunctive	89
LXI. <i>Possum</i>	91
LXII. Perfect Subjunctive Active. Subjunctive Passive. Subjunctive of Indirect Question	92

LESSON	PAGE
LXIII. <i>Volō, nōlō, mālō</i>	94
LXIV. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Narration	95
LXV. <i>Ferō</i>	97
LXVI. Subjunctive of Purpose	98
LXVII. <i>Eō, fīō</i>	100
LXVIII. Gerund	101
LXIX. Gerundive Construction	102
LXX. Indefinite Pronouns.	104
Supplementary Exercises	106
Review Exercises in Accidence.	110

PART II.

RULES OF SYNTAX AND EXERCISES IN PROSE COMPOSITION.

EXERCISE

- I. **Order of words; concords; accusative and infinitive;** verbs of *promising*, etc.; verbs of *saying* and *thinking* used personally in the passive; phrases such as *certior fierī, spem habēre*, etc.; complementary infinitive; *coepī, volō, jubeō*, etc. 115
- II. **Final clauses with *ut (utī), nē, quī, quō***; verbs of *urging, exhorting, persuading*, etc.; sequence of tenses; *that nobody, that nothing*, etc.; connectives with negative final clauses; verbs with two constructions 123
- III. **Consecutive clauses with *ut (utī)* and *ut nōn***; relative clauses of characteristic; clauses of characteristic after *dignus*, etc.; clauses with *quīn*; sequence of tenses 126
- IV. **Questions direct and indirect or dependent;** how introduced; uses of *nōnne, num* and *-ne*; indirect question found with verbs meaning *learn, tell, see*, etc.; use of the tenses in dependent questions; English abstract nouns frequently expressed in Latin by dependent clauses 129

EXERCISE	PAGE
V. Ablative absolute and its commonest equivalents; how best translated; ablative absolute with <i>nisi</i> ; when ablative absolute not used; position of the ablative absolute; clauses with <i>cum</i> , <i>dum</i> , <i>postquam</i> and <i>ubi</i>	131
VI. Verbs with the dative; <i>pāreō</i> , <i>imperō</i> , etc.; dative with compounds; impersonal use of such verbs when used in the passive; different uses of <i>imperō</i> , <i>cōsulō</i> , etc.; dative does not represent <i>to</i> after a verb of motion	135
VII. Verbs with the genitive; <i>misereor</i> , <i>meminī</i> , <i>oblīviscor</i> , etc.; <i>interest</i> and <i>rēfert</i> ; <i>recordor</i> and <i>meminī</i> with the accusative; verbs with the ablative; <i>ūtor</i> , <i>fruor</i> , etc.; verbs of plenty and want; <i>potior</i> , <i>egeō</i> , <i>vacō</i>	138
VIII. Verbs with two cases; accusative and genitive; accusative and dative; two accusatives; accusative and ablative; two datives; two datives in connection with accusative; <i>ūtor</i> , <i>interdicō</i>	140
IX. Conditional clauses; distinction of conditions into (1) present or past, (2) future; present conditions contrary to the fact and otherwise; past conditions contrary to the fact and otherwise; future conditions in the more vivid, and in the less vivid form; English present represents future or future perfect in Latin; irregularities with regard to mood and tense; <i>possum</i> , <i>dēbeō</i> , etc.; alternative conditions; conditional sentences in indirect narration	143
X. Clauses of concession; <i>etsī</i> , <i>etiāmsī</i> , <i>tametsī</i> , <i>quamquam</i> ; <i>quamvis</i> , <i>cum</i> , <i>licet</i> , <i>ut</i> ; <i>quamvis</i> and <i>nisi</i> joined with single words	147
XI. Uses of the accusative; object of verb or preposition; subject of infinitive; duration of time and extent of space; limit of motion; in expressing place <i>to which</i> , several phrases taken closely with the verb; accusative with verbs of the senses and feelings; intransitive verbs compounded with prepositions; cognate accusative; accusative of reference; accusative in exclamations; verbs with two accusatives.	148
XII. Uses of the dative; indirect object; dative of interest; dative of service or purpose; dative of interest with adjectives; dative of possession; attraction of dative	

EXERCISE	PAGE
with <i>nōmen est</i> ; dative with compounds of <i>sum</i> ; dative of apparent agent; dative of reference; ethical dative; dative with verbs	151
XIII. Uses of the genitive ; possessive genitive; subjective genitive; objective genitive; partitive genitive; when partitive genitive not used; genitive of character- istic; genitive of definition; objective genitive with adjectives; genitive of respect; predicate genitive; omission of governing word; extensive use of objec- tive genitive; verbs with genitive	154
XIV. Uses of the ablative ; <i>ablative proper</i> ; source, separa- tion and cause; place from which; ablative with comparatives; use of <i>plūs, minus</i> , etc.; <i>instrumental ablative</i> ; means, manner, accompaniment and char- acteristic; difference between the genitive and the ablative of characteristic; price and value; degree of difference; ablative of specification; <i>locative abla- tive</i> ; place in which; pregnant construction; time when; ablative absolute; ablative with <i>dignus</i> , etc., and with adjectives of plenty and want; verbs with the ablative; agency, how expressed; in expressing place <i>from which</i> , several phrases taken closely with the verb	158
XV. Verbal nouns; infinitive ; historical infinitive; verb peculiarities of infinitive; gerund , how used; with pronouns, sometimes used as a pure substantive; supine in <i>-um</i> , how used; supine in <i>-ū</i> , how used	163
XVI. Verbal adjectives; the gerundive ; general distinc- tion as regards use between gerund and gerundive; gerundive of deponents; passive periphrastic conju- gation; intransitive verbs used impersonally; pre- dicative use of gerundive with <i>dō, trādō</i> , etc.; participles ; present; perfect; future; chief uses of participles	166
XVII. Expressions of command ; imperative and substi- tutes; prohibition, how expressed; independent uses of the subjunctive ; hortative or jussive sub- junctive; potential subjunctive; subjunctive in dubi- tative and rhetorical questions; <i>nē</i> the proper nega- tive; <i>nēve</i> or <i>neu</i> the usual connective; indicative in certain expressions	170
XVIII. Verbs of fearing, hindering, doubting, objecting ; construction with verbs of <i>fearing</i> ; when <i>ut</i> (<i>nē nōn</i>) used, when <i>nē</i> ; <i>vereor</i> as a modal verb; construction	

EXERCISE	PAGE
with verbs of <i>hindering</i> , etc.; common expressions with <i>quān</i> ; with <i>quōminus</i> ; verbs with different constructions	172
XIX. Duty, necessity, possibility, permission ; three ways of expressing duty or obligation; necessity expressed by gerundive or by <i>necesse est</i> ; permission expressed by <i>licet</i> ; different values of <i>should</i>	174
XX. Uses of quod, quoniam and cum ; <i>quod</i> with indicative; <i>quod</i> with subjunctive; <i>quoniam</i> ; <i>cum</i> , causal or concessive; <i>cum</i> (<i>when, whenever</i>) with primary tenses; <i>cum</i> (<i>when</i>), with historical tenses; cases in which <i>cum</i> (<i>when</i>) takes the indicative of historical tenses; <i>cum . . . tum</i>	176
XXI. Uses of dum, dōnec, quoad, antequam, priusquam ; <i>dum</i> in conditional clause; <i>dum, dōnec</i> and <i>quoad</i> meaning <i>as long as</i> ; meaning <i>until</i> ; <i>antequam</i> and <i>priusquam</i> denoting mere priority of time; denoting purpose or a result prevented	180
XXII. Pronouns and pronominal adjectives ; personal pronouns, when expressed; <i>hic</i> ; <i>iste</i> ; <i>ille</i> ; <i>is</i> ; <i>ipse</i> ; <i>alter</i> ; <i>alius</i> ; <i>ceteri</i> ; <i>reliqui</i> ; different words for <i>some</i> , <i>aliquis</i> , <i>sunt qui</i> , <i>nōnnulli</i> , <i>nesciō quis</i> ; different words for <i>any</i> , <i>quisquam</i> (<i>ullus</i>), <i>quis</i> , <i>quivis</i> , <i>quilibet</i> ; <i>quidam</i> ; <i>quisque</i> and <i>uterque</i> ; <i>quis</i> and <i>uter</i> ; idiomatic expressions	182
XXIII. The relative or conjunctive pronoun ; used in final and consecutive clauses; used instead of demonstrative; used to introduce clauses of condition, concession and cause; antecedent omitted; clause forms antecedent; antecedent repeated; antecedent incorporated into relative clause; attraction of relative; <i>as</i> , translated by <i>quī</i> or <i>āc</i> ; use of relative in case of two successive clauses modifying same antecedent; superlative placed in relative clause; relative always expressed in Latin	187
XXIV. Tenses of the indicative ; uses of the present; of the imperfect; of the future; of the perfect; <i>habeo</i> with perfect participle passive; <i>meminī</i> , <i>nōvī</i> , <i>cōnsuēvī</i> , etc.; uses of the pluperfect; imperfect and pluperfect in letters; uses of the future perfect	190
XXV. Different forms of the noun clause ; definition of noun clause; accusative and infinitive, subject, object, appositive; clauses with <i>ut</i> , <i>nē</i> , <i>quān</i> , <i>quōminus</i> ; clauses involving notion of purpose, sub-	

EXERCISE	PAGE
ject, object, appositive; of result, subject, object, appositive; <i>quod</i> clauses, subject, object, appositive; dependent questions, subject, object, appositive; verbs with more than one construction	194
XXVI. Indirect narration — <i>ōrātiō obliqua</i> ; difference between direct and indirect discourse; rules for changing direct into indirect narration; verbs; pronouns; adverbs; exceptions to these rules; informal indirect narration; indirect statement; indirect command; indirect question: examples illustrating rules; subjunctive due to attraction	199
XXVII. Roman mode of reckoning time ; Calends; Ides; Nones; contracted forms; leap year; dates in the Christian era	207
XXVIII. Exercises for continuous translation ; figurative language; examples illustrating different modes of expression; <i>quasi</i> -idioms; different modes of viewing the action; in Latin the verb the significant word, in English the noun, examples illustrating this; use of abstract nouns not so common in Latin as in English; a clause often used instead; precise meaning of the English word should be noted; periodic construction in Latin; connection of clauses and sentences in Latin; Exercises 28, 29, 30, 31, 32 and 33	210

PART III.

ACCIDENCE, COMPENDIUM OF SYNTAX, AND VOCABULARIES

I. PARADIGMS OF INFLECTION.

SECTION	PAGE
1- 9. The Noun	218
10-16. The Adjective (Declension, Comparison, Numerals)	223
17. The Adverb.	229
18-26. The Pronoun.	229
27-40. The Verb (Regular Conjugation).	234
41-46. The Verb (Irregular Conjugation)	246

II. SYNOPSIS OF ACCIDENCE.

SECTION	PAGE
47-54. Nouns	252
55-58. Adjectives	258
59. Adverbs	261
60-63. Pronouns	262
64-72. Verbs	265
73. Prepositions	272
74. Conjunctions	272
75-76. Derivatives and Compounds	273

III. COMPENDIUM OF SYNTAX.

77. Apposition	276
78. Attributive Words	276
79. The Predicate	276
80-86. The use of the Cases	277
87. The use of the Prepositions.	286
88. The use of Adjectives	288
89-95. The use of the Pronouns	288
96. The Active and Passive Voices	292
97-99. The Indicative and Subjunctive	293
100. The Imperative	297
101. The Infinitive	298
102. The Participle	299
103. The Gerund	300
104. The Gerundive	300
105. The Supine	301
106. General Rules of <i>Ōrātiō Obliqua</i>	301
107. Sequence of Tenses	302
108. Adverbs	303
109. Conjunctions	303
110. Order of Words	304
111-119. Metre. Dactylic Hexameter	305
Latin-English Vocabulary	313
English-Latin Vocabulary	324
Index	344

PRIMARY LATIN BOOK.

PART I.

INTRODUCTORY LESSONS AND EXERCISES.

PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.

I. SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.¹

Vowels.²

ă	is sounded like the first <i>a</i> in <i>aha, papa.</i>
ā	" " second <i>a</i> in <i>aha, papa.</i>
ĕ	" " <i>e</i> in <i>met.</i>
ē	" " <i>e</i> in <i>they.</i>
ĭ	" " <i>i</i> in <i>sit.</i>
ī	" " <i>i</i> in <i>machine.</i>
ŏ	" " <i>o</i> in <i>obey, or the first o in oho.</i>
ō	" " <i>o</i> in <i>holy, or the second o in oho.</i>
ŭ	" " <i>u</i> in <i>put, or oo in foot.</i>
ū	" " <i>oo</i> in <i>boot.</i>

1. The method of pronouncing Latin given above is called the Roman method. The English method is as follows:

The vowels are sounded as in English (long *u* having the sound of *you*), but long vowels are often sounded as short, especially in final syllables, and before two consonants (e.g., *mēnsis* as *mēnsis*); and short vowels are often sounded as long, especially before another vowel (or *h*), and before a single consonant, either in the first syllable of dissyllabic words, or in the unaccented syllables of other words (e.g., *nihil* as *nihil*, *sine* as *sine*, *popŭlus* as *popŭlus*).

The diphthongs are sounded as follows: *ae* and *oe* as *ee*; *au* as *aw*; *eu* as *you*; *ei* and *ui* as *eye*.

The consonants are sounded as in English: *c* and *g* as *s* and *j* before *e* and *i* sounds, otherwise as *k* and *g* hard; *s* like *z* at the end of a word, and occasionally in other cases through the influence of English (e.g., *causa*); *t* and *c* before *i* (unless preceded by *s*, *t* or *x*), as *sh*.

2. Vowels before *ns*, *nf*, *gn* and *j*, are regularly long.

Diphthongs.

In diphthongs both vowels should be sounded in their proper order.

ae	is sounded much like the	ai	in	<i>pain</i> . ¹
au	"	"	"	<i>ou</i> in <i>our, house</i> .
oe	"	"	"	<i>wa</i> in <i>wade</i> . ¹
ei	"	"	"	<i>ei</i> in <i>vein</i> .
eu	"	"	"	<i>ew</i> in <i>blew</i> .
ui	"	"	"	<i>we</i> in <i>weep</i> .

Consonants.

Consonants are for the most part pronounced as in English, with the following exceptions :

c	is always sounded as in	<i>come</i> ,	never as in	<i>cent</i> .
g	"	"	in	<i>game</i> , " " <i>gem</i> .
s	"	"	in	<i>this</i> , " " <i>his</i> .
t	"	"	in	<i>native</i> , " " <i>nation</i> .
x	"	"	in	<i>axe</i> , " " <i>exact</i> .
j	"	"	<i>y</i>	in <i>yet</i> .
v	"	"	<i>w</i>	in <i>want</i> .

n before c, g, qu, x, is sounded as ng, or as n in *ankle*.

II. SYLLABICATION.

In the following list the words in parentheses are English words to be contrasted with the Latin; in other cases the Latin and the English words to be contrasted have the same spelling, the quantity of the Latin words being marked.²

Diē, *salvē*, *mīles*, *parēs*, *māne*, *cāre*, *honor*, *comes*, *cōnsūmēs*, *palma* (*palm*), *aliēnus* (*alien*), *resistō* (*resist*), *possēssiō* (*possess, possession*), *condemnō* (*condemn*), *legiōnis* (*legion*), *festinō* (*hasten*), *nūptiālis* (*nuptial*), *auctiō* (*auction*), *dēsertor* (*deserter*), *scēna* (*scene*), *rēgnum* (*reigning*).

1. It is held by some that *ae* is sounded like *ai* in *aisle*, and *oe* like *oi* in *coin*.

2. Throughout this book, all long vowels are indicated, except in footnotes; vowels not marked are accordingly to be regarded as short.

Observation.—What can be learned from the foregoing examples, (a) of silent letters in Latin, (b) of the number of syllables in each Latin word, (c) of the number of sounds represented by each letter in Latin.¹

III. ACCENT.

(a) mo'-vēs	rī'-pa	tē'-lō	va'da
an'-nus	ī'-ter	ser'-vō	cōn'-sul

Observation.—How are words of two syllables accented?

(b) spē-rā'-mus	sa-lū'-tem	ge'-ne-ra	cī'-vi-tās
vec-tī-gā'-ll	re-dūx'-it	hī'-c-mēs	ī-dō'-ne-us
cōn-sēn'-sus	po-ten'-tēs	cōn-sēn'-sc-rās	re'-li-qui

Observation.—How are words of more than two syllables accented, (a) when the vowel of the second last syllable is long or precedes two consonants; (b) when the vowel of the second last syllable is short and does not precede two consonants?²

LESSON I.

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| (a) Oppūgnāmus, we attack. | Jubēmus, we order. |
| Vulnerāmus, we wound. | Removēmus, we remove. |
| Convocāmus, we call together. | Obtinēmus, we occupy. |
| (b) Oppūgnant, they attack. | Jubent, they order. |
| Vulnerant, they wound. | Removent, they remove. |
| (c) Vulnerat, he, she or it,
wounds. | Obtinet, he, she or it, occupies. |
| Convocās, you call together. | Removēs, you remove. |
- (When speaking to one person.)

1. Every letter in a Latin word should be sounded, and given always the same sound, except in the case of the vowels, which have each two sounds, a long and a short.

In dividing Latin words into syllables, place at the beginning of each syllable all the consonants which, with the following vowel or diphthong, could be pronounced at the beginning of a word; e.g., *a-sper, ser-vo, mit-to*. In compounds, however, the several parts are kept distinct; e.g., *ab-est*, not *a-best*.

2. Two exceptions should be noted: (i.) When the two consonants consist of *r* (or *l*) preceded by a different consonant, the word is accented as though there were but one consonant; e.g., *arbitror, multiplex*, but *impulsus, vexillum, adverto, incurro*, according to the general rule. (ii.) *x* is treated as a double consonant; e.g., *contexto*.

(The second last syllable is called the *penult*, the third last the *antepenult*.)

Convocātis, you call together. **Removētis**, you remove.

(When speaking to more than one person.)

(d) **Vulnerō**, I wound.

Jubeō, I order.

Oppugnō, I attack.

Obtineō, I occupy.

Observation.—How does Latin express the persons *we*, *they*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *you* and *I*, as subjects of the verb? What two classes of verb are represented? What irregularity is there in joining the personal endings to the first part?¹

EXERCISE I.

Vocabulary.

(*āre* and *ēre* are used to indicate *-ā* and *-ē*² verbs respectively.)

Adequitō, *āre*, ride up.

Oppugnō, *āre*, attack.

Convocō, *āre*, summon, call together.

Pāreō, *ēre*, be obedient.

Parō, *āre*, prepare, procure.

Habeō, *ēre*, have.

Permoveō, *ēre*, alarm.

Imperō, *āre*, give orders.

Properō, *āre*, hasten.

Jubeō, *ēre*, order.

Removeō, *ēre*, remove.

Nāvigō, *āre*, sail.

Teneō, *ēre*, hold.

Obtineō, *ēre*, occupy.

Vulnerō, *āre*, wound.

I.—1. *Permovēs*. 2. *Tenēmus*. 3. *Convocant*. 4. *Parātis*. 5. *Imperāmus*. 6. *Jubet*. 7. *Pārēmus*. 8. *Vulnerant*. 9. *Habeō*. 10. *Jubētis*. 11. *Tenet*. 12. *Adequitant*. 13. *Removet*. 14. *Properō*. 15. *Oppūgnātis*. 16. *Obtinēs*.

II.—1. They hasten. 2. He sails. 3. I hold. 4. You (*singular*) order. 5. You (*plural*) have. 6. We prepare. 7. She has. 8. I occupy. 9. He wounds. 10. It alarms. 11. They remove. 12. She is obedient. 13. We give orders. 14. You (*plural*) alarm. 15. They attack. 16. You (*singular*) ride up.

1. CAUTION.—It must not be supposed that the ending is *-amus* or *-ant*, *-emus* or *-ent*. Instead, the same endings, *-mus*, *-nt*, etc., are added to forms (representing verbal ideas) which differ in that in some cases the final letter is *a*, in others *e*. (It will be seen later that other final letters are found in the first part.) The only difference between these *a* and *e* verbs is that, before the personal ending *o*, a final *a* is dropped, while a final *e* is retained.

2. These *-a* and *-e* verbs are generally called verbs of the first and second conjugations respectively. There are in all four conjugations, or divisions of verbs according to form.

LESSON II.

- (a) **Vulnerāmus,** *we wound or we are wounding.*
Jubent, *they order or they are ordering.*
Oppūgnat, *he attacks or he is attacking.*

Observation.—The twofold translation of each form, and the point of time referred to.

- (b) **Rōmānus,** *a Roman.* **Rōmāni,** *the Romans.*
Nauta, *the sailor.* **Nautae,** *the sailors.*
Lēgātus convocat, *a lieutenant calls together.*
Lēgātī jubent, *the lieutenants order.*
Victōria permovet, *the victory alarms.*
Victōriae permovent, *victories alarm.*

Observation.—How is the plural of nouns ending in *us* and *a* formed? How are *a* and *the* expressed in Latin? The personal endings, *-t* and *-nt*, retained even when a noun is the subject, and when English does not use *he* or *they*.

EXERCISE II.

Vocabulary.

- | | |
|--|--|
| Barbarus, I, m., <i>barbarian.</i> | Gallus, I, m., <i>Gaul</i> (a native of the country called Gaul). |
| Belga, ae, m., <i>Belgian</i> (one of a tribe in Gaul). | Lēgātus, I, m., <i>lieutenant.</i> |
| Cōpia, ae, f. (in singular), <i>sup- ply, abundance, plenty</i> ; (in plural), <i>forces, troops.</i> | Nauta, ae, m., <i>sailor.</i> |
| Expectō, āre, <i>await.</i> | Nūntiō, āre, <i>announce.</i> |
| Fuga, ae, f., <i>flight.</i> | Rōmānus, I, m., <i>Roman.</i> |
| Germānus, I, m., <i>German.</i> | Socius, I, m., <i>ally.</i> |
| | Turma, ae, f. <i>squadron.</i> |
| | Victōria, ae, f., <i>victory.</i> |

I.—1. Lēgātus adequitat. 2. Fuga permovet. 3. Rōmānī expectant. 4. Nautae properant. 5. Nūntiāmus. 6. Socii obtinent. 7. Barbari adequitant. 8. Germānus vulnerat. 9. Turmae oppūgnant. 10. Belgae obtinent. 11. Expectātis. 12. Jubēs. 13. Germānī habent. 14. Cōpiae oppūgnant. 15. Victōriae permovent. 16. Nauta habet.

II.—1. We are awaiting. 2. They are removing. 3. He is holding. 4. The squadrons ride up. 5. The victory alarms. 6. The allies summon. 7. The lieutenant is sailing. 8. The sailor removes. 9. You are preparing. 10. The Belgians have. 11. The forces occupy. 12. The Roman is ordering. 13. We are obedient. 14. The lieutenant is giving orders. 15. The Gauls occupy. 16. The barbarians are attacking.

LESSON III.

Victōria Rōmānōs permovet, *the victory alarms the Romans.*
Lēgātus victōriam nūntiat, *the lieutenant announces the victory.*
Cōpiāe lēgātum exspectant, *the forces are awaiting the lieutenant.*
Rōmāni cōpiās exspectant, *the Romans are awaiting the forces.*

Observation.—What different forms have nouns in *us* and *a*, in the singular and the plural, when they are used as the subject, and when they are used as the object of the verb?¹ How does the order of the Latin sentences differ from that of the English?²

EXERCISE III.

Vocabulary.

Animus, I, m., <i>spirit, mind,</i>	Nūntius, I, m., <i>messenger, mes-</i>
<i>heart.</i>	<i>sage.</i>
Captivus, I, m., <i>captive.</i>	Perturbō, āre, <i>throw into con-</i>
Comportō, āre, <i>bring in.</i>	<i>fusion, disturb.</i>
Cōfirmō, āre, <i>encourage, estab-</i>	Præda, æ, f., <i>plunder.</i>
<i>lish, arouse.</i>	Prōvincia, æ, f., <i>province.</i>
Equus, I, m., <i>horse.</i>	Pūgnō, āre, <i>fight.</i>
Et, and.	Servus, I, m., <i>slave.</i>
Labiēnus, I, m., <i>Labiennus (a</i>	Superō, āre, <i>conquer, prevail.</i>
<i>Roman's name).</i>	Tribūnus, I, m., <i>tribune (a</i>
Locus, I, m., <i>place, position,</i>	<i>military officer among the</i>
<i>ground.</i>	<i>Romans).</i>

1. The form used as the subject is called the *Nominative Case*, that used as the object the *Accusative Case*.

2. It must not be supposed that this order is invariable in Latin, but it should be retained by the beginner until he has learned something of the causes (or at least, some of the cases) of variation from the general rule. This applies to all other general rules of order, to which attention may be directed.

I.—1. Cōpiās superat. 2. Praedam comportāmus. 3. Rōmānī locum obtinent. 4. Labiēnus equōs removet. 5. Lēgātōs et tribūnōs convocās. 6. Victōriae animōs cōfirmant. 7. Servi pūgnant. 8. Nūntium exspectat. 9. Captīvōs habētis. 10. Belgae Gallōs superant. 11. Barbarī Rōmānōs et sociōs perturbant. 12. Belgās permovet. 13. Cōpiam habeō. 14. Turma cōpiās perturbat. 15. Victōriam nūntiās. 16. Nautae lēgātum exspectant.

II.—1. The slaves are wounding the messenger. 2. The forces occupy the province. 3. The Germans conquer the Gauls. 4. The lieutenant conquers the Germans' and the Belgians. 5. The tribunes await the allies. 6. You attack the place. 7. It arouses the spirit. 8. The flight alarms the barbarians. 9. The sailor announces the flight. 10. I am summoning the lieutenants. 11. The forces are awaiting the squadrons. 12. They have plenty. 13. It disturbs the hearts. 14. You (*plural*) are fighting. 15. The sailors prevail. 16. The captive is obedient.

LESSON IV.

Equōs lēgātōrum removet, *he removes the horses of the lieutenants.*

Sociōs Belgārum exspectat, *he awaits the allies of the Belgians.*

Fuga turmae animum lēgātī permovet, *the flight of the squadron alarms the mind of the lieutenant.*

Equum lēgātī removet, *he removes the lieutenant's horse.*

Observation.—How is *of* expressed in Latin? What is the position of the word translated by means of *of*, or by the English possessive?¹

EXERCISE IV.

Vocabulary.

Aeduns, I, m., *an Aeduan*; in **Contineō**, ēre, *hem in, restrain.*
 plural, *the Aedui* (a tribe in **Cotta**, ae, m., *Cotta* (a Roman's
 Gaul). name).

Cibus, I, m., *food.*

Dō, arc, *give, grant.*

Conciliō, āre, *win over.*

Filius, I, m., *son.*

1. This form is known as the *Genitive Case*,

Galba, ae, m., <i>Galba</i> (a Roman's name).	Occupō, āre, <i>seize.</i>
Inopia, ae, f., <i>want, scarcity.</i>	Porta, ae, f., <i>gate.</i>
Nātūra, ae, f., <i>nature.</i>	Probō, āre, <i>favor.</i>
Obsideō, ěrc, <i>blockade, beset.</i>	Sententia, ae, f., <i>opinion.</i>
	Via, ae, f., <i>road.</i>

I.—1. Rōmānī cōpiās Germānōrum superant. 2. Sententiam Cottae probāmus. 3. Sententia Labiēnī superat. 4. Inopia cibī Belgās perturbat. 5. Equum Galbae vulnerat. 6. Sociī Belgārum locum oppūgnant. 7. Nātūra locī Aeduōs continet. 8. Aeduī portās occupant. 9. Victōriae cōpiārum animōs sociōrum cōfirmant. 10. Barbarī cōpiās parant. 11. Cōpia Belgārum locum obsident. 12. Labiēnus cōpiam captivōrum habet. 13. Fuga turmārum Belgās permovet. 14. Equōs lēgātōrum removet. 15. Victōriam lēgātī nūntiat.

II.—1. We are removing the horse of the lieutenant. 2. The allies of the Aedui give food. 3. Galba's sons procure horses. 4. The victory of Galba arouses the Belgians' spirit. 5. The forces of the allies beset the roads. 6. The tribune's son has plenty of horses. 7. You are wounding the sons of Cotta and Labienus. 8. The lieutenant wins over the Belgians. 9. The Belgians are awaiting the forces of the Gauls. 10. A squadron rides up. 11. They favor the place. 12. The tribunes and the lieutenants restrain the forces. 13. We favor the opinions of the lieutenants and the tribunes. 14. Galba procures forces.

LESSON V.

(a) Lēgātō victōriam nūntiat,	<i>he announces the victory to the lieutenant.</i>
Prōvinciae imperat,	<i>he gives orders to the province.</i>
Cōpīs imperat,	<i>he gives orders to the forces.</i>
Sociīs praedam dōnat,	<i>he presents the plunder to the allies.</i>

Observation.—How is *to* before a noun expressed in Latin? What is the position of the word translated by means of *to*?

1. The indirect object (*i.e.*, the word translated by means of *to*) is more frequently placed before than after the direct object of the verb. In most of the sentences which follow, either order may be followed. This form is known as the *Dative Case*.

- (b) **Ad prōvinciam properat,** *he hastens to the province.*
Ad cōpiās adequitat, *he rides up to the forces.*
Ad lēgātōs adequitat, *he rides up to the lieutenants.*
Ad locum lēgātōs convocat, *he summons the lieutenants to the place.*

Observation.—How is *to* before a noun expressed in Latin, when it is used in a phrase implying motion towards a place or person?

EXERCISE V.

Vocabulary.

Agricultūra, ae, f., <i>agriculture,</i> <i>farming.</i>	Pertincō, ēre, <i>extend.</i>
Dōnō, āre, <i>present.</i>	Praestō, āre, <i>be superior.</i>
Ēvocō, āre, <i>challenge.</i>	Pūgna, ae, f., <i>battle, fighting.</i>
Filiā, ae, f., <i>daughter.</i>	Respondeō, ēre, <i>reply.</i>
Ītaliā, ae, f., <i>Italy.</i>	Rhēnus, I, m., <i>the Rhine.</i>
Lēgātus, I, m., <i>ambassador.</i>	Rīpa, ae, f., <i>bank.</i>
Māteria, ae, f., <i>timber, materials.</i>	Silva, ae, f., <i>wood, forest.</i>
Mūrus, I, m., <i>wall.</i>	Studeō, ēre, <i>pay attention.</i>
	Venia, ae, f., <i>pardon.</i>
	Ventitō, āre, <i>come often.</i>

I.—1. Māteriam ad locum comportant. 2. Aeduī ad prōvinciam ventitant. 3. Aeduīs veniam dat. 4. Cōpiīs praedam dōnat. 5. Gallī Rōmānōs ad pūgnam ēvocant. 6. Germānī Belgīs praestant. 7. Lēgātus ad cōpiās adequitat. 8. Sociī Rōmānōrum agricultūrae student. 9. Aeduīs imperat. 10. Ad Belgās adequitāmus. 11. Silva ad locum pertinet. 12. Belgae Labiēnō respondent. 13. Ad Ītaliā ventitās. 14. Filiam lēgātō dat. 15. Lēgātus Belgās Rōmānīs conciliat.

II.—1. Labienus hastens to the forces. 2. You are superior to the forces of the Belgians. 3. We come often to the provinces. 4. They grant pardon to the captives. 5. The ambassadors win over the allies of the Germans to the Romans. 6. They come often to the walls. 7. The woods extend to the Rhine. 8. I give orders to the province. 9. He announces the victory of the allies to the ambassador. 10. You are obedient to Labienus' son. 11. The squadrons ride up to the barbarians. 12. Labienus replies to the

ambassadors. 13. He challenges the Gaul to battle. 14. The forces of the Germans ride up to the banks of the Rhine. 15. He summons the lieutenants to the province.

LESSON VI.

- (a) **Oppūgnābat,** *he was attacking, or he used to attack.*
Jubēbāmus, *we were ordering, or we used to order.*
Convocābant, *they were summoning, or they used to summon.*
Permōvēbātis, *you (plur.) were alarming, or you used to alarm.*
Vulnerābās, *you (sing.) were wounding, or you used to wound.*
- (b) **Jubēbam,** *I was ordering, or I used to order.*
Convocābam, *I was summoning, or I used to summon.*

Observation.—The new element in the Latin verbs. What idea does this new element express? What new personal ending is used? What point of time is referred to?¹

EXERCISE VI.

Vocabulary.

Compleō, ēre, <i>fill up, fill.</i>	Hiemō, āre, <i>pass the winter,</i>
Firmō, āre, <i>strengthen.</i>	<i>winter.</i>
Fossa, ae, f., <i>trench, moat.</i>	Impetrō, āre, <i>obtain one's² request.</i>
Funda, ae, f., <i>sling.</i>	Prōvocō, āre, <i>call out, challenge.</i>
Gallia, ae, f., <i>Gaul (the country now called France).</i>	Remaneō, ēre, <i>remain.</i>
Gladius, i, m., <i>sword.</i>	Revocō, āre, <i>recall.</i>

I.—1. Exspectābāmus. 2. Oppūgnābant. 3. Complēbat. 4. Habētis. 5. Studēbam. 6. Perturbant. 7. Removēbat. 8. Hiemābant. 9. Fossās complēbant. 10. Gladium nautae dabātis. 11. Ad Galliam ventitābātis. 12. Remanēmus. 13. Rōmānōs ad pūgnam ēvocābant. 14. Impetrātis. 15. Fundam habeō. 16. Locum firmābant.

1. Notice that where *was* or *were* are used to translate these forms, containing the letters *-ba*, the English verb will end in *-ing*. (The translation by the simple past tense of English should not even be referred to until the student is much further advanced.)

2. Put *his, her, their, my, our, your*, in place of *one's*, as the context suggests.

II.—1. They were recalling. 2. He used to pass the winter. 3. She was awaiting. 4. I was obedient. 5. We used to have. 6. We are filling up the trench. 7. You (*plur.*) were ordering. 8. You (*sing.*) are superior. 9. They were attacking the wall. 10. I was hastening to Italy. 11. He was occupying. 12. He used to favor. 13. They used to have. 14. I remain. 15. She obtains her request. 16. They were strengthening the walls.

LESSON VII.

(a) Lēgātum fundā vulnerat,	he wounds the lieutenant with a sling.
Cum turmā properat,	he hastens with a squadron.
Lēgātum gladiō vulnerat,	he wounds the lieutenant with a sword.
Cum lēgātō adequitat,	he rides up with the lieutenant.
Cum cōpīis hiemat,	he winters with the forces.
Locum mūrīs et fossīs firmat,	he strengthens the place with walls and trenches.
Cum Gallīs pūgnant,	they fight with the Gauls.

Observation.—In what two ways is *with* expressed in Latin? ¹ What corresponding difference is there in the meaning of *with* in English? ²

(b) In Galliā hiemat,	he winters in Gaul.
In locō remanent,	they remain in the place.
Cōpiās ā pūgnā revocat,	he recalls the forces from battle.
Ab Itāliā properat,	he hastens from Italy.
Ab lēgātō et Rōmānīs impetrat,	he obtains his request from the lieutenant and the Romans.

Observation.—How are *in* and *from* expressed in Latin? When is *ab* used in place of *a*? ³

1. These forms are known as the *Ablative Case*.

2. In the last example, notice that *cum*, like the English *with*, is used of one's opponents, rather than of one's allies, with verbs of *fighting*, *contending*, *waging war*, etc. Here also *cum* means *together with*, *in company with*. ("It takes two to make a quarrel.")

3. *A* is never used before vowels.

EXERCISE VII.

Vocabulary.

Circumdō, are, <i>surround.</i>	Pecūnia, ae, f., <i>money.</i>
Collocō, āre, <i>station, place.</i>	Permancō, ēre, <i>persist.</i>
Comparō, āre, <i>raise, collect.</i>	Prohibeō, ēre, <i>restrain.</i>
Contineō, ēre, <i>keep, hem in.</i>	Rāmus, I, m., <i>branch.</i>
Injūria, ae, f., <i>wrong-doing, in-jury, wrong.</i>	Sagitta, ae, f., <i>arrow.</i>
Insidiae, ārum, f. (used in plural only), <i>ambush.</i>	Sollicitō, āre, <i>try to influence.</i>
	Submoveō, ēre, <i>drive off.</i>

I.—1. Lēgātus Aeduōs ab injūriā prohibēbat. 2. Cum cōpiīs in Ītaliā hiemābāmus. 3. Gallī mūrōs cōpiīs complēbant. 4. Belgae locum mūrō et fossā firmant. 5. Silva ab Aeduīs ad Belgās pertinet. 6. Labiēnus cōpiās in insidiīs collocābat. 7. Barbarī fossās rāmīs complent. 8. Cum turmā ad locum properābam. 9. Tribūnum sagittā vulnerās. 10. Captīvī in sententiā permanent. 11. Cōpiās ā pūgnā revocābāmus. 12. Sagittīs et fundīs Aeduōs ā mūrō submovēbant. 13. Cum filiō lēgātī ad Ītaliā nāvigābātis. 14. Barbarī in locō remanēbant. 15. Lēgātī Aeduōrum ā sociīs Germanōrum impetrant. 16. Germānī cum Belgīs pūgnābant. 17. Animōs cōpiārum pecūniā sollicitātis.

II.—1. Forests used to extend from Gaul to Italy. 2. The tribunes were keeping the forces in the woods. 3. He was restraining the allies from battle. 4. The barbarians used to fight with slings. 5. They remain with the lieutenant. 6. The allies were raising forces in Gaul. 7. We were surrounding the place with trenches. 8. Labienus used to winter with the allies. 9. We were sailing from Italy to the province with the lieutenant. 10. The barbarians used to station ambushes in the woods. 11. You were wounding the tribune's son with a sling. 12. She obtains her request from Labienus. 13. You are driving off the Gauls from the place. 14. I was passing the winter with the lieutenant and tribunes in the province. 15. They were trying to influence the allies with money. 16. The slave was fighting with the sailor.

LESSON VIII.

- (a) **In sententiâ, Labiène, per-** you persist in (your) opinion, La-
manès, *bienus.*
Cōpiās, lēgātī, comparāmus, we are raising forces, lieutenants.
Nūntiōs, Belgae, exspec- we are awaiting messengers, Bel-
tāmus, *gians.*
Sententiam, filia, collaudō, (my) daughter, I commend (your)
opinion.

Observation.—What forms of the nouns ending in **us** and **a** are used in speaking to a person? In what position are these forms?¹
 Omission of Latin words meaning *your, my, etc.*²

(b) The student should now turn to Part III., sections 1 and 2, where examples are given of nouns ending in **a** and **us**, in the order in which the cases are usually arranged. To give all the forms of a noun in this order is called *declining* a noun, and the different series of endings are called *Declensions*.

(c) On the same page, section 3, are declined the words **puer**, **ager** and **vir**.

Observation.—How do the endings of these nouns differ from those of nouns ending in **us**? What is the difference between the declension of **puer** and that of **ager**? Notice how the vocabulary, by always giving the genitive case of a noun,³ indicates whether a noun ending in **er** is declined like **puer** or like **ager**.

(d) **Rōmānī et socii,** or **Rōmānī** *the Romans and (their) allies.*

sociique,

Lēgātōs et tribūnōs, or **īē-** *the lieutenants and the tribunes.*

gātōs tribūnōsque,

Mūrum et fossam, or **mūrum** *a wall and trench.*

fossamque,

Observation.—The use and position of **-que**.⁴

1. These forms are in the *Vocative Case*.

2. Latin possesses words meaning *my, our, your, his, her, its* and *their*, but does not use them when it can be readily gathered from the context to whom the thing (or person) spoken of belongs. So in translating from Latin these words have often to be inserted in the English, and until Exercise XLIV. are to be regularly omitted in translating into Latin. For several exercises to come these words are put in parentheses, to indicate their omission.

3. In all vocabularies the genitive of each noun is given, and as no two of the five declensions have the same genitive, this serves to indicate to what declension the noun belongs.

4. When *-que* is added to a word, the accent is shifted to the syllable before *-que*; e.g., *fos'sam*, but *fossam'que*.

EXERCISE VIII.

Vocabulary.

Ager, agrī, m., <i>land, field, territory.</i>	Necō, āre, <i>kill.</i>
Amicitia, ae, f., <i>friendship.</i>	Nōn, <i>not.</i>
Amicus, i, m., <i>friend.</i>	Occultō, āre, <i>conceal.</i>
Arbiter, trī, m., <i>arbitrator.</i>	Puer, erī, m., <i>boy.</i>
Faber, brī, m., <i>workman.</i>	Socer, erī, m., <i>father-in-law.</i>
Gener, erī, m., <i>son-in-law.</i>	Vacō, āre, <i>be unoccupied, lie waste.</i>
Liberī, ōrum, m. (in plural only), <i>children.</i>	Vastō, āre, <i>lay waste.</i>
Mārcus, i, m., <i>Marcus (a man's name).</i>	Vicus, i, m., <i>village.</i>
	Vir, virī, m., <i>man.</i>

I.—1. Agrōs vīcōsque, Aeduī, habētis. 2. Labiēnus fabrōs nautāsque ad Galliam convocat. 3. Cum liberīs ad Rhēnum properant. 4. Gallīs, sociī, arbitrōs dant. 5. Ā lēgātō, Belgae, nōn impetrāmus. 6. Germānī agrōs Belgārum vastābant. 7. Cum Aeduīs, Labiēne, amicitiam cōfirmās. 8. In agrīs Aeduōrum hiemābāmus. 9. Puerōs in silvīs occultant. 10. Socerum lēgātī liberōsque necant. 11. Virum gladiō vulnerant. 12. Cum generīs ad cōpiās adequitat.

II.—1. He grants lands to the son-in-law of the tribune. 2. He grants pardon to the boys. 3. The workmen used to come often to the wall. 4. You used to have friends, Marcus. 5. The lands of the Belgians are unoccupied. 6. The Gauls were establishing friendship with the Belgians. 7. The forces were fighting in the land of the Belgians. 8. The father-in-law of the lieutenant was giving money to the children of (his) friend. 9. They are giving lands to the Germans, lieutenant. 10. The men were fighting with swords, the boys with slings and arrows. 11. The forces of the Belgians are laying waste the land of the Gauls. 12. They were concealing an ambush.

LESSON IX.

(a) In part III., section 3, is given the declension of **templum**.

Observation.—How does the declension of nouns ending in **um** differ from that of nouns ending in **us**?

(b) The student should look over the vocabularies of this and the preceding lessons, to see what is the gender of the nouns that have been used.

Observation.—Of what gender are all the Latin nouns that refer to males? to females? to what is neither male nor female? What is the gender of the nouns ending in **us**? in **er**? in **ir**? in **um**? in **a**? Explain the apparent exceptions to the general rule in the vocabulary of Exercises II. and IV.

EXERCISE IX.

Vocabulary.

Bellum , I, n., <i>war</i> .	Imperium , I, n., <i>command</i> .
Castra , ōrum, n. (plural form with singular meaning), <i>camp</i> .	Maneō , ēre, <i>remain, continue</i> .
Exemplum , I, n., <i>example</i> .	Moveō , ēre, <i>move</i> .
Expūgnō , āre, <i>take by storm</i> .	Officium , I, n., <i>duty, allegiance</i> .
Frūmentum , I, n., <i>grain, corn</i> .	Oppidum , I, n., <i>town</i> .
Helvētius , I, m., <i>Helvetian</i> (one of a tribe in Gaul).	Postulō , āre, <i>demand</i> .
Hiberna , ōrum, n. (plural form with singular meaning), <i>winter quarters</i> .	Praemium , I, n., <i>reward</i> .
	Praesidium , I, n., <i>garrison</i> .
	Proelium , I, n., <i>battle</i> .
	Renovō , āre, <i>renew</i> .

I.—1. Frūmentum comportābant. 2. Lēgātus cōpiās in hibernīs collocat. 3. Animōs cōpiārum praemiīs sollicitābāmus. 4. Imperium bellī postulant. 5. Ab hibernīs ad prōvinciam prope-rābat. 6. Rōmānōs ā proeliō revocat. 7. Mūrum oppidī virīs complent. 8. Ad oppidum ventitābātis. 9. Rōmānī castra movent. 10. Germānōs in officio continēbat. 11. Praesidio locum tenēmus. 12. Bellum cum Rōmānīs renovābant. 13. Exempla habētis. 14. Labiēnus cōpiās ā proeliō continet. 15. Cōpiam frūmentī habēmus. 16. In castrīs Helvētiōrum manent.

II.—1. They are stationing garrisons in the towns. 2. We were bringing in plenty of corn. 3. The forces of the Belgians were renewing war with Labienus. 4. The Germans continue in (their) allegiance. 5. The allies of the Romans kill the garrisons of the towns. 6. He was arousing the spirit of the boy with examples and rewards. 7. The children have an example. 8. The Helvetians were laying waste the lands of the Aedui, and taking by storm (their) towns and villages. 9. The forces were renewing the battle. 10. They are attacking the camp. 11. He was stationing a garrison in the town. 12. They used to come often with the barbarians to the winter quarters of the forces. 13. You were surrounding the camp with a trench. 14. He gives orders to the garrison. 15. The Gauls attack the camp and fill up the trench.

LESSON X.

- (a) 1. *Lēgātus clārus, a famous lieutenant.*
 2. *Victōria clāra, a famous victory.*
 3. *Exemplum clārum, a famous example.*
 4. *Lēgātī clārī, of a famous lieutenant.*
 5. *Victōriæ clārae, famous victories.*
- (b) 6. *Vir clārus, a famous man.*
 7. *Belgae clārī, the famous Belgians.*
 8. *Ager pūblicus, public land.*
 9. *Locus asper, a rough place.*
 10. *Nauta perītus, a skilful sailor.*
 11. *Nautārum perītōrum, of skilful sailors.*
- (c) 12. *Multa exempla, many examples.*
 13. *Cum paucis Belgis, with a few Belgians.*
 14. *Reliqui Belgae, the remaining Belgians.*
 15. *Māgnæ cōpiæ, large forces.*

Observation.—(a) Does the Latin adjective remain unchanged, like the English? Is there a change in the gender, the number, or the case of the nouns accompanying the adjectives, comparing (i.) 1, 2 and 3; (ii.) 2 and 5; (iii.) 1 and 4?

(b) Are the endings of nouns and adjectives always alike? How does the form of the noun affect the form of the adjective?

(c) What is the position of the adjective in 1 to 11? in 12 to 15? When is the adjective placed before its noun?¹

In Part III., section 10, is given the declension of adjectives whose masculine nominative singular ends in **us** or **er**.

Observation.—Is there any difference between the declension of these adjectives (**bonus**, **liber** and **aeger**) and the declension of the nouns given in sections 1, 2 and 3? How does the vocabulary indicate whether an adjective ending in **er** is declined like **liber** or like **aeger**?

EXERCISE X.

Vocabulary.

Adversus , a, um, <i>unsuccessful</i> .	Lātus , a, um, <i>broad, wide</i> .
Altus , a, um, <i>high, deep</i> .	Libe r, era, erum, <i>free</i> .
Aspe r, era, erum, <i>rugged, rough</i> .	Māgnus , a, um, <i>great, large</i> .
Commoveō , ēre, <i>disturb, alarm,</i> <i>agitate</i> .	Maritimus , a, um, <i>maritime, of</i> <i>or on the sea</i> .
Crēber , bra, brum, <i>numerous,</i> <i>frequent</i> .	Numerus , I, m., <i>number</i> .
Excitō , āre, <i>stimulate</i> .	Ōra , ae, f., <i>shore, coast; ōra</i> <i>maritima, the sea coast</i> .
Finitimus , a, um, <i>neighboring,</i> <i>adjacent</i> .	Pauci , ae, a (plural), <i>few</i> .
Helvētius , a, um, <i>Helvetian, of</i> <i>the Helvetians</i> .	Populus , I, m., <i>nation, people</i> .
Idōneus , a, um, <i>suitable</i> .	Reliquus , a, um, <i>remaining</i> . ²
Incitō , āre, <i>arouse, stir up</i> .	Saxum , I, n., <i>stone</i> .
	Sollicitō , āre, <i>tempt, bribe, try</i> <i>to win over</i> .

I.—1. Locum fossā lātā et mūrō altō firmant. 2. Ōram mari-
timam vastābātis. 3. Fossam crēbrīs rāmīs complēmus. 4. Māgna
saxa in³ mūrīs collocābant. 5. Proelium adversum animōs pau-
cōrum Belgārum commovet. 6. In locō asperō insidiās collocant.
7. Māgnum numerum servōrum et reliquam praedam cōpiīs dōnat.
8. Liberōs Galliae populōs superābās. 9. Paucōs tribūnōs ad

1. As a rule, adjectives follow the noun with which they agree, but precede it in the following cases: (a) when emphatic; (b) when expressing number or quantity; (c) when the noun is modified by both an adjective and a genitive, the order then being regularly, adjective, genitive, noun. See footnote 2, page 6.

2. The best way generally of translating *reliquus* is by "the rest of"; e.g., *reliqui Belgae, the remaining Belgians, i.e., the rest of the Belgians*.

3. Here, as often, Latin *in* is to be translated by English *on*.

II.—1. They are stationing garrisons in the towns. 2. We were bringing in plenty of corn. 3. The forces of the Belgians were renewing war with Labienus. 4. The Germans continue in (their) allegiance. 5. The allies of the Romans kill the garrisons of the towns. 6. He was arousing the spirit of the boy with examples and rewards. 7. The children have an example. 8. The Helvetians were laying waste the lands of the Aedui, and taking by storm (their) towns and villages. 9. The forces were renewing the battle. 10. They are attacking the camp. 11. He was stationing a garrison in the town. 12. They used to come often with the barbarians to the winter quarters of the forces. 13. You were surrounding the camp with a trench. 14. He gives orders to the garrison. 15. The Gauls attack the camp and fill up the trench.

LESSON X.

- (a) 1. *Légātus clārus*, a famous lieutenant.
 2. *Victōria clāra*, a famous victory.
 3. *Exemplum clārum*, a famous example.
 4. *Légātī clārī*, of a famous lieutenant.
 5. *Victōriæ clārae*, famous victories.
- (b) 6. *Vir clārus*, a famous man.
 7. *Belgae clārī*, the famous Belgians.
 8. *Ager pūblicus*, public land.
 9. *Locus asper*, a rough place.
 10. *Nauta perītus*, a skilful sailor.
 11. *Nautārum perītōrum*, of skilful sailors.
- (c) 12. *Multa exempla*, many examples.
 13. *Cum paucīs Belgīs*, with a few Belgians.
 14. *Reliquī Belgae*, the remaining Belgians.
 15. *Māgnæ cōpiæ*, large forces.

Observation.—(a) Does the Latin adjective remain unchanged, like the English? Is there a change in the gender, the number, or the case of the nouns accompanying the adjectives, comparing (i.) 1, 2 and 3; (ii.) 2 and 5; (iii.) 1 and 4?

(b) Are the endings of nouns and adjectives always alike? How does the form of the noun affect the form of the adjective?

(c) What is the position of the adjective in 1 to 11? in 12 to 15? When is the adjective placed before its noun?¹

In Part III., section 10, is given the declension of adjectives whose masculine nominative singular ends in **us** or **er**.

Observation.—Is there any difference between the declension of these adjectives (**bonus**, **Iber** and **aeger**) and the declension of the nouns given in sections 1, 2 and 3? How does the vocabulary indicate whether an adjective ending in **er** is declined like **Iber** or like **aeger**?

EXERCISE X.

Vocabulary.

Adversus , a, um, <i>unsuccessful</i> .	Lātus , a, um, <i>broad, wide</i> .
Altus , a, um, <i>high, deep</i> .	Liber , era, erum, <i>free</i> .
Asper , era, erum, <i>rugged, rough</i> .	Māgnus , a, um, <i>great, large</i> .
Commoveō , ēre, <i>disturb, alarm,</i> <i>agitate</i> .	Maritimus , a, um, <i>maritime, of</i> <i>or on the sea</i> .
Crēber , bra, brum, <i>numerous,</i> <i>frequent</i> .	Numerus , I, m., <i>number</i> .
Excitō , āre, <i>stimulate</i> .	Ōra , ae, f., <i>shore, coast; ōra</i> <i>maritima, the sea coast</i> .
Finitimus , a, um, <i>neighboring,</i> <i>adjacent</i> .	Pauci , ae, a (plural), <i>few</i> .
Helvētius , a, um, <i>Helvetian, of</i> <i>the Helvetians</i> .	Populus , I, m., <i>nation, people</i> .
Idōneus , a, um, <i>suitable</i> .	Reliquus , a, um, <i>remaining</i> . ²
Incitō , āre, <i>arouse, stir up</i> .	Saxum , I, n., <i>stone</i> .
	Sollicitō , āre, <i>tempt, bribe, try</i> <i>to win over</i> .

I.—1. Locum fossā lātā et mūrō altō firmant. 2. Ōram maritimam vastābātis. 3. Fossam crēbris rāmīs complēmus. 4. Māgnā saxa in³ mūrīs collocābant. 5. Proelium adversum animōs paucōrum Belgārum commovet. 6. In locō asperō insidiās collocant. 7. Māgnū numerum servōrum et reliquam praedam cōpiīs dōnat. 8. Liberōs Galliae populōs superābās. 9. Paucōs tribūnōs ad

1. As a rule, adjectives follow the noun with which they agree, but precede it in the following cases: (a) when emphatic; (b) when expressing number or quantity; (c) when the noun is modified by both an adjective and a genitive, the order then being regularly, adjective, genitive, noun. See footnote 2, page 6.

2. The best way generally of translating *reliquus* is by "the rest of"; e.g., *reliqui Belgāe, the remaining Belgians, i.e., the rest of the Belgians*.

3. Here, as often, Latin *in* is to be translated by English *on*.

EXERCISE XII.

Vocabulary.

Caes-ar, -aris, m., <i>Caesar</i> .	Miles, militis, m., <i>soldier</i> .
Centuri-ō, -ōnis, m., <i>centurion</i> .	Multitū-dō, -dinis, f., <i>multitude,</i> <i>great number</i> .
Civi-tās, -tātis, f., <i>state</i> .	
Co-hors, -hortis, f., <i>cohort, com-</i> <i>pany</i> (one-tenth of a legion).	Obses, obsidis, m., <i>hostage</i> .
Eques, equitis, m., <i>horse soldier,</i> (in plural) <i>cavalry</i> .	Ōr-dō, -dinis, m., <i>rank</i> .
Legi-ō, -ōnis, f., <i>legion</i> .	Pāx, pācis, f., <i>peace</i> .
Mercā-tor, -tōris, m., <i>trader</i> .	Pedes, peditis, m., <i>foot soldier,</i> (in plural) <i>infantry</i> .
	Servō, āre, <i>keep</i> .

I.—1. Obsidēs Caesarī dabimus. 2. Mercātōrēs ad legiōnem ventitābant. 3. Pācem et amīcitiā cum Caesare cōfirmābit. 4. Militēs ōrdinēs non servābant.¹ 5. Paucī peditēs māgnam multi-tūdinem equitum superant. 6. Cum reliquīs legiōnibus in Galliā hiemābō. 7. Caesar māgnum obsidum numerum² imperat. 8. Tribūnōs militum et centuriōnēs convocābat. 9. Militēs reli-quārum legiōnum civitātem in officiō continēbunt. 10. Paucās cohortēs in insidiis collocat.

II.—1. He rides up to Caesar. 2. Caesar will hasten with the rest of the legion to the town. 3. You will grant pardon to the centurion. 4. The rest of the cohorts will lay waste the neighboring territory. 5. We were restraining the legions from battle. 6. The opinion of the centurion will prevail. 7. He fills the camp with a multitude of soldiers. 8. Caesar establishes peace with the neighboring states. 9. He will winter in Gaul with the rest of the legion and the cavalry. 10. They try to win over the rest of the states. 11. With a few soldiers we shall hasten to the camp.

LESSON XIII.

(a) Expūgnāvī,	<i>I have taken by storm, or I took by storm.</i>
Expūgnāvistī,	<i>you (sing.) have taken by storm, or you took by storm.</i>

1. See footnote 2, page 19.

2. See footnote 1, page 17

Expūgnāvit,	<i>he has taken by storm, or he took by storm.</i>
Expūgnāvimus,	<i>we have taken by storm, or we took by storm.</i>
Expūgnāvistis,	<i>you (plural) have taken by storm, or you took by storm.</i>
Expūgnāvērunt,	<i>they have taken by storm, or they took by storm.</i>

Observation.—What changes occur in the verb forms, comparing one with another? ¹ Resemblance to regular personal endings. Twofold translation.

(b) Turn to the perfect tense of all four conjugations, as given in Part III., section 27.

Observation.—Are the endings found in **expūgnāvī**, etc., found in all these verbs?

(c) FIRST CONJUGATION.		SECOND CONJUGATION.	
Present Tense.	Perfect Tense.	Present Tense.	Perfect Tense.
amō	amāvī	moneō	monuī
dō	dedī	videō	vidī
stō	stetī	jubeō	jūssī
adjuvō	adjūvī	remaneō	remānsī
THIRD CONJUGATION.		FOURTH CONJUGATION.	
Present Tense.	Perfect Tense.	Present Tense.	Perfect Tense.
regō	rēxī	audiō	audīvī
legō	lēgī	veniō	vēnī
sūmō	sūmpsī	vinciō	vinxī
mittō	mīsī	sentīō	sēnsī
parcō	pepercī	comperiō	comperī

Observation.—Is the change from the present to the perfect made in the same way always in each conjugation? In what one respect only do all the forms of the perfect given in this list agree? Notice that, in the vocabularies that follow, the perfect tense is always clearly indicated.²

1. The division recommended in classes for beginners is into the unchanging part of the perfect stem and the changing endings; *expugnāv+i*, etc. The relation between the present and perfect stems should be reserved for a much later stage, and even the fact that most verbs of conjugations I., II. and IV. have in the perfect of each conjugation a similar formation, should not be presented for a few lessons, until the pupil has learned to form his perfect, not by the rule of three, but on the authority of the Vocabulary.

2. For the perfect tense of verbs occurring in the preceding vocabularies, the student is referred to the general vocabulary, at the end of the book.

EXERCISE XIII.

Vocabulary.

Accipiō, accēpī, receive.	Mūniō, mūnīvī, fortify, protect.
Arma, armōrum, n. (in plural only), arms.	Per-maneō, ēre, -mānsī, remain.
Dō, dare, dedī, give.	Petō, petīvī, ask, seek.
Faciō, fēcī, do, make.	Pōnō, posuī, place, pitch (camp), lay down.
Facul-tās, -tātis, f., opportunity.	Trā-dō, -didī, give up.
Gerō, gessi, carry on, wage.	Vallum, I, n., wall, rampart (of camp).
Juvō, āre, jūvī, aid, assist.	Veniō, vēnī, come.
Moveō, ēre, mōvī, move.	

I.—1. Gessimus. 2. Accēpērunt. 3. Trādidit. 4. Caesar castra mōvī. 5. Helvētiī pācem ā Caesare petīvērunt. 6. Facul-tātem fugae captīvīs dedistī. 7. Māgna praesidia in oppidīs posuī. 8. Reliquae cohortēs castra vallō fossāque mūnīvērunt. 9. Caesar māgnam injūriam fēcī. 10. Sociī legiōnēs frūmentō jūvērunt. 11. Caesar legiōnibus veniam dedit. 12. In officiō permānsimus. 13. Cum multīs equitibus ad castra vēnit. 14. Arma posuistis et obsidēs dedistis. 15. Agrōs habēmus.

II.—1. He has aided. 2. We gave. 3. She has sought. 4. You have moved. 5. We came. 6. We received the hostages. 7. The Gauls waged war with Cæsar. 8. They gave up (their) arms, captives (and) hostages to Cæsar. 9. You fortified the camp with high walls. 10. Cæsar has made peace with the neighboring states. 11. The Gauls gave lands to the Germans. 12. I have received many injuries from the Romans. 13. He placed a garri-son in the camp. 14. You gave the legion to the lieutenant. 15. They came with a few horsemen to Cæsar. 16. The rest of the legion pitched the camp. 17. The soldiers move the camp. 18. You received great injury from Cæsar. 19. They have villages.

LESSON XIV.

The student should turn to the nouns of the third declension, given in Part III., section 5.

Observation.—Compare the endings of the nouns in section 5

with those of the nouns in section 4. What differences are there in the endings? What is the gender of the nouns in section 5? in section 4? In what respect do neuter nouns of the second and third declensions agree?

EXERCISE XIV.

Vocabulary.

Ag-men, -minis, n., <i>line of march</i> , Imped-iō, -ivī, obstruct. <i>army (on the march).</i>	Iter, itineris, n., march, road.
Āmittō, āmīsi, <i>lose.</i>	Lat-us, -eris, n., side, flank.
Āvert-ō, -ī, <i>turn aside.</i>	Op-us, -eris, n., work, fortifica- <i>tion.</i>
Contend-ō, -ī, <i>hasten.</i>	Per-ficiō, -fēci, finish.
Dis-cēdō, -cēssi, <i>depart, with-</i> <i>draw.</i> ¹	Signum, I, n., standard, signal. ²
Flū-men, -minis, n., <i>river.</i>	Vuln-us, -eris, n., wound.

I.—1. Iter ā flūmine āvertimus. 2. Militēs opus perfēcērunt. 3. Paucī equitēs vulnera accēpērunt. 4. Māgnis itineribus Caesar ad flūmen contendit. 5. Signum proeliī cohortibus dedit. 6. Multī peditēs ab agmine discēssērunt. 7. Militēs ab opere revocāvit. 8. Silva pertinet ā flūmine ad castra. 9. Lēgātī ad Caesarem in³ itinere vērunt. 10. Cohortēs signa āmīsērunt. 11. Iter agminis impedivērunt. 12. Helvētīi iter fēcērunt.⁴

II.—1. You have received a wound. 2. Cæsar recalled the soldiers from work. 3. Broad rivers hem in the Helvetii. 4. We have finished the fortification of the camp. 5. They have marched (*literally, made a march*) from the province. 6. By a forced (*literally, great*) march I came to the camp. 7. Cæsar has turned aside (*his*) march from the Helvetii. 8. We have lost a standard. 9. A few soldiers have left (*literally, departed from*) the standards. 10. The river has protected the sides of the camp. 11. We came to the river with the rest of the cohorts. 12. We received a few wounds.

1. *Discedo ab* = *I leave, literally, I depart from.*

2. A genitive depending on *signum* (= *signal*) should be translated by *for*.

3. *In* is in this phrase to be translated *on*.

4. *Iter facio* = *I march, literally, I make a march.*

LESSON XV.

Dederam, *I had given.*

Miserās, *you (sing.) had sent.*

Jūsserat, *he had ordered.*

Vēnerāmus, *we had come.*

Jūsserātis, *you (plural) had ordered.*

Dederant, *they had given.*

Observation.—Personal endings. What letters are found in each Latin word? What word occurs in the translation of each of these Latin words? Referring to Lesson XIII. (c), are these forms obtained from the present or the perfect tense?

EXERCISE XV.

Vocabulary.

Cōgnōscō, **cōgnōvi**, *learn, find*
out.

Cōn-fugiō, **-fūgi**, *flee.*

Cōn-sidō, **-sēdi**, *encamp.*

Con-veniō, **-vēni**, *come together,*
assemble.

Ērupti-ō, **-ōnis**, *f., sally.*

Explōrā-tor, **-tōris**, *m., scout.*

Impedimenta, **ōrum**, *n. (in plu-*
ral), baggage, baggage-ani-
mals.

Mittō, **misi**, *send.*

Ob-tineō, **ēre**, **-tinui**, *hold, pos-*
sess.

Occup-ō, **āre**, **-āvi**, *seize.*

Re-dūcō, **-dūxi**, *lead back.*

Rēgnum, **ī**, *n., royal power.*

Rhēnus, **ī**, *m., Rhine.*

Tim-eō, **ēre**, **-ui**, *fear, be afraid.*

Trāns-dūcō, **-dūxi**, *lead across.*

I.—1. Cōpiās redūxerās. 2. Ad Rhēnum contenderat. 3. Lēgātōs mīsimus. 4. Explōrātōrēs iter cōgnōverant. 5. Barbarōs tinent. 6. Ēruptiōnem fēcerant. 7. Cōpie cōnsēderant. 8. Rēgnum obtinuerat. 9. Accēperāmus. 10. Discēsserant. 11. Gessērunt. 12. Fēceram. 13. Vulnerant. 14. Dedimus. 15. Jūvistis. 16. Posuerātis. 17. Petīvimus. 18. Discēssit. 19. Cōnfūgerāmus. 20. Properat. 21. Imperāverat.

II.—1. He had led the soldiers across. 2. They came together to Cæsar. 3. I shall seize the royal power. 4. We had sent scouts. 5. They had fled to the baggage. 6. Cæsar encamped with the rest of the forces. 7. Ambassadors had come to the camp. 8. We led a large number of baggage-animals across. 9.

The forces had encamped. 10. They received a few wounds. 11. He has sought peace. 12. We had given. 13. You had led back the legion. 14. I had finished. 15. We encamped. 16. She had sent. 17. We were hastening. 18. You sent. 19. They will wound. 20. I received.

LESSON XVI.

Ab Ītalīā pertinet,	<i>it extends from Italy.</i>
Ad Caesarem vēnērunt,	<i>they came to Caesar.</i>
Cum Gallis pācem fēcīt,	<i>he made peace with the Gauls.</i>
Dē pāce lēgātōs mīserunt,	<i>they sent ambassadors concerning (or about) peace.</i>
Ex agris frūmentum compor- tant,	<i>they bring in corn out of (or from) the fields.</i>
In prōvinciā hiemat,	<i>he winters in the province.</i>
Cōpiās in Galliam mīsit,	<i>he sent the forces into (or to) Gaul.</i>
Inter flūmen et silvās iter fēcīt,	<i>he marched between the river and the woods.</i>
Inter Belgās valet,	<i>he is influential among the Bel- gians.</i>
Per prōvinciam iter fēcērunt,	<i>they marched through the province.</i>
Per Helvētiōs cōgnōvit,	<i>he found out through (or by means of) the Helvetians.</i>
Litteris cōgnōvit,	<i>he found out by means of letters.</i>
Post pūnam cōgnōvit,	<i>he found out after the battle.</i>
Propter multītūdīnem Ger- mānōrum timent,	<i>they are afraid on account of the great number of Germans.</i>
Sine causā timent,	<i>they fear without cause.</i>
Trāns Rhēnum cōnsēdērunt,	<i>they encamped across the Rhine.</i>

Observation.—The meaning of the prepositions used, and the case which follows each of them. The difference between **in** with accusative and **in** with ablative ; **ab** and **ex** ; **ad** and **in** with accusative ; the ablative of means and **per** with accusative.

EXERCISE XVI.

Vocabulary.

Auctōri-tās, -tātis, f., <i>influence.</i>	Mors, mortis, f., <i>death.</i>
Dēditi-ō, -ōnis, f., <i>surrender.</i>	Pater, patris, m., <i>father.</i>
Incol-ō, -ui, <i>dwelt, inhabit.</i>	Tim-or, -ōris, m., <i>fear.</i>
Inopia, ae, f., <i>want, scarcity.</i>	Val-eō, ēre, -ui, <i>be influential.</i>
Jūdic-ō, āre, -āvi, <i>decide.</i>	Vir-tūs, -tūtis, f., <i>valor, bravery.</i>

I.—1. Sine injūriā per prōvinciam iter fēcimus. 2. Frūmentum ex agrīs in castra comportābant. 3. Post proelium lēgātī ad Caesar dē dēditiōne vērunt. 4. Trāns Rhēnum in locō idōneō cōsēderat. 5. Māgnam inter Belgās auctōritātem propter virtūtem habēbat. 6. Mīlītēs ex hibernīs et ā Caesare convēnerant. 7. Ex captivīs cōgnōverat. 8. In certum locum convēnerāmus. 9. Arbitrōs inter civitātēs dedit. 10. Germānōs sine causā timent. 11. Cum reliquīs legiōnibus in Galliam contendit. 12. Ex castrīs discēssistis. 13. Iter in prōvinciam āverterant. 14. Arma ex oppidō trādidērunt. 15. Sine causā bellum gesserātis.

II.—1. He had sent the forces across the river into Gaul. 2. He found out through scouts. 3. After the death of (his) father he had held the royal power. 4. They had made numerous sallies out of the woods. 5. The rest of the Belgians had sent ambassadors concerning peace. 6. He used to be influential among the Gauls. 7. They remain in the camp not without great danger, on account of the scarcity of corn. 8. They had placed the baggage between the river and the cavalry. 9. He led back the forces into winter quarters. 10. We shall not decide about the road. 11. They had dwelt across the Rhine. 12. On account of (their) fear they had fled into the woods. 13. Caesar had led across the forces without baggage. 14. We used to have lands across the Rhine in the province. 15. Out of a large number few received wounds.

LESSON XVII.

- (a) **Dederis, you (sing.) will have given.** **Vēnerimus, we shall have come.**
Miserit, he will have sent. **Jūsseritis, you (plur.) will have ordered.**
Jūsserit, he will have ordered. - **Dederint, they will have given.**

Observation.—Personal endings. What letters are found in each Latin word in the translation of which are found the words *shall have* or *will have*? Are these forms obtained from the present or the perfect tense?

(b) **Dederō**, *I shall have given.* **Miserō**, *I shall have sent.*

Observation.—What variation occurs in that part of the Latin verb which expresses *shall have*?

(c) In Part III., section 27, may be found the names by which the tenses of the Latin verb are known.

EXERCISE XVII.

Vocabulary.

Dē-ligō , -lēgī, <i>choose.</i>	Jubeō , ēre, jūssī, <i>order.</i>
Dē-pōnō , -posuī, <i>lay aside.</i>	Memoria , ae, f., <i>memory.</i>
Dē-terreō , ēre, -terruī, <i>deter.</i>	Per-dūcō , -dūxī, <i>carry, bring.</i>
Dubit-ō , āre, -āvī, <i>hesitate, have doubts.</i>	Regi-ō , -ōnis, f., <i>region, district.</i>
Fug-ō , āre, -āvī, <i>rout, put to flight.</i>	Re-tineō , ēre, -tinuī, <i>preserve.</i>
	Vet-ō , āre, -uī, <i>forbid.</i>
	Videō , ēre, vīdī, <i>see.</i>

I.—1. Fabrōs ex legiōne dēlēgerat. 2. Mūrum perdūxerimus. 3. Arna dēposuerint. 4. Regiōnem vastāvērunt. 5. Legiō montem nōn tenēbit. 6. Vidētis. 7. Renōvābam. 8. Discēssit. 9. Jūdicāverō. 10. Dubitābāmus. 11. Dēterret. 12. Vetuistī. 13. Gesserāmus. 14. Discēsserit. 15. Complēbunt. 16. Expūgnāvērunt. 17. Occupāverās. 18. Videritis. 19. Mūnīverunt. 20. Cōnsēderat. 21. Vēneram.

II.—1. He has not laid aside the memory. 2. You had remembered (*literally, preserved the memory*). 3. They will have routed. 4. I shall have learned. 5. We had hesitated. 6. They chose. 7. I shall order. 8. We have come. 9. We were holding. 10. It used to deter. 11. You were hesitating. 12. She used to be influential. 13. They will have fled. 14. We shall have sent. 15. I forbade. 16. They order. 17. You are deciding. 18. You were deterring.

LESSON XVIII.

Turn to the adjectives of the third declension, as given in Part III., section 11.

Observation.—How far do the endings of the adjective agree with those of the noun, as given in sections 4 and 5 (comparing forms of the same gender always)? Is there always a separate form for the feminine nominative? for the neuter nominative? Examine the vocabulary, to see how the genitive case and the different genders of adjectives of the third declension are marked.¹

EXERCISE XVIII.

Vocabulary.

Dēclivis , e, <i>sloping</i> .	Levis , e, <i>slight, trifling</i> .
Duplex , duplicis , <i>double</i> .	Omnis , e, <i>all</i> .
Eques-ter , -tris , -tre , <i>of cavalry</i> , cavalry- (adjective).	Pot-ēns , -entis , <i>powerful</i> .
Fertilis , e, <i>fertile</i> .	Prae-ceps , -cipitis , <i>steep</i> .
Fortis , e, <i>brave</i> .	Rec-ēns , -entis , <i>recent, unex-</i> <i>hausted</i> .
Humilis , e, <i>low, lowly</i> .	Silvestris , e, <i>wooded</i> .
Incend-ō , -i , <i>burn</i> .	Vēl-ōx , -ōcis , <i>swift, active</i> .

I.—1. Praesidia in omnibus oppidīs collocābit. 2. Proelium equestre fēcimus.² 3. Filiam lēgātō, virō fortī et potentī, dedit. 4. In locō silvestrī cōnsēderant. 5. Cōpiāe recentēs et integrae proelium renovābant. 6. Animōs omnium sociōrum cōfirmat. 7. Peditēs vėlōcēs et fortēs dēlēgeram. 8. Duplicem fossam ā castrīs ad flūmen perdūxit. 9. Omnia arma trādidērunt. 10. Levia equestria proelia fēcērant.² 11. Per regiōnem fertilem iter fēcērant. 12. Ex humili locō ad māgnam auctōritātem Mārcum perdūxerat.

1. All adjectives not ending in *us* (or *er*), *a*, *um*, are of the third declension. Adjectives of this declension end generally in (a) masculine and feminine, *-is*, neuter, *-e*, the genitive of each being the same as the masculine nominative; (b) masculine, *-er*, feminine, *-ris*, neuter, *-re*, the genitive of each being the same as the feminine nominative; (c) masculine, feminine and neuter, *-ns*, the genitive having *-ntis* in place of *-ns*; (d) masculine, feminine and neuter, *-x*, the genitive having *-cis* in place of *-x* (but *-icis* in place of *-ex*).

2. *Proelium facio* = *I fight a battle*, literally, *I make a battle*.

II.—1. They had fortified the camp with a double wall. 2. Caesar removed the horses of all the lieutenants. 3. They were laying waste all the lands. 4. The Helvetians had burned all the towns, all the rest of the villages, (and) all the corn. 5. He had not laid aside the memory of the recent wrongs. 6. He has granted pardon to all the captives. 7. You have pitched the camp in a sloping and steep place. 8. He will have sent fresh and unexhausted cavalry. 9. I hastened with all the cavalry to the river. 10. We marched through fertile lands. 11. We shall deter the Gauls by (our) recent victory. 12. He summons the centurions of all ranks.

LESSON XIX.

Bellum renovāre dubitant,	<i>they hesitate to renew the war.</i>
Cōpiās in prōvinciā jūssit hiemāre,	<i>he ordered the forces to winter in the province.</i>
Labiēnum locum tenēre jū- serat,	<i>he had ordered Labienus to hold the place.</i>
Lēgātōs discēdere vetuit,	<i>he forbade the lieutenants to de- part.</i>
Labiēnum jubet castra mū- nīre,	<i>he orders Labienus to fortify the camp.</i>
Venīre dubitat,	<i>he hesitates to come.</i>

Observation.—In each sentence notice how one verb completes the meaning of the other. Formation of the infinitive in each conjugation. What is generally the position of the infinitive? Notice that in the vocabularies that follow, the infinitive is always given, as a means of indicating the conjugation to which a verb belongs.¹

EXERCISE XIX.

Vocabulary.

Audēō, ēre, ventūre.	Cōgō, ere, coēgi, collect, compel.
Coepi (used in the perfect tenses only) began.	Cōstitu-ō, ere, -i, determine.
	Dēsil-iō, ire, -ui, leap down.

1. In preceding vocabularies, the infinitive has not been given for all verbs. In such cases the student should refer to the general vocabulary, at the end of the book.

I.—1. Bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōstituit. 2. Militēs vetuit ab signīs discēdere. 3. Ex finitimīs regiōnibus militēs jubet convenīre. 4. Oppidum oppugnāre et portās incendere coepērunt. 5. Lēgātī ad castra venīre dubitāverant. 6. Māgna praesidia in omnibus oppidīs cōstituit collocāre, et cum reliquīs cōpiīs in vicō Aeduōrum hiemāre. 7. Cōpiās in hiberna reducere cōstituerat. 8. Omnēs lēgātōs coēgit equōs removēre. 9. Multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem obsecrāre coepimus. 10. Proelium renovāre nōn audēbunt. 11. Omnia oppida incendere cōstituerāmus. 12. Labiēnum cum omnibus equitibus locum tenēre jūssit. 13. Patrem imperium dēpōnere coēgit.

II.—1. Cæsar had ordered all the Aedui to give up (their) arms. 2. They determined to send ambassadors to Cæsar concerning peace. 3. They had begun to lay waste the lands of the allies. 4. Cæsar forbade the legions to leave (their) work. 5. They have begun to collect forces. 6. He orderēd all the soldiers to leap down. 7. They began to fill up the trenches with branches. 8. He had orderēd the soldiers to fortify the camp with a double trench. 9. We determined to collect forces and wage war with Cæsar. 10. They do not venture to send ambassadors. 11. He had compelled the Aedui to give hostages. 12. They hesitate to winter in Gaul. 13. The Gauls began to assemble out of all the towns.

LESSON XX.

Turn to the nouns of the fourth declension given in Part III., section 7.

Observation.—The case-endings of the declension. The gender of the nouns in *us* and in *ū*.¹ How does the vocabulary indicate that a noun is of the fourth declension?

EXERCISE XX.

Vocabulary.

Adventus, ūs, m., *arrival*.

Com-mittō, ere, -mīsi, *entrust*;

Commeātus, ūs, m., *supplies*.²

(with proelium) *join, begin*.

1. See Part III., section 50, b.

2. See footnote 1, page 31.

Conspectus, ūs, m., <i>sight, view.</i>	Lacus, ūs, m., <i>lake.</i>
Cornū, ūs, n., <i>wing (of an army).</i>	Magistrātus, ūs, m., <i>magistrate,</i>
Dexter, tra, trum, <i>right.</i>	<i>office.</i>
Discēssus, ūs, m., <i>departure.</i>	Peditātus, ūs, m., <i>infantry.</i> ¹
Equitātus, ūs, m., <i>cavalry.</i> ¹	Sal-ūs, -ūtis, f., <i>safety.</i>
Exercitus, ūs, m., <i>army.</i>	Sus-tineō, ēre, -tinui, <i>with-</i>
Homō, hominis, m., <i>man, (in</i>	<i>stand, endure.</i>
plural) <i>people.</i>	Ūsus, ūs, m., <i>experience.</i>
Impetus, ūs, m., <i>attack, fury.</i>	

I.—1. Post adventum Caesaris obsidēs dare cōstituerant. 2. Gallī impetum in² equitātum fēcērunt. 3. Cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium commīsērunt. 4. Helvētīi agrōs Aeduōrum in cōspectū exercitūs Rōmānī vastābant. 5. Ā lacū ad flūmen mūrūm duplicem perdūxērāmus. 6. Magistrātum obtinēbat. 7. Salūtem magistrātuum equitātūi commisit. 8. In³ dextrō cornū omnem equitātum collocāvit. 9. Oppidum māgnō impetū oppugnāre coepērunt. 10. Equitātūs in⁴ cōspectum vēneram. 11. Magistrātūs multitūdinem hominum ex agrīs coēgerant. 12. Reliquum exercitum Labiēnō dare cōstituit. 13. Exercitum sine māgnō commeātū cōgere nōn audēbunt. 14. Lēgātōs ab omnibus exercitibus convenīre jūssit.

II.—1. They will not withstand the attacks of the cavalry. 2. He ordered the lieutenant to remove out of sight the horses of all the soldiers. 3. He determined to winter in the province with all the cavalry. 4. After the departure of the Belgians they had begun to renew the war. 5. The plunder he orders the lieutenant to present to the cavalry. 6. He hastened to the lake. 7. We have determined to await Labienus' arrival. 8. He orders all the magistrates to assemble. 9. He had forbidden the soldiers to seek supplies. 10. They were surrounding the forces with cavalry. 11. He ordered Labienus with the rest of the cavalry to hasten to the right wing. 12. They have experience in camps. 13. He found out through scouts about the departure of the allies. 14. He hesitates to entrust all the plunder to the magistrates.

1. These words are to be used in Latin in the singular, not in the plural, in spite of their meaning.

2. With *impetum facio*, *in* with the accusative is to be translated *on*.

3. See footnote 3, page 17.

4. Translate *in* here by *in*, not *into*.

LESSON XXI.

(a) Missus sum,	<i>I have been sent, or I was sent.</i>
Superātus es,	<i>you (sing.) have been conquered, or you were conquered.</i>
Auditus est,	<i>he has been heard, or he was heard.</i>
Revocātī sumus,	<i>we have been recalled, or we were recalled.</i>
Jūssī estis,	<i>you (plural) have been ordered, or you were orderēd.</i>
Coāctī sunt,	<i>they have been compelled, or they were compelled.</i>

Observation.—Twofold translation. Voice. Number of words in each Latin phrase. Which indicates the person? What does the change of ending in the other indicate?

(b) Jūssa est,	<i>she was ordered.</i>
Auditum est,	<i>it has been heard.</i>
Locus mūnītus est,	<i>the place was fortified.</i>
Castra mūnīta sunt,	<i>the camp was fortified.</i>
Legiōnēs missae sunt,	<i>the legions have been sent.</i>
Militēs jūssī sunt,	<i>the soldiers have been ordered.</i>

Observation.—What new endings are found in these verbs? What do the different endings indicate?

(c)	FIRST CONJUGATION.		
Present.	Perfect Active.	Perfect Passive.	
amō	amāvī	amātus sum	
dō	dedī	dātus sum	
vetō	vetuī	vetitus sum	
	SECOND CONJUGATION.		
moneō	monuī	monitus sum	
jubeō	jūssī	jūssus sum	
commoveō	commōvī	commōtus sum	
compleō	complēvī	complētus sum	
	THIRD CONJUGATION.		
regō	rēxī	rectus sum	
cōgō	coēgī	coāctus sum	
cōgnōsco	cōgnōvī	cōgnitus sum	
mittō	mīssī	missus sum	

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Present.	Perfect Active.	Perfect Passive.
audiō	audiVI	auditus sum
sentiō	sēnsI	sēnsus sum
vinciō	vinxi	vinctus sum

Observation.—Is the relation between the forms of the perfect passive and those of the present or perfect active always the same? Is it the same in any conjugation? In what respect do all the perfect passive forms agree?

Notice how in the vocabularies that follow a form is given with each verb, from which the perfect passive may easily be obtained.¹

EXERCISE XXI.

Vocabulary.

Ac-cipiō, ere, -cēpI, -ceptum,	Mūn-iō, Ire, -ivI, -itum,	<i>fortify.</i>
<i>receive.</i>	Per-ficiō, ere, -fēcI, -fectum,	
Colloc-ō, āre, -āvI, -ātum,	<i>station.</i>	<i>finish.</i>
Com-mittō, ere, -mīsI, -missum,	Prohib-eō, ēre, -ul, -itum,	<i>re-</i>
<i>entrust, begin.</i>	<i>strain.</i>	
Com-moveō, ēre, -mōvI, -mō-	Re-dūcō, ere, -dūxI, -ductum,	
tum, alarm.	<i>lead back.</i>	
Convoc-ō, āre, -āvI, -ātum,	Renov-ō, āre, -āvI, -ātum,	<i>re-</i>
<i>call</i>	<i>new.</i>	
Dē-ligō, ere, -lēgI, -lētum,	Trā-dō, ere, -didI, -ditum,	<i>give</i>
<i>choose.</i>	<i>up.</i>	
Expūgn-ō, āre, -āvI, -ātum,	Trāns-dūco, ere, -dūxI, -duc-	<i>across.</i>
<i>take by storm.</i>	tum, lead	
Faciō, ere, fēcI, factum, do,	Vāst-o, āre, -āvI, -ātum,	<i>lay</i>
<i>make.</i>	<i>waste.</i>	
In-cendo, ere, -cendI, -cēnsum,	Vulner-ō, āre, -āvI, -ātum,	
<i>burn.</i>	<i>wound.</i>	

1. For each regular Latin verb the vocabulary gives four forms, ending in *-ō, -re, -ī* and *-um*, called the *Principal Parts* of the verb. With the exception of the first two, these have no constant relation one to another in form, although in the first conjugation a majority of verbs always change *-ō* to *-āvī, -ātum*; in the second conjugation, *-eō* to *-uī, -itum*; and in the fourth conjugation, *-iō* to *-ivī, -itum*.

For the perfect passive of verbs occurring in the preceding vocabularies the student is referred to the general vocabulary, at the end of the book.

I.—1. Agrī vastātī sunt. 2. Cōpiæ coāctæ sunt. 3. Dēlēctī sumus. 4. Cōgnitum est. 5. Oppida incēnsa sunt. 6. Equitātus missus est. 7. Jūssus sum. 8. Vetita es. 9. Locus est¹ mūnītus. 10. Opus perfectum est. 11. Equī remōtī sunt. 12. Fossa complēta est. 13. Reductī sumus. 14. Convocātī sunt. 15. Prohibita est. 16. Prohibitæ sunt. 17. Vulnus acceptum est. 18. Proelium factum est. 19. Exercitus trānsductus est. 20. Caesar commōtus est.

II.—1. The soldiers were ordered. 2. A large number of men has been collected. 3. Wounds were received. 4. We have been sent. 5. She has been wounded. 6. The camp was fortified. 7. I was ordered. 8. The war was renewed. 9. The arms have been given up. 10. The forces were led back. 11. The cavalry has been led across. 12. Garrisons were stationed. 13. A legion was stationed. 14. Hostages have been given. 15. We have been alarmed. 16. You have been ordered. 17. The signal was given. 18. The battle has been begun. 19. The camp was taken by storm. 20. The magistrates were called together.

LESSON XXII.

Fundā vulnerātus est,	<i>he was wounded by a sling.</i>
Agrī ā cōpiis vastātī sunt,	<i>the fields have been laid waste by the forces.</i>
Locus vallō fossāque mūnītus est,	<i>the place was fortified by a wall and trench.</i>
Equī ā Caesare remōtī sunt,	<i>the horses were removed by Caesar.</i>

Observation.—Two ways of translating *by*. Which is used in connection with the passive voice to denote the person by whom something is done?²

1. *Est munitus* has the same meaning as *munitus est*. Not only may the order be changed in these perfect passive forms, but the two parts are sometimes separated by other words.

2. With the active voice *a* and *ab* will mean *from*; with the passive, *from* or *by*, whichever the rest of the sentence requires.

EXERCISE XXII.

Vocabulary.

Onus, oneris, n., *burden.*Op-primō, ere, -pressī, -pres-
sum, *overwhelm.*Perturb-ō, āre, -āvī, -ātum,
*throw into confusion.*Prac-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum,
send in advance.

I.—1. Obsidēs ab Helvētiīs Cæsari datī sunt. 2. Lēgātī ab omnibus regiōnibus vēnerant. 3. Sagittīs et fundīs barbarī ā mūrō submōtī sūnt. 4. Lēgātī et omnēs centuriōnēs ā Cæsare convocātī sunt. 5. Ā magistrātū multitudō hominum ex agrīs coācta est. 6. Castra ā militibus duplicī fossā circumdata sunt. 7. Cōpiae oppressae sunt timōre. 8. Equī omnium ex cōspectū remōtī sunt. 9. Jūssī sumus obsidēs dare et frūmentum in hiberna comportāre. 10. Fossa rāmīs complēta est. 11. Labiēnus cun omnī equitātū ad prōvinciam praemissus est. 12. Ā Cæsare ex captivīs cōgnitum est. 13. Frūmentō commeātūque ā sociīs jūti estis. 14. Impetus ā barbarīs in¹ equitātum factus est. 15. Rōmānī adversō proeliō et fugā Gallōrum commōtī sunt.

II.—1. Ambassadors were sent in advance by Cæsar into Gaul. 2. The forces were thrown into confusion by the attack of the barbarians. 3. The camp has been fortified by a rampart and trench. 4. You have been recalled from work. 5. The wall was filled with men. 6. They were ordered by the lieutenant to remove the horses. 7. Ambassadors were ordered to assemble from every town. 8. Large forces have been collected by the Belgians. 9. A large number of the Belgians was slain. 10. The soldiers were overwhelmed by the great weight of (their) arms. 11. All the towns were burned by the Helvetians. 12. We were alarmed by the arrival of Cæsar. 13. The land of the Aedui has been laid waste by the Germans. 14. She was wounded by an arrow. 15. Arms were given up by all the Belgians. 16. The forces were alarmed by the scarcity of corn. 17. A sally was made out of the woods by the Gauls. 18. The army was led back into camp.

1. See footnote 2, page 31.

LESSON XXIII.

(a) Missus eram , <i>I had been sent.</i>	Revocāti crāmus , <i>we had been recalled.</i>
Commōtus erās , <i>you (sing.) had been alarmed.</i>	Jūssī crātis , <i>you (plural) had been ordered.</i>
Auditus erat , <i>he had been heard.</i>	Coāctī erant , <i>they had been compelled.</i>
Auditum erat , <i>it had been heard.</i>	Castra mūnīta erant , <i>the camp had been fortified.</i>
Jūssa erat , <i>she had been ordered.</i>	Cōpiæ missæ erant , <i>the forces had been sent.</i>

Observation.—Compare these phrases with those given in Lesson XXI. (a) and (b). What differences in form and meaning do you find?

(b) Missus erō , <i>I shall have been sent.</i>	Revocāti erimus , <i>we shall have been recalled.</i>
Commōtus eris , <i>you (sing.) will have been alarmed.</i>	Jūssī eritis , <i>you (plural) will have been ordered.</i>
Auditum erit , <i>it will have been heard.</i>	Castra mūnīta erunt , <i>the camp will have been fortified.</i>
Jūssa erit , <i>she will have been ordered.</i>	Cōpiæ missæ erunt , <i>the forces will have been sent.</i>

Observation.—Compare these phrases with those in (a). What differences in form and meaning do you find?

(c) Miseram , <i>I had sent.</i>	Jūsserātis , <i>you (plural) had ordered.</i>
Audīverat , <i>he had heard.</i>	Coēgerant , <i>they had compelled.</i>
Miserō , <i>I shall have sent.</i>	Mūnīverint , <i>they will have fortified.</i>

Observation.—Compare these forms with the phrases in (a) and (b). What is the difference between the corresponding active and passive forms in Latin?

EXERCISE XXIII.

Vocabulary.

Ad-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, In-struō, ere, -strūxī, -strue-
influence. **tum, draw up.**
Compar-ō, āre, -āvī, -ātum, Tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum,
make ready, procure. *take away.*

I.—1. Cōpiæ instrūctæ erant. 2. Adductī erāmus. 3. Frū-
mentum comparātum erit. 4. Jūssus erō. 5. Convocātī erant.
6. Collocātī sunt. 7. Coēgerāmus. 8. Incendērunt. 9. Oppida
incēnsa erunt. 10. Collocābit. 11. Vastāvit. 12. Commovet.
13. Remōvit. 14. Munīverātis. 15. Sustulimus. 16. Addūx-
eram. 17. Instrūctī sunt. 18. Fossa erat complēta. 19. Vulnera
accepta erant. 20. Trānsductī erimus. 21. Proelium commīse-
rant. 22. Proelium commissum erat. 23. Jubēbat. 24. Com-
movēbit. 25. Sustinuerāmus. 26. Dēlēgerās. 27. Dēlēctus erās.
28. Cōgnitum erit. 29. Sublātum erat. 30. Vulnerātis.

II.—1. The war had been renewed. 2. We had renewed. 3.
We were not influenced. 4. The legion had been drawn up.
5. They had been made ready. 6. The battle was begun. 7.
They will have been overwhelmed. 8. The camp had been taken
by storm. 9. They sent in advance. 10. It had been finished.
11. They used to favor. 12. We were calling together. 13.
They will have found out. 14. It was found out. 15. They had
been compelled. 16. The legion was led back. 17. The legions
had been led across. 18. You were sent in advance. 19. He
procures. 20. They are making ready. 21. I shall have taken
away. 22. The camp had been fortified. 23. They will take the
camp by storm. 24. I shall remove. 25. They had wounded.
26. She had been wounded. 27. They wound. 28. It had been
given. 29. I gave. 30. I was giving.

LESSON XXIV.

(a) Turn to the nouns of the fifth declension, given in Part III., section 8.

Observation.—The case-endings of the declension. How does the vocabulary indicate that a noun is of the fifth declension? Of what gender are most nouns of this declension?¹

(b) Turn to the list of ordinal numerals, given in Part III., section 15.

Observation.—Forms and translation. Notice the way in which *thirteenth*, *fourteenth*, *twenty-first*, etc., are expressed.

In the general Vocabulary all ordinal numerals are given as follows: *primus*, a, um, *first*; *secundus*, a, um, *second*; *decimus*, a, um, *tenth*. What is indicated by the letters a, um?

EXERCISE XXIV.

Vocabulary.

<i>Acies</i> , ēī, f., <i>line of battle, line.</i>	<i>Occasus</i> , ūs, m., <i>setting.</i>
<i>Dies</i> , ēī, m., <i>day.</i>	<i>Pars</i> , partis, f., <i>part.</i>
<i>Ēgregius</i> , a, um, <i>remarkable.</i>	<i>Rēs</i> , rei, f., <i>thing, matter, affair.</i>
<i>Fidēs</i> , ei, f., <i>honor, word, fidelity.</i>	<i>Scientia</i> , ae, f., <i>knowledge.</i>
<i>Hōra</i> , ae, f., <i>hour.</i>	<i>Sōl</i> , sōlis, m., <i>sun.</i>
<i>Militāris</i> , e, <i>military.</i>	<i>Spēs</i> , ei, f., <i>hope.</i>

I.—1. Spem fugae sustulerat. 2. Militēs in aciē instrūctī sunt. 3. Cum tertiā legiōne in prōvinciā hiemāre cōstituit. 4. Fidem servāvit dē numerō dierum. 5. Scientiam rei² militāris habet. 6. Ab hōrā septimā ad occāsum sōlis pūgnāverant. 7. Multis rēbus adductī erant. 8. Ēgregiam fidem lēgātī cōgnōverat. 9. Tertia pars exercitūs interfecta est. 10. Omnēs centuriōnēs quartae cohortis interfectī erant. 11. Dē fidē Gallōrum dubitāverant. 12. Propter inopiam omnium rērum militēs nōnae legiōnis in prōvinciam redūcere cōstituerat. 13. Omnem spem salūtis in virtūte posuerāmus.

1. See Part III., section 51, b.

2. *Res militaris* (the singular) = *military affairs, the art of warfare.*

II.—1. An attack had been made by the soldiers of the fifth legion on¹ the first line. 2. They had been influenced by the hope of plunder. 3. The forces had been led back to the camp after the fourth day. 4. All things will have been made ready. 5. The second line had been surrounded by the barbarians. 6. He had had great experience in military affairs.² 7. He drew up the line of battle. 8. They had inhabited a third part of Gaul. 9. They will not withstand the first attack of the forces. 10. The forces had been influenced by the want of everything (*literally, all things*). 11. The matter had been found out through scouts. 12. They had come into Gaul not without great hope of plunder. 13. He had stationed the tenth legion in ambush.

LESSON XXV.

Tertio diē ad Caesarem vē-	<i>on the third day they came to</i>
nērunt,	<i>Cesar.</i>
Hōrā septimā proelium com-	<i>he joined battle at the seventh</i>
mīsit,	<i>hour.</i>
Occāsū sōlis in castra reducti	<i>they were led back into camp at</i>
sunt,	<i>sunset (literally, at the setting of the sun).</i>
Multōs diēs iter fēcerant,	<i>they had marched many days.</i>
Māgnam partem diēi pūgnā-	<i>they had fought a large part of</i>
verant,	<i>the day.</i>
Paucās hōrās impetūs susti-	<i>for a few hours they withstood the</i>
nuērunt,	<i>attacks.</i>

Observation.—The two ideas connected with time found in these sentences. The mode of expressing each in Latin. Is each idea always expressed in the same way in English?

EXERCISE XXV.

(For this, and all subsequent exercises, no special vocabulary will be given. The student must depend entirely on the general vocabularies, at the end of the book.)

1. See footnote 2, page 31.

2. See footnote 2, page 38.

I.—1. Posterō diē castra Labiēnī oppugnāre dēcrēverant. 2. Complūrēs hōrās pūgnāvērunt. 3. Nocte ad Rhēnum contendit. 4. Sōlis occāsū cōpiae in castra reductae sunt. 5. Multōs annōs rēgnum obtinuerat. 6. Hōrā circiter decimā diēi nūntium ad Labiēnum mīsimus. 7. Permultōs diēs iter per prōvinciam fēcerant. 8. Continuōs complūrēs diēs Caesar aciem īnstrūxit. 9. Primā lūce rēs ab explōrātōribus cōfirmāta est. 10. Certō annī tempore magistrātūs ā Caesare convenīre jūssī erant. 11. Tertiam partem Galliae paucōs annōs incoluerāmus. 12. Adventū Caesaris barbarī cōstitērunt.

II.—1. The Helvetians moved their camp the next day at day-break. 2. In the third watch they made a sally out of the town with all their forces. 3. For several hours they withstood the attacks of the cavalry. 4. On the first arrival of the army numerous sallies had been made by the Gauls. 5. He decided to attack the town on the seventh day. 6. They had for many days laid waste the lands of the Aedui. 7. On the following day an attack was made by the Gauls on the cavalry. 8. The camp was moved in the fourth watch with¹ great noise and confusion. 9. After his father's death he had possessed the royal power for several years. 10. At daybreak on the remaining days a double line of battle had been drawn up by Cæsar. 11. They had waged war with the Romans for many years. 12. We reached the camp the third hour of the day.

LESSON XXVI.

Turn to the nouns of the third declension, given in Part III., section 6.

Observation.—How do the case-endings differ from those given in sections 4 and 5 (comparing always nouns of the same gender)? Do the same differences occur in all the words?² Compare the adjectives of the third declension given in Part III., section 11.

Notice also the irregular declension of the nouns given in Part III., section 9.

1. Use *cum*.

2. Most nouns having these endings will be found to belong to one of the following classes :

EXERCISE XXVI.

I.—1. Equitēs impetum hostium sustinent. 2. Fīnēs Aeduōrum multōs mēnsēs ferrō et ignī vastātī sunt. 3. Nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū barbarī permōtī erant. 4. Culmina Alpiū ab hostibus occupāta erant. 5. Animālia atque māgnū numerum servōrum et clientium Gallī ignī cremābant. 6. Posterō diē Labiēnum cum omnī equitātū montem tenēre jūssit. 7. In fīnēs hostium incursiōnem fēcerant. 8. Hieme nāvēs cōstituit aedificāre. 9. Ē fīnibus hostium Helvētiōrum in fīnēs Aeduōrum iter per vim fēcērunt. 10. In fīnibus hostium hiemāverat. 11. Propter altitūdinem montium castra in valle posita sunt. 12. Nāvēs ex finitimīs regiōnibus jubet convenīre.

II.—1. They had built a large number of ships in the third year of the war. 2. He demanded a large number of hostages. 3. An attack was made at daybreak by the enemy on the line of battle. 4. All the towns of the enemy were burned. 5. They had marched through the province by (*literally, through*) force. 6. They were alarmed by the violence of the rivers. 7. For many years he used to have a large number of retainers. 8. A forest used to extend from the mountain to the territories of the Aedui, and restrain¹ the enemy's cavalry from inroads. 8. On account of the depth of the sea, the soldiers hesitated to leap down out of the ship. 10. The forces of the enemy had been dismayed by the size of the ships of war. 11. For a large part of the day they had laid waste the fields with fire and sword. 12. For several years he had leased all the rest of the revenues of the Aedui.

(1) Nouns ending in *is* or *es*, and having two syllables in both nominative and genitive singular.

(2) Monosyllables ending in *s* or *x* immediately preceded by a consonant.

(3) Nouns ending in *ns* or *rs*.

(4) Neuter nouns ending in *e*, *al* or *ar*.

These have *um* in genitive plural; very few have *i* in the ablative singular, the following being the commonest in Cæsar: *ignis*, fire; *navis*, a ship; *contīnens*, the continent or mainland.

1. *i. e.*, used to restrain. All similar ellipses are to be supplied in translating from English to Latin, where the words to be understood are expressed in Latin by part of a word, not a separate word.

LESSON XXVII.

Turn to the present, imperfect and future indicative (active and passive) of the first and second conjugations, as given in Part III., sections 27 and 28.

Observation.—From which of the principal parts are these tenses formed in the active voice? in the passive voice? How is the difference between the voices indicated in Latin?

EXERCISE XXVII.

I.—1. Helvétii loci nātūrā continentur. 2. Māgnae cōpiae ab hostibus comparābantur. 3. Tertia pars Galliae ā Belgīs obtinētur. 4. Ā Gallis sollicitābāmur. 5. Mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbitur. 6. Fugā Gallōrum commovēminī. 7. Māgnam inter Belgās auctōritātem habēre vidēris. 8. Vīcus montibus continēbātur. 9. Equitēs peditum virtūte servantur. 10. In servitūte tenēberis. 11. Numerus hostium augētur. 12. Nāvēs tempestātibus dētīnēbuntur. 13. Hostēs ā pūgnā tempestātibus continēbantur. 14. Adventū Caesaris commovēbar. 15. Cōpiae hostium ē castris videntur. 16. Iter ā flūmine āvertere vidēbimur. 17. Prōvincia ab hostibus incursiōnibus vastābātur. 18. Multitūdine hominum castra complēbuntur.

II.—1. The forces of the enemy are being increased. 2. Stones were being placed on the wall. 3. The battle will be renewed. 4. You will be awaited by the consul. 5. The Helvetians are inclosed by the river Rhine, the Jura mountains,² and the river Rhone. 6. We shall not be alarmed by the departure of the allies. 7. The arrival of the forces was being awaited by the citizens. 8. For several successive days the enemy's forces are kept in camp by storms. 9. The lands of the Aedui used to be laid waste by the Germans. 10. It is announced to Cæsar. 11. I shall be held in subjection. 12. They seem to fear without cause.

1. Notice also that there is no change whatever in the part that precedes the personal ending, except that *i* before *s* is changed to *ē* before *ris* (*er* having almost the same sound as *ir*, but being easier to pronounce).

2. Use the singular of *mons*, which has the meaning of a *mountain chain*, as well as of a single *mountain* or *hill*.

13. They were removed. 14. We were removing. 15. They were being removed. 16. He will recall. 17. You will be recalled. 18. They will be recalled. 19. I used to restrain. 20. I used to be restrained.

LESSON XXVIII.

(a) Lātus , broad ;	lātior , broader ;	lātissimus , broadest or very broad.
Fortis , brave ;	fortior , braver ;	fortissimus , bravest or very brave.
Vēlōx , swift ;	vēlōcior , swifter ;	vēlōcissimus , swiftest or very swift.
Potēns , powerful ;	potentior , more powerful.	potentissimus , most or very powerful.

Observation.—Endings indicating the different degrees of comparison. Formation of comparative and superlative from the positive.¹ Twofold translation of the superlative.

(b) Viri fortiōris ,	of a braver man.
Flūmen lātius ,	a broader river.
Fossae lātiōrēs ,	broader trenches.
Militis fortissimī ,	of a very brave soldier.
Flūmen lātissimum ,	a very broad river.
Fossae lātissimae ,	very broad trenches.

Observation.—Declension and agreement of comparative and superlative adjectives.

(c) Turn to the declension of comparative adjectives, as given in Part III., section 12.

Observation.—How do the case-endings of the comparative differ from those of adjectives of the positive degree belonging to the same declension ? (See section 11.)

1. Notice that the genitive of the positive degree of these adjectives is respectively *lati*, *fortis*, *velocis*, *potentis*.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

I.—1. Helvētīi flūmine lātissimō et altissimō continentur. 2. Caesarem dē adventū Labiēnī certiōrem fēcērunt. 3. Urbs in monte altissimō posita erat. 4. Peditēs vĕlōcissimī et fortissimī dĕlēctī sunt. 5. Humiliōrēs ā potentiōribus expulsī erant. 6. Legiōnēs longiōre itinere circumdūxit. 7. In dĕnsissimās silvās cōnfūgērunt. 8. Castra lātiōribus fossīs mūnita sunt. 9. Ad flūmen lātius vēnerant. 10. Rēs opportūnissima accidit. 11. Crēbriōrēs explorātōrēs in finēs hostium mīsīt. 12. In novissimum agmen impetum fēcērunt.

II.—1. The Helvetians had been informed of (*literally, about*) the enemy's departure. 2. The enemy sought denser forests. 3. He gives his daughter to the centurion, a very brave and powerful¹ man. 4. He came at a most opportune time. 5. They had sent the noblest (men) of the state. 6. They are alarmed by the appearance of the wider vessels. 7. He ordered Labienus to make the vessels lower and wider. 8. They used to possess most fertile lands. 9. The rear was being thrown into confusion. 10. They encamped in a very fertile region. 11. They used to be hemmed in by higher mountains and a broader river. 12. A deeper river hems in the Helvetians. 13. Caesar had been informed by more frequent messages. 14. He had entrusted the safety of the hostages to the bravest soldiers.

LESSON XXIX.

(a) **Missus est**, he was (or has **Rōmānus est**, he is a Roman. been) sent.

Jūssī sunt, they were ordered. **Fortēs sunt**, they are brave.

Cōgnitum erat, it had been found out. **Potēns erat**, he was powerful.

Reductī erunt, they will have been led back. **Liberī erunt**, they will be free.

Observation.—What difference in translation occurs when **est**, **sunt**, etc., are joined with a noun or adjective, not with the part

1. *i. e.*, very powerful. See footnote 1, page 41.

of the verb used in forming the perfect tenses? In what case is the noun or adjective in the predicate with the verb *sum*?

(b) Turn to the inflection of the verb *sum*, given in Part III., section 41.

Observation.—Formation and translation of the six tenses in the indicative, and of the present infinitive.

EXERCISE XXIX.

I.—1. Omnium Gallōrum fortissimī sunt Belgae. 2. Exercitus erat¹ in cōspectū. 3. Periculōsum est. 4. In armīs sumus. 5. Tertiā nocte lūna erat plēna. 6. Locus erat idōneus. 7. Ommēs rēs comparātae erant. 8. Noctēs breviōrēs sunt. 9. Castra angustiora erant. 10. Spēs est sublāta. 11. Rēx fuerat. 12. Miserior et gravior esse fortūna Sēquanōrum vidētur. 13. Mōns altissimus est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs. 14. In itinere erātis. 15. Propter frīgora frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant. 16. Militēs montem tenēbant. 17. Adventus hostium cōgnitus erat. 18. Reliquae nāvēs erunt inūtilēs. 19. Nōn audēbunt esse inimicī. 20. Vir fortissimus et nōbilissimus fuit. 21. Reductī sunt. 22. Fossa erat ante oppidum. 23. Homō sum.

II.—1. All the rest of the Belgians are in arms. 2. The road through the province will be longer. 3. Ambassadors were sent. 4. The adjacent regions are very fertile. 5. They are aided. 6. The Belgians seem to be very hostile. 7. There² is scarcity of all things. 8. They were awaiting. 9. The night was very short. 10. The vessels are low and wide. 11. The forces were sent in advance. 12. The allies used to be free. 13. They began to be hostile. 14. There² had been great danger. 15. Nothing is easier. 16. We shall be thrown into confusion. 17. You are useful friends. 18. They have been in Cæsar's army. 19. He has been influenced. 20. They are making ready all things. 21. It is uncertain.

1. In this, as in many of the succeeding sentences, the English word *there* may be used in translation. This word has no equivalent in Latin, which would express "*there are ten men present*" and "*ten men are present*" by the same words.

2. *There* (the introductory adverb) has no equivalent in Latin. See footnote 1.

LESSON XXX.

Populō Rōmānō periculōsum *it was dangerous to the Roman*
erat, *people.*
Helvētīs erat inimīcus, *he was hostile to the Helvetians.*
Finitimī sunt Galliae, *they are adjacent to Gaul.*

Observation.¹—Nature of the adjectives. Addition of a noun defining their application. Case of the noun indicating the person concerned or the thing to which the quality is directed. Does the dative in these sentences generally precede or follow the adjective it refers to?²

EXERCISE XXX.

I.—1. Amīcus fuerat Helvētīs. 2. Caesarī es fidēlis. 3. In-cursiōnes hostium prōvinciae sunt periculōsae. 4. Fugae similis erat discēssus. 5. Turpissimum est reipūblicaē. 6. Nihil est grātius dīs immortālibus. 7. Omnibus equitibus incōgnitum erat. 8. Gallī finitimī Belgīs erant. 9. Caesarī erat inimīcus. 10. Cārī fuērunt dīs immortālibus. 11. Vulnēra militī periculōsa sunt. 12. Gallī nōn parēs erant Belgīs. 13. Multīs cīvibus erit grātum.

II.—1. We are not equal to the enemy's cavalry. 2. The Aedui are adjacent to the provinces. 3. Nothing was more disgraceful to the Germans. 4. The road is dangerous to the army. 5. She is dear to all. 6. We used to be friendly to the Romans. 7. They are useful friends to the hostages. 8. We had been faithful to the Roman people. 9. The punishments are more pleasing to the immortal gods. 10. He used to seem to be hostile to the Roman people. 11. The war will be dangerous to the state. 12. The harbors were unknown to the Gauls. 13. It is similar to the Gallic war.

LESSON XXXI.

Turn to the list of irregularities in the comparison of adjectives, given in Part III., section 13 (parts ii., iii. and iv.).

1. For beginners it may be sufficient to call attention to the use of datives (translated in the ordinary way) depending on adjectives as well as on verbs.

2. See footnote 2, page 6.

Observation.—The difference between the comparison of these adjectives and the regular comparison, given in Lesson XXVIII.

EXERCISE XXXI.

I.—1. Primā luce mājōrem multitudinem equitum ab ūlteriōre portū mīsit. 2. Belgae proximī sunt Germānis. 3. Ascēsus est facillimus. 4. Superiōre annō minōre cum periculō bellum gesserant. 5. Crēberrima aedificia in Galliā sunt. 6. Proximā nocte summa erat difficultās. 7. Ocelum est citeriōris prōvinciae oppidum extrēmum. 8. Spem celerrimae victōriae habent. 9. Māximis itineribus in Galliam citeriōrem contendit. 10. Iter per prōvinciam erat facillimum. 11. Summam scientiam rei militāris habet. 12. Superiōra loca occupāverant. 13. In citeriōre Galliā legiōnēs cōscripserat. 14. Superiōre annō cum proximis civitātibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāverunt. 15. Propter summam virtūtem dēlecti sunt. 16. Superiōribus diēbus mājōrem mōtum expectābamus. 17. Superiōrem partem collis dēnsissimis castris complēverant.

II.—1. They had collected very many ships in the preceding summer. 2. The road will be very difficult. 3. They had been stationed in the upper line. 4. He had sent very frequent messengers into farther Gaul. 5. At the most troublesome (*literally, difficult*) time of the year more states were conspiring. 6. For the larger part of the summer they had waged war in hither Gaul. 7. They made an attack from (*literally, out of*) the higher ground. 8. They were attacking the outer fortifications. 9. He had come on the preceding day to the smaller camp with a larger number of foot-soldiers. 10. The depth of the river is very great. 11. Geneva is the farthest town of the Allobroges, and the nearest to the territories of the Helvetians. 12. Nothing is better. 13. They fled to the nearest woods. 14. They burned the finest city of Gaul. 15. It is best to hasten to the lower part of the island. 16. They had collected very large forces.

LESSON XXXII.

(a) Turn to the present indicative active of the third conjugation, given in Part III., section 27.

Observation.—Personal endings. Manner of joining personal endings to the common part *reg-*.¹

(b) In the same way examine the present indicative active of the fourth conjugation, in the same section.

(c) Turn to the present indicative passive of the third and fourth conjugations, given in section 28.

Observation.—Is the difference between the active and the passive, in the present tense, the same as in the first and second conjugations?²

EXERCISE XXXII.

I.—1. *Ā* Caesare in Galliā prae-mittitur. 2. Hostēs in silvās repelluntur. 3. Lēgātī ab omnibus cīvitātibus veniunt. 4. Tertiam partem Galliae incolitis. 5. Ad castra vēnit: ad castra venit. 6. Ex castrīs discēdunt. 7. Ad Caesarem convenīmus. 8. Castra vallō altissimō mūniuntur. 9. Vincīmīnī: vincimīnī. 10. Pontem rescindunt. 11. Rhodanus prōvinciam ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. 12. Vicus flūmine dīviditur. 13. *Ā* populō Rōmānō impedimur. 14. Exercitum in ūteriōrem Galliā dūcis. 15. Aciem circumveniunt. 16. Vincīmus. 17. Castra in locō idōneō pōnimus. 18. Oppida omnia incendunt. 19. In fluctūs dēsilit. 20. Cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt.

II.—1. They leap down out of the ship. 2. The line of battle is drawn up. 3. You are enrolling a legion. 4. A few foot-soldiers fall. 5. We are being surrounded by the Gauls. 6. We are waging war with the Romans. 7. They assemble on the seventh day. 8. They send ambassadors to Caesar about peace. 9. The legion is led back into winter quarters. 10. You are binding. 11. We are conquering. 12. The bridge is broken down.

1. With beginners it is sufficient for all practical purposes to consider the present stem as ending in the consonant preceding *o*, e.g., *reg-*, *pon-*, *ger-*. To introduce the so-called thematic vowel *-e* will only cause confusion.

2. See footnote 1, page 42.

13. They fortify the camp with a wall and trench. 14. A message is sent to Caesar. 15. They are assembling from all the camps. 16. The camp is pitched in a valley. 17. Labienus is sent in advance with the scouts. 18. I am hindered by the violence of the river. 19. I am cut off from the army. 20. It is announced.

LESSON XXXIII.

Turn to the adjectives whose declension is given in Part III., section 14.

Observation.—Declension to which these adjectives in the main belong. Irregularities in declension.

The most peculiar of the common uses of the adjectives given in the list may be observed in the following sentences :

Alia loca fossis, alia vallis, *Some places he was fortifying with
trenches, others with walls,*
alia turribus muniēbat. *others with towers.*

Altera legiō in Galliā hiemat, *One legion is wintering in Gaul,*
altera in Italiā. *the other in Italy.*

EXERCISE XXXIII.

I.—1. Alterum iter facilius erat. 2. Lēgātī tōtius Galliae ad Caesarem veniunt. 3. Cum sōlā decimā legiōne proelium committit. 4. Aliud iter habēmus nullum.¹ 5. Relinquitur² ūna per Sēquanōs via. 6. In utram partem flūmen fluit?³ 7. Nullī acciderat. 8. Neuter proelium committere audēbit. 9. Ūnō tempore dē adventū equitātūs et dē Labiēnī victōriā certior factus est. 10. Alteram partem vicī Gallis concēdit, alteram cohortibus. 11. Ab aliīs audiunt. 12. Aliā in parte legiōnēs collocāvit. 13. Factiōnum alterius prīncipātum tenent Aeduī, alterius Sēquanī. 14. Sine ūllō periculō castra muniunt. 15. Ager Sēquanus optimus est tōtius Galliae.

1. *Nullum* agrees with *iter*, and is placed where it is for emphasis' sake.

2. By means of this sentence the use of the introductory *there* in English, where no corresponding word is found in Latin, may be shown. See footnote 1, page 45.

3. See footnote 2, page 19.

II.—1. He gives orders to the whole province. 2. An attack was made from all directions at one time. 3. Some fill the trenches, others attack the walls. 4. It is pleasing to neither. 5. They had marched through the province without (doing) any mischief. 6. The Sequani alone do¹ not venture to ask aid. 7. He puts the baggage of the whole army in a suitable place. 8. They assembled in (*literally, to*) one place. 9. They made a sally from another part of the town. 10. On the other bank of the river a legion is left. 11. Neither line begins the battle. 12. He hastened to the other camp. 13. Some he ordered to give up their arms, others to give hostages. 14. We shall aid neither. 15. He will not be deterred by the influence of any state.

LESSON XXXIV.

(a) Turn to the imperfect and future indicative active of the third and fourth conjugations, given in Part III., section 27.

Observation.—Compare these with the corresponding forms in the first and second conjugations. Are they formed from the same principal part? Have they the same letters indicating *was, were* or *used to? shall* or *will?*²

(b) The corresponding forms of the passive voice are given in Part III., section 28.

Observation.—Are the changes from the active to the passive made in the same way as in the first and second conjugations?³

EXERCISE XXXIV.

I.—1. Bellum gerēbant. 2. Acies instruēbātur. 3. Dēsiliēmus. 4. Commoventur. 5. Legiōnem cōscribēbat. 6. Castra mūniēbāmus. 7. Mittēmur. 8. Conveniēbātis. 9. Interclūdēminī. 10. Bellum gerunt. 11. Veniēbat. 12. Oppida incendēbantur. 13. Praemittuntur. 14. Castra mūniēbantur. 15. Vinciar. 16. Dēligentur. 17. Prohibētis. 18. Impediris. 19. Vinceris. 20. Trādētur.

1. See footnote 2, page 19. 2. See footnote 1, page 48. 3. See footnote 1, page 42.

II.—1. They were assembling. 2. We shall depart. 3. He was leading back. 4. I shall be led back. 5. He was leaping down. 6. The camp is being fortified. 7. He will encamp. 8. They will move the camp. 9. I shall be restrained. 10. It used to divide. 11. It was being fortified. 12. We were waging war. 13. A legion will be enrolled. 14. You will be bound. 15. You will be conquered. 16. You will have conquered. 17. Arms were being got ready. 18. You shall be hindered. 19. I used to come. 20. We shall not begin battle.

LESSON XXXV.

Turn to the list of cardinal numerals given in Part III., section 15.

Observation.—Notice the similarity in form of the cardinal and ordinal numerals; the formation of the words from eleven to twenty; the manner of expressing twenty-one and similar numbers; the various expressions for eighteen and similar numbers. For the declension of the cardinal numerals, see Part III., section 16.¹

EXERCISE XXXV.

I.—1. Duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā cōnscribēbat, et trēs ex hibernīs edūxerat. 2. Quīngentīs equitibus māgnam multitudine[m] hostium prōpulerant. 3. Diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcerāmus. 4. Ad Caesarem cum ducentīs obsidibus veniēbat. 5. Nāvēs octōdecim ex superiōre portū solvent. 6. Signa militāria quattuor et septuāgintā ad Caesarem retulērunt. 7. Centum vīgintī quinque pāgōs habent. 8. Equitēs circiter trīgintā trānsportāverat. 9. Quattuordecim annōs bellum gesserant. 10. Cum sescentīs equitibus ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. 11. Diēs decem et octo trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmēmus. 12. Nāvēs octōgintā coāctae erant. 13. Legiōnem quartam decimam in prōvinciam redūcet. 14. Quadrāgintā cohortēs coāctae sunt. 15. Diēs continuōs quīnque cōpiās in aciē instrūxit.

1. The declension and use of *mille* are taken up in Lesson XXXVII.

II.—1. He drew up a triple line of four legions. 2. He was demanding five hundred hostages. 3. In one summer two very great wars had been finished. 4. They had taken forty-three towns and about two hundred villages. 5. An attack was made by four hundred cavalry. 6. He ordered Labienus with two legions and one hundred and fifty cavalry to ascend the mountain. 7. They were collecting twenty-eight ships. 8. Thirty-five soldiers will be chosen from the whole army. 9. Twenty-three forts were made. 10. The village is divided into two parts by a river. 11. There were two parties¹ in Gaul. 12. About four hundred villages will be burned. 13. He left two legions in the camp, and with the remaining six marched for nine days through the territories of the Belgians. 14. Two legions, the eleventh and the sixteenth, will be left on the other bank. 15. On the twenty-fifth day two hundred and fifty horsemen had been collected. 16. They will give up the two sons of Galba, and three hundred and fifty hostages. 17. They have three months' corn.

LESSON XXXVI.

Missūrus est,	<i>he is going to send, he is about to send, he intends to send.</i>
Vastātūrī sumus,	<i>we are going to lay waste, we are on the point of laying waste.</i>
Cōplac mūnitūrac erant,	<i>the forces were on the point of fortifying, were about to fortify.</i>
Jūssūrus eram,	<i>I was going to order.</i>
Legiō nōn ventūra erit,	<i>the legion will not be likely to come.</i>

Observation.—Formation of Latin verbal phrases. Changes in ending **us, i, ae, a.** From which of the principal parts are **missūrus, jussūrus,** etc., obtained? Various translations possible for each form. To which voice do the verbs belong? Difference in meaning and formation between **missus est** and **missūrus est,** etc.

1. Literally, *two parties were.* See footnote 1, page 45.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

I.—1. Duodecim cohortēs coactūrī sumus. 2. Omnia aedificia incensūrī erant et iter per prōvinciam per vim temptātūrī. 3. Sine equitātū nōn est ventūrus. 4. Bellum cum Rōmānīs gestūrī erant. 5. Nūllo cum periculō cōpiae ad proxima castra perventūrae sunt. 6. Neque obsidēs repetitūrī, neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrī erant. 7. Centuriōnēs et tribūnōs mīlitum convocātūrus sum. 8. Proximā nocte quartā vigiliā castra mōta erant. 9. Dē itinere brevī tempore jūdicātūrī estis. 10. Omnēs collēs et loca superiōra occupātūrī erāmus. 11. Impedīmenta relictūrī et ēruptiōnem factūrī sumus. 12. Injūriās Aeduōrum nōn neglētūrus erit. 13. Aeduīs obsidēs nōn redditūrus sum. 14. Amicitiam populī Rōmānī recūsātūrus est. 15. Cūr ab officiō discēssūrus es?

II.—1. The enemy are going to send ambassadors and give hostages. 2. Reinforcements are likely to come from the nearest winter quarters. 3. The forces are going to winter in hither Gaul. 4. The flight of the Gauls is likely to alarm the Romans. 5. We are intending to aid the other army. 6. They were about to lead across three-fourths (*literally, three parts*) of their forces. 7. She is not likely to gain her request. 8. They had been on the point of giving up their arms. 9. He was about to make an attack with three hundred cavalry. 10. The army was led out of the camp the next day. 11. We are likely to finish the war without any danger. 12. They are not likely to refrain from wrong-doing and mischief. 13. I intend to say nothing about Labienus' opinion. 14. Neither will be likely to begin battle. 15. We shall spend three days in the province.

LESSON XXXVII.

(a) Mille equitēs mittentur,	<i>a thousand horsemen will be sent.</i>
Adventus mille equitum,	<i>the arrival of a thousand horsemen.</i>
Cum mille equitibus contendit,	<i>he hastened with a thousand horsemen.</i>

Tria millia equitum mit- *three thousand horsemen will be*
tentur, *sent.*

Cum duōbus millibus equi- *he hastened with two thousand*
tum contendit, *horsemen.*

Observation.—Difference between singular and plural of **mille** in declension, and in relation to other parts of the sentence. For declension, see Part III., section 16.

(b) **Mille passūs pertinet,** *it extends a thousand paces, or a*
mile.

Tria millia passuum abest,¹ *he is three thousand paces, or three*
miles, distant.

Observation.—By what case does Latin indicate distance or the extent of space?

EXERCISE XXXVII.

I.—1. Hostēs sub monte cōnsēderant millia passuum octo ā castrīs Rōmānōrum. 2. Millia hominum octōgintā dēlēcta sunt. 3. Summa omnium erat millia trecenta sexāgintā octo. 4. Locus sescentōs passūs abest. 5. Ā lacū Lemannō ad flūmen Rhodanum millia passuum decem novem mūrūm perdūcit. 6. Nullam partem noctis iter intermīsērunt. 7. Millia sex convēnērunt. 8. Ex millibus trīgintā tertia pars interfecta erat. 9. Ā Germanīs iter paucōrum diērum aberant. 10. Militēs aggerem lātum pedēs trecentōs trīgintā, altum pedēs octōgintā extrūxērunt. 11. Spatium trium millium² patet. 12. Ex proeliō millia hominum trīgintā tria superfuērunt.³ 13. Multa millia passuum agrī vacant. 14. Silva novem diērum iter patet. 15. Sex millia peditum reliquit.

II.—1. They are six miles distant. 2. He restored about twenty thousand captives to the Aedui. 3. The camp was pitched three miles from Cæsar's camp. 4. Out of a number of fifty-two thousand scarcely a fourth part is left. 5. At day-break he was a mile and a half from the enemy's camp. 6. The rest of the legions are

1. *Abest* is from the verb *absum*, *I am distant, I am away*. *Absum* is a compound of the preposition *ab* and the various forms of the verb *sum*, which is similarly compounded with many other prepositions, as *de*, *ad*, *prae*, *super*.

2. *Passuum* is generally omitted when the genitive of *millia* is used.

3. From *supersum*; see footnote 1.

a great distance away. 7. The Boii with fifteen thousand men were bringing up the line of march. 8. We were about a mile away from the river. 9. Twenty-three thousand Gauls had come to Cæsar. 10. The territories of the Helvetians used to extend two hundred and forty miles. 11. He selected a suitable place about six hundred paces from the Germans. 12. The Gauls will send twenty-five thousand, the Belgians ten, the Germans three. 13. We shall advance a journey of ten miles. 14. Four thousand men had been slain. 15. A town of the Belgians was eight miles from the camp.

LESSON XXXVIII.

Caesari pārent,	<i>they obey (or are obedient to) Cæsar.</i>
Equitātūī Rōmānō præstant,	<i>they surpass (or are superior to) the Roman cavalry.</i>
Legiōnī subveniunt,	<i>they aid (or give aid to) the legion.</i>
Prōvinciæ imperat,	<i>he commands (or gives orders to) the province.</i>
Militī persuādet,	<i>he persuades (literally, makes it agreeable to) the soldier.</i>

Observation.—What case is used with these Latin verbs to express the object of the English verbs? Notice that in all the examples the word expressed by this case represents the person indirectly affected (to, or for, or in connection with whom something is done).

Notice how the general vocabulary indicates when a verb (*e.g.*, *resistō*) belongs to the same class as those given above.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

I.—1. Aliī t̄ruptiōnibus resistunt, aliī equitibus subveniunt. 2. Dumnorigī māgnīs præmiīs persuādet. 3. Ex māgnō equitum numerō nōnnūllī Gallicīs rēbus favēbant. 4. Aeduōrum civitātī Cæsar indulserat. 5. Cæsar Dumnorigī ignōvit. 6. Maritimīs regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs præcerant.¹ 7. Nullā in rō commūnī

1. For *praesum*, see footnote 1, page 54.

salūti deerat.¹ 8. Omnibus Gallis praestant. 9. Necessariō tempore civitāti subvenerat. 10. Legiōni succurrunt et equitum impetūs sustinent. 11. Neque ad concilia veniunt neque imperiō Caesaris pārent. 12. Omnia nāvibus deerant.¹ 13. Reliquae legiōnēs Caesarī satisfēcerant.

II.—1. They will aid the allies. 2. He was injuring Cæsar and the government. 3. They decided to give hostages and obey the rule of the Roman people. 4. Dumnorix had command of the cavalry. 5. Dumnorix favors the Helvetians on account of the relationship. 6. Cæsar had indulged the tenth legion, and used to trust (it) on account of (its) valor. 7. In another direction two legions were resisting the enemy. 8. They spared neither women nor infants. 9. The Germans used to surpass the Belgians. 10. They had given satisfaction to the Aedui about the injuries. 11. One thing² was lacking to Cæsar. 12. He favors Labienus opinion. 13. The infantry was aiding the cavalry.

LESSON XXXIX.

Lēgātus qui missus erat,	<i>the ambassador who had been sent.</i>
Legiō, quae missa erat,	<i>the legion which had been sent.</i>
Oppidum quod erat expūgnātum,	<i>the town which had been taken by storm.</i>
Lēgātus quem miserant,	<i>the ambassador whom they had sent.</i>
Adventus lēgātōrum quōs miserant,	<i>the arrival of the ambassadors whom they had sent.</i>
Ab oppidō quod erat expūgnātum,	<i>from the town which had been taken by storm.</i>
Germāni quibuscum bellum gesserant,	<i>the Germans with whom they had waged war.</i>

Observation.—Change of form in the relative pronoun. (The declension of **qui** is given in Part III., section 24.) What deter-

1. For *desum*, see footnote 1, page 54.

2. Instead of using *res*, the word *thing*, with an adjective (or pronoun) in agreement, may be expressed by using in Latin the neuter of the adjective (or pronoun). This should be done only in the nominative and accusative cases.

mines the number, the gender, the case, of the pronoun? **Cum** with the relative. The position of the clause introduced by the relative pronoun.¹

EXERCISE XXXIX.

I.—1. Ex alterā parte vicī, quam Gallīs concēsserat, omnēs discēdere coepērunt. 2. Reliquum exercitum in² Morinōs, ab quibus lēgātī non vēnerant, dūxit. 3. Cum solā decimā legiōne, dē quā nōn dubitābat et cui indulserat, discēssūrus erat. 4. Caesar posterō diē lēgātum, cum legiōnibus, quās ex Britannīā redūxerat, in² Morinōs, quī rebellīōnem fēcerant, mīsīt. 5. Cum lēgātīs Commium, cūjus virtūtem et cōsilium probābat, mittit. 6. In finēs Aeduōrum, quī proximī Sēquanīs erant, exercitum dūxit. 7. Ab omnibus nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolunt, lēgātī ad Caesarem missī sunt. 8. Nāvēs habent plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvīgant. 9. Ad oppidum, quod circiter mille passūs aberat, cōnfūgērunt. 10. Omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam habet auctōritātem.

II.—1. The Belgians are nearest to the Germans, who dwell across the Rhine, with whom they are continually waging war. 2. He ordered Labienus with two legions which had wintered in the province to hasten to the river, which was ten miles distant. 3. They did what they had been ordered. 4. He is likely to persuade Casticus, whose father has possessed royal power among the Sequani for many years. 5. He will collect all his retainers, of whom he has a great number. 6. He sends the cavalry in advance through the forest (of) Ardennes,³ which is the largest in (*literally, of*) all Gaul. 7. Twenty-four thousand Germans came to Ariovistus, who had settled in the country of the Sequani. 8. Two legions, which he had enrolled in hither Gaul, brought up the whole line of march. 9. The Sequani, through whose territories

1. The relative clause is regularly placed immediately after the word to which the relative pronoun refers (the antecedent). The order in each of the Latin sentences in the exercise should be observed.

2. Translate *in* by *against*.

3. In such phrases as the city of Rome, the province of Gaul, where the city is Rome, etc., Latin does not use the genitive, but puts the words in the same case.

we had marched, were going to rebuild the towns which had been burnt. 10. Dumnorix had command of the cavalry which had been sent.

LESSON XL.

Expectandus est,	<i>he should be awaited.</i>
Equus removendus est,	<i>the horse must be removed.</i>
Lēgātus mittendus erat,	<i>an ambassador ought to have been sent.</i>
Locus mūniendus erit,	<i>the place will have to be fortified.</i>
Castra mūnienda erant,	<i>the camp had to be fortified.</i>
Bellum gerendum est,	<i>war is to be waged.</i>
Lēgātī mittendī sunt,	<i>ambassadors ought to be sent.</i>
Legiō expectanda erit,	<i>the legion will have to be awaited.</i>
Cōpiæ expectandæ erant,	<i>the forces should have been awaited.</i>

Observation.—Formation in the different conjugations of the new part¹ of the verb here joined with the verb **sum** (see the first four examples). Changes in the ending of the gerundive. The various translations given for each tense.

EXERCISE XL.

I.—1. Bellum gerendum erat. 2. Lēgātī ad Caesarem mittendī sunt. 3. Altera pars vicī Gallīs concēdenda est, altera cohortibus. 4. Injūriæ Aeduōrum nōn negligendæ erant. 5. Proelium committendum est. 6. Ab injūriā prohibendī eritis. 7. Omnia² ūnō tempore agenda erant. 8. In hiberna redūcendī sumus. 9. Coercendus atque dēterendus erās. 10. Hieme nāvēs aedificandæ, veterēsque reficiendæ sunt. 11. Exercitus trānsportandus est. 12. Lēgātī audiendī erant. 13. Hostēs sunt opprimendī. 14. Aeduōs ab injūriā dēfendī. 15. Cōpiæ hostium submovendæ erant.

II.—1. All the horses should have been removed out of sight.
2. The arrival of the cohorts which Cæsar sent must be awaited.

1. This form is called the *Gerundive*; it expresses duty or necessity, and is always passive.

2. See footnote 2, page 56.

3. The opportunity is not to be lost. 4. The camp ought to be fortified with a double wall. 5. The line of battle had to be drawn up. 6. The hostages will have to be restored. 7. Two cohorts should have been sent to the smaller camp, which was three miles distant. 8. Peace must be established with the nearest states. 9. The war ought to be renewed. 10. The baggage should have been stationed in one place. 11. Forces had to be raised. 12. The rest of the army is to be led into the country of the Morini. 13. The soldiers should be recalled from work. 14. You should have been sent in advance. 15. The camp must be defended.

LESSON XLI.

Commōtī sunt quod māgna	<i>they were alarmed because a large</i>
pars exercitūs interfecta	<i>part of the army had been</i>
erat,	<i>slain.</i>
Dum Rōmānī castra pōnunt,	<i>while the Romans were pitching</i>
hostēs impetum subitō fē-	<i>their camp, the enemy sud-</i>
cērunt,	<i>denly made an attack.</i>
Ubi parātī sunt, oppida omnia	<i>when they were ready, they burned</i>
incendērunt,	<i>all their towns.</i>
Postquam pervēnit, obsidēs	<i>after (or when) he arrived, he de-</i>
poposcit,	<i>manded hostages.</i>
Simul atque dē adventū Cae-	<i>as soon as they were informed of</i>
saris certiōrēs factī sunt,	<i>Cesar's arrival, they sent am-</i>
lēgātōs mīserunt,	<i>bassadors.</i>
Obsidēs, ut imperāverat, ad-	<i>the hostages were brought, as he</i>
ductī sunt,	<i>had ordered.</i>

Observation.—How are the ideas *because, while, when, after, as soon as* and *as* expressed in Latin? What peculiarity in the tense used with **dum**?¹ What tense is used after **ubi, postquam, simul atque**?² The position of the dependent clause in each sentence.

1. Latin uses the present tense with *dum*, where the imperfect might have been expected.

2. Latin uses the perfect tense with *ubi, postquam* and *simul atque*, where English could use either the past or the past perfect forms.

EXERCISE XLI.

I.—1. Summa erat difficultās quod militēs māgnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressī sunt. 2. Ubi lēgātī ad Caesarem revertērunt, obsidēs quīngentōs poposcit. 3. Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiae in ūnum locum coāctae sunt, ad flūmen Axonam, quod est in finibus Rēmōrum, contendērunt. 4. Dum bellum cum Venetīs geritur, Sabīnus cum cōpiis quās ā Caesare accēperat, in fines Rēmōrum pervēnit. 5. Miserior et gravior est fortūna Sēquanōrum, quod sōlī auxilium implōrāre nōn audent. 6. Cōpiae¹ simul atque in āridō cōstitērunt, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt. 7. Ut postea ex captivīs comperit, adventus Labiēnī nōn cōgnitus erat. 8. Hostēs¹ ubi equitēs cōspexērunt, impetum subitō fēcērunt. 9. Bellum gerendum erat in locīs ubi² alter lēgātus interfectus est, atque unde alter profūgerat. 10. Helvētiī, quod prīdiē Rōmānī proelium nōn commiserant, novissimum agmen lacessere coepērunt.

II.—1. When neither army begins the battle, Cæsar leads his forces back to the camp. 2. Of all the Gauls the Belgians were the bravest, because they were the nearest to the Germans, with whom they were continually waging war. 3. We are going to march through the province, because we have no other road. 4. When the Helvetians were informed of (*literally, about*) Cæsar's arrival, they sent ambassadors. 5. He ordered the Helvetians to rebuild all the towns which they had burned, because the place whence they had departed was unoccupied. 6. The forces had to be led back to the province, because there³ was a scarcity of corn. 7. While the ships were assembling, ambassadors came from a large part of the Morini to Cæsar. 8. As soon as he learned of (*literally, about*) Cæsar's departure, he began to collect forces. 9. Because he was eighteen miles from the largest town of the Aedui, he turned (his) march aside from the Helvetians. 10. The barbarians were alarmed because the town had been taken by storm.

1. Often in Latin the subject (or some other prominent word) of a dependent sentence beginning with a conjunction, is placed before the conjunction. This is especially common where the subject is the same as that of the leading verb.

2. *Ubi* means *where* as well as *when*.

3. See footnote 1, page 45.

LESSON XLII.

The declension of the pronouns *ego* (*I*), *tū* (*you*), and *is, ea, id* (*he, she, it*), is given in Part III., sections 18, 19 and 22.

Observation.—The translation of the various forms of the personal pronouns.¹

EXERCISE XLII.

I.—1. Pācem vōbīscum² fēcerāmus. 2. Ab eīs circumveniēmur. 3. Impetum in nōs fēcērunt. 4. Māgnam inter eōs auctōritātem habēbat. 5. Nihil ā vōbīs postulō. 6. Ubi lēgātōs dē dēditōne ad eum mīsērunt, adventum Caesaris eōs exspectāre jūssit. 7. Tēcum² remittendī sunt. 8. Mīrum mihi vidētur. 9. Duo frātrēs eīs praeerant. 10. Jūssit eōs impedīmenta in ūnum locum collocāre et eum mūnīre. 11. Ego vōbīs rēgna conciliābō. 12. Nūntius ā tē missus erat. 13. Id ab eō comperit. 14. Nōbīs nocēbat. 15. Mihi, nōn tibi, indulgēbat. 16. Eīs satisfēcimus dē injūriīs quās intulerāmus. 17. Tū, Labiēne, mihi reīque pūblīcae ūtilis fuistī. 18. Alteram partem vicī eīs concēssit.

II.—1. They sent ambassadors to him. 2. They will not spare you. 3. Hostages will be given up to us by you. 4. Peace must be established with them. 5. We slew a large part of them. 6. When we were informed of Cæsar's arrival, we sent ambassadors to him. 7. He ordered us to select a suitable place and fortify it with a double wall. 8. They favor us, not you. 9. The citizens fear you. 10. I had not made war on³ the Gauls, but the Gauls on me. 11. We do not believe him. 12. They will come with you. 13. We were eight miles from him. 14. He is not likely to persuade her. 15. He strove with us for many years about the leadership. 16. (His) son will have to be restored to him. 17. We shall aid the Gauls, who are wintering with us, neither with corn nor (any) other thing. 18. He sent an army into the country of the Morini, because ambassadors had not come from them.

1. The nominative of these pronouns should be used only when the subject of the verb is to be emphasized.

2. With the ablative (both singular and plural) of *ego, tu, sui*, and generally of *qui* and *quis*, the preposition *cum* is placed after the pronoun, forming one word with it. The accent, in such cases, is on the syllable preceding *cum*.

3. The phrase for *make war on* is *bellum infero*, with the dative case expressing the idea of *on*.

LESSON XLIII.

Bellum ā Rōmānīs gestum erat,	<i>war had been waged by the Romans.</i>
Bellum Rōmānīs gerendum erat,	<i>war should have been waged by the Romans, or the Romans should have waged war.</i>
Acies ā Caesare Instrūcta est,	<i>the line was drawn up by Caesar.</i>
Acies Caesarī Instruenda est,	<i>the line must be drawn up by Caesar, or Caesar must draw up the line.</i>
Occāsiō ā mē nōn āmittētur,	<i>the opportunity will not be lost by me.</i>
Occāsiō mihi nōn āmittenda est,	<i>the opportunity must not be lost by me, or I must not lose the opportunity.</i>

Observation.—How is the personal agent expressed in Latin with ordinary passive forms? with the gerundive? Notice also the free translation of the gerundive by the active voice.¹

EXERCISE XLIII.

I.—1. Caesarī omnia² tūnō tempore erant agenda; vexillum prōpōnendum,³ signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī militēs quī castra mūnīre coeperant, acies instruenda. 2. Allobrogibus vel persuāsūrī sumus, vel vī coactūrī. 3. Cōpiāe hostium Sabīnō distīnendae erunt. 4. Clāssis, quae ab eis missa est, nōbīs est exspectanda. 5. Loca superiōra occupātūrī sunt. 6. Postquam equitātus in cōspectum vēnit, hostēs terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus est occisus. 7. Nūllam partem noctis iter vōbīs intermittendum est. 8. Mihi nōn āmittenda erat occāsiō. 9. Rēs tibi cōgitanda est. 10. Castra erant angustiōra quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat. 11. Dum reliquae cōpiāe

1. There is no form in the Latin active voice corresponding to the gerundive of the passive voice, but by a change in the form of the English sentence, duty or obligation expressed in the active voice may be rendered into Latin by the passive gerundive.

2. See footnote 2, page 56.

3. With each of the gerundives *erat* (or *erant*) is to be understood.

conveniunt, lēgātī ad eum vērunt. 12. Complūrēs ex eīs occidērunt.

II.—1. Ambassadors should have been sent to him by us. 2. You must not lead a larger number of men across. 3. Cæsar will have to raise large forces. 4. When Cæsar found it out, he ordered them to hasten with us to the river. 5. We are not going to make war on¹ them, because the winters are very early in Gaul. 6. Opportunity had been given him.² 7. Labienus must seize the heights. 8. The army will have to be led across without baggage, on account of the scarcity of ships. 9. Some had to fill up the trenches, others to tear down the walls. 10. I must not neglect the wrongs of the Aedui. 11. He was going to break up camp the next night in the fourth watch. 12. They must await the arrival of the forces. 13. As soon as they made an attack on us, Cæsar had to remove all the horses out of sight. 14. The Morini, from whom ambassadors have not come, are going to collect very large forces and renew the war.

LESSON XLIV.

- (a) Sē abdidit, *he hid himself.*
 Sē abdidērunt, *they hid themselves.*
 Duās legiōnēs sēcum ēdūxit, *he led out two legions with him.*
 Duās legiōnēs cum cō mīsīt, *he sent two legions with him.*

Observation.—The declension of the word from which *sē* comes (Part III., section 20). How are the singular and plural to be distinguished? Two translations (*e.g.*, *him* and *himself*) given. Difference between *sē* and *is*. Position when used with *cum*.³

- (b) Meum adventum exspec- *he awaited my arrival.*
 tāvit,
 Tuum adventum, Caesar, *he awaited your arrival, Caesar.*
 exspectāvit,
 Nostrum adventum exspec- *he awaited our arrival.*
 tāvit.

1. See footnote 3, page 61. 2. Literally, *to him*. 3. See footnote 2, page 61.

Vestrum adventum exspectāvit, civēs,	<i>he awaited your arrival, citizens.</i>
Nōs adventum suum exspectāre jūssit,	<i>he ordered us to await his arrival.</i>
Nōs adventum ejus exspectāre jūssērunt,	<i>they ordered us to await his arrival.</i>
Nōs adventum suum exspectāre jūssērunt,	<i>they ordered us to await their arrival.</i>
Nōs adventum eōrum exspectāre jūssit,	<i>he ordered us to await their arrival.</i>

Observation.—Manner of expressing in Latin the possessive pronouns, *my, your, our, his (her, its), their*. For the declension of the Latin possessive pronouns see Part III., section 21. Difference between **tuus** and **vester**, **suus** and **ejus**, **suus** and **eōrum**.

(c) Arma trādidērunt,	<i>they gave up their arms.</i>
In officiō permanēbimus,	<i>we shall remain in our allegiance.</i>
Filiū mīsit,	<i>he sent his son.</i>
Filiū suū mīsit,	<i>he sent his own son.</i>

Observation.—When are the English possessive pronouns not expressed in Latin? What is the effect if they are expressed when not needed for clearness' sake?

EXERCISE XLIV.

I.—1. In cōspectū exercitūs nostrī, agrī eōrum vastātī erant. 2. Eōrum fugā nostrī² erant perterritī. 3. Cūr dē tuā virtūte aut dē meā diligentīā dēspērās? 4. Sē suaque² omnia sine morā eī dēdidērunt. 5. Eōs suū adventum exspectāre jūssit. 6. Ubi dē ejus adventū Helvētīi certiorēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt. 7. Frātre tuū ad sē vocat. 8. Helvētīi quī vōs nōn solum in suis sed etiam in vestrīs finibus superāvērunt, nostrō exercitū nōn parēs sunt. 9. Ego meīs cōpiīs meōque exercitū vōbīs rēgna conciliābō. 10. Legiō, quam sēcum habēbat, in nostrōs² impetum fēcit. 11. Sēquanīs, quī intrā finēs suōs eum recēpērunt, quōrum

1. See footnote 2, page 13.

2. *Nostrī* is often used without a noun, in the sense of *our men*; so *sui* may mean *his (or their) men, friends, people, and sua* (neuter plural), *their possessions*.

omnia oppida in potestāte ējus sunt, omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendī. 12. Rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupātūrus est. 13. Vestrae salūtis causā suum periculum neglĕxērunt. 14. Sēsē in silvās abdidērunt. 15. Caesar primum suum deinde omnium equōs ex cōnspectū remōvit. 16. Sē in montem recēpērunt. 17. Sē ad suōs recēpit.

II.—1. He resolved to lead out with him two legions. 2. The Helvetians had now led their forces into the territories of the Aedui, and were laying waste their fields. 3. He gave the signal to his men.¹ 4. He ordered us to obey him. 5. He hastens to them and sends all the cavalry before him. 6. They will not withstand the attacks of our men.¹ 7. On his arrival they withdrew themselves and all their possessions¹ into the town. 8. They were waging war with your allies. 9. The cavalry betook themselves to him. 10. For the sake of their safety I neglected my own danger. 11. They are going to join battle with our men.¹ 12. Cæsar was restraining his men¹ from battle. 13. We learned it through their messengers. 14. Cæsar ought to lead the legions which he has with him across into our province. 15. We are going to march through your territories. 16. They will surrender themselves to him.

LESSON XLV.

Adventū Caesaris commōtī sunt,	<i>they were alarmed by Cæsar's arrival.</i>
Adventū Caesaris commōtī, iēgātōs mīserunt,	<i>alarmed (or being alarmed) by Cæsar's arrival, they sent hostages.</i>
Cōpiæ in ūnum locum coāctæ erant,	<i>the forces had been gathered to one place.</i>
Cōpiæ in ūnum locum coāctæ, in prōvinciam mittentur,	<i>the forces, after being gathered (or on being gathered) to one place, will be sent into the province.</i>
Legiō dēlēcta est,	<i>a legion was chosen.</i>
Legiōnem dēlēctam mīsit,	<i>he sent a chosen legion.</i>

1. See footnote 2, page 64.

Observation.—The use and force of *commōti*, *coāctae*, *dēlēcta*, when no longer joined with parts of the verb *sum*.¹ The different translations given. The voice. The relation in point of time of the participle and the principal verb. The formation and declension of the participle.

EXERCISE XLV.

I.—1. Nostrō adventū commōtus, Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā cōscribit. 2. Nōnnūllī pudōre adductī remanēbunt. 3. Vulneribus cōfectī, barbarī sē in fugam contulērunt.² 4. Repentīnō ējus adventū prohibitus, cōpiās in finēs suōs redūxit. 5. In nostrōs disjectōs impetum fēcērunt. 6. In omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. 7. Spē praedae adductī, in Galliam contendērunt. 8. Hostēs vulneribus cōfectōs ex loco superioriore in flūmen compulimus. 9. Barbarī commōtī quod oppidum, et³ nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum, expūgnātum erat, mājōrēs cōpiās parāre coepērunt. 10. Omnēs Belgārum cōpiae, in ūnum locum coāctae, ad eum veniēbant. 11. Impulsī ā principibus, ā nōbīs dēfectūrī erant. 12. Hostēs undique circumventī, fugā salūtem petiērunt. 13. Celeritāte Rōmānōrum commōtī, lēgātōs ad eum dē dēditōne mittunt. 14. Alteram vicī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuum ab eīs relictam cohortibus attribuit. 15. Helvētīū omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt.

II.—1. After being driven back into the town they made a sally. 2. They withdrew themselves and all their possessions into a place excellently fortified by nature. 3. Alarmed by the want of supplies, he hastened the next day to the province. 4. The Aedui, after being called brothers by the senate, are held in bondage by him. 5. Being defeated by the first attack of our men, they betook themselves to the camp. 6. Dumnorix on being recalled had resisted the cavalry. 7. The Aedui, being defeated by him, had suffered great loss. 8. The soldiers, weighed down by the heavy burden of their armor, had to join battle with the enemy

1. This part of the verb is known as the *Perfect Participle Passive*.

2. *Contulerunt* is from *confero*.

3. *Et . . . et* here, as often, means *both . . . and*.

at an unfavorable time. 9. Cæsar, on being informed of their approach, leads out with him all the cavalry and hastens to them. 10. Led by his influence, they detained the ambassadors sent by him. 11. Dismayed by the appearance of the ships, the barbarians halted. 12. The Aedui, having been crushed by the battles and disasters, had given hostages to him. 13. The Helvetians, alarmed by his sudden approach, are going to send ambassadors to him. 14. He has led his forces across into Gaul, having been asked and invited by the Gauls. 15. Driven by madness and folly, they have made war¹ on us.

LESSON XLVI.

Turning to Part III., section 39, examine the inflection of the verb **capĭō**, in the indicative (active and passive), the present infinitive active, and the gerundive passive.

Observation.—The peculiarities of inflection in verbs like **capĭō**.²

EXERCISE XLVI.

I.—1. Accipiet. 2. Sē recipiunt. 3. Faciendum est. 4. Tēla conjiciēbant. 5. Nūntiat. 6. Rēs est suscipienda. 7. Sē in oppidum recipere coepērunt. 8. Suscipiētur. 9. Superiōra loca multitūdine hostium complēta cōspiciēbantur. 10. Perfacile est cōnāta perficere. 11. Mūnitiōnēs perficientur. 12. Lēgātōs interficiunt. 13. Ex oppidō profugere nōn audēbunt. 14. Condiōnēs pācis accipiendae erant. 15. Ab amīciā populī Rōmānī dēficiēbant. 16. Nōn solum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficiunt.

II.—1. The Roman people makes peace with them. 2. They undertake the war. 3. They were marching through the province. 4. The war should not have been undertaken. 5. We fortify. 6. Supplies will fail us. 7. He will be put to death by them. 8. They were ordered to hurl their darts. 9. The fortifications must be finished. 10. We receive. 11. They will make an attack. 12. They will announce. 13. They hesitate to revolt from the Aedui. 14. He undertakes the matter. 15. They perceive him. 16. They were fleeing.

1. See footnote 3, page 61.

2. See Part III., section 67.

LESSON XLVII.

(a) Turn to Part III., section 23.

Observation.—The declension of **hic** and **ille**.

- (b) **Prōvincia mea haec est, illa** *this is my province, that (is) yours.*
vestra,
Eum locum mūnīverunt, *they fortified that place.*
In eōs qui haec faciēbant *they made an attack on those who*
impetum fēcērunt, *were doing this (literally,*
these things).¹
Lēgātī pācem ā Caesare pe- *the ambassadors asked peace of*
tiērunt. Ille haec re- *Caesar. He answered as fol-*
spondit, *lows (literally, these things).*

Observation.—The various translations of **hic**, **ille** and **is**. What word is used for *that (those)* when emphatic (by contrast)? when the antecedent of a relative? When is **ille**, not **is**, used for *he (they, etc.)*?²

EXERCISE XLVII.

I.—1. Haec omnia¹ Gallīs erant incōgnita. 2. Gallōs, quī ea loca incoluerant, expulērunt. 3. Hōs Germanōs Helvētīi, nōn solum in suis, sed etiam in illōrum finibus, superāverant. 4. Haec cōsuētūdō victūs cum illā nōn comparanda est. 5. Hī in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. 6. Ad eam sententiam haec ratiō dēdūxit. 7. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, ad maritimās regiōnēs, quibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, nūntiōs mittit. 8. Nostri pīla in hostēs conjiciunt. Illi pīmo concursū in fugam conjectī proximās silvās petiērunt. 9. Hōc latus insulae pertinet circiter millia passuum quīngenta. 10. Ab iīs, quōs miserat, explorātōribus haec cōgnōvit. 11. Hunc illī comprehenderant. 12. Hūjus locī haec erat nātūra. 13. Ūnī ex omnibus, Sēquanī nihil eārum rērum faciēbant, quās cēteri fēcērant. 14. Illum prō amicō, tē prō hoste habēbō.

1. See footnote 2, page 56.

2. *Ille* is practically an emphatic *is*; hence when *he* or *they* is emphasized, *ille* should be used. This includes the case where there is a change of subject, as in the last example.

II.—1. The Helvetians on the following day move their camp from that place. 2. On being informed of these things, he orders them to give up all their arms. They quickly do (his) commands. 3. We shall defend those into whose territories Cæsar has sent this army. 4. Alarmed by all these things, they send ambassadors to him. 5. These do¹ not agree with those. 6. The width of this forest extends a nine days' journey. 7. Of all these the Belgians are the bravest, because they are nearest to the Germans. 8. By this speech he persuades them. 9. On their arrival he leads his forces into the country of the Morini. They flee into the woods and swamps. 10. This legion Cæsar had indulged. 11. At that time he held the leading place in this state. 12. They hasten towards the camp and those who were finishing the fortifications. 13. Our men drove them into the woods, but lost a few of (*literally, out of*) their comrades. 14. As soon as Cæsar came to the border of these woods, they betook themselves to their friends, and Cæsar led his forces into winter quarters.

LESSON XLVIII.

(a) Turn to Part III., section 33.

Observation.—The formation in each conjugation of the present participle active.

- (b) **Adventum Caesaris expectans magnas copiâs coëgit,** *while awaiting Cæsar's approach he raised large forces.*
- Adventum Caesaris expectantès castra munièmus,** *while awaiting Cæsar's approach we shall fortify the camp.*
- Légatum fortiter resistentem vulnerâverunt,** *they wounded the lieutenant while he was bravely resisting.*
- In eòs fugientès impetum fëcimus,** *we made an attack on them as (or while or when) they were fleeing.*
-

1. See footnote 2, page 19.

Observation.—Declension and agreement of present participle active. The different translations given. The voice. The relation in point of time of the participle and of the principal verb.

(c) Equitēs revocārī jūssit,	<i>he ordered the cavalry to be recalled.</i>
Fossās complērī jūssit,	<i>he ordered the trenches to be filled.</i>
Nāvēs cōgī jūssit,	<i>he ordered ships to be collected.</i>
Castra mūnīrī jūssit,	<i>he ordered a camp to be fortified.</i>

Observation.—The formation in each conjugation and the translation of the present infinitive passive.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

I.—1. Discēdēns ab hiberniis in Italiam, jūssit plūrimās hieme nāvēs aedificārī. 2. Lēgēs Aeduōrum duo ex ūnā familiā magistrātūs creārī vetant. 3. Māgnū numerum eōrum fugientium concīdērunt. 4. Haec flēns ā Caesare petīvit. 5. Nāvēs paulum removērī et rēmīs incitārī et ad¹ latus apertum hostium cōstitūi jūssit. 6. Succurrit illi Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit. 7. Equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere, simul castra altiōre vallō mūnīrī jūssit. 8. Caesar petentibus Aeduīs concēssit. 9. Scaphās militibus complērī jubet, et subsidia eīs quōs labōrantēs cōspicit submittī. 10. Hunc fugientem silvae tēxērunt. 11. Obsidēs in continentem addūcī jūssit. 12. Fortiter pūgnāns interfectus est. 13. Hostēs, hīs rēbus permōtī, Lutētiam incendi, pontēsque ējus oppidī rescindī jubent.

II.—1. He orders the ambassadors to be called to him. 2. Cæsar, while expecting a larger uprising of Gaul, began to hold a levy. 3. Weeping they besought him. 4. He ordered the camp to be fortified by a wall. 5. We made an attack on the enemy as they were betaking themselves to the camp. 6. Our men, while resisting bravely, were surrounded by the enemy's cavalry. 7. He ordered the enemy to be dislodged and driven off with slings and arrows. 8. Lucius Cotta while fighting is slain with a very large portion of the soldiers, the rest betake themselves to the camp. 9. On departing they order cavalry to be procured. 10.

1. Translate *ad* here by *on*.

Influenced by their statements, he ordered the battle to be begun. 11. The enemy, because they had a larger number of men, surrounded our men as they were fighting. 12. We seized him as he was fleeing.

LESSON XLIX.

(a) Turn to Part III., section 23.

Observation.—The declension of *ipse* and *idem*.

(b) *Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus castra mūnre jubet, ipse in Galliam contendit,* *he orders Labienus with two legions to fortify the camp, he himself hastens to Gaul.*

Ab Aeduis ipsis certior factus est, *he was informed by the Aedui themselves.*

Sē ad castra recēpērunt, *they betook themselves to the camp.*

Eāsdem cōpiās reliquit, *he left the same forces.*

Observation.—The translation of *ipse* and *idem*. The difference between *sē* and *ipse*.¹

EXERCISE XLIX.

I.—1. Eōdem tempore Caesarem certiōrem faciunt dē ējus adventū. 2. Omnibus Gallis *idem*² est faciendum, quod Helvētiī fecērunt. 3. Aquilam intrā vallum prōjēcit, ipse prō castris pūgnāns occiditur. 4. Postulat eadem.² 5. Haec ipsi ab aliis audiverant. 6. Eōdem diē hostēs sub monte cōnsēderant millia passuum ab Caesaris castris octo. 7. Neque Caesaris ipsius adventus neque Labiēni cōgnitus erat. 8. Ab eisdem nostra cōnsilia hostibus ēnūntiantur. 9. Cōstituit cohortēs duās in prōvinciā collocāre, et ipse cum reliquis ējus legiōnis cohortibus hiemāre. 10. Hōrum auctōritāte adducti, eādē dē causā lēgātōs retinent. 11. Eādē nocte sē interficiunt. 12. Eīdem prīncipēs quī³ ante vēnerant ad eum revertērunt. 13. Ipse in Aeduōs, quae civitās

1. *Se* is the reflexive pronoun of the third person; *ipse* is used purely for emphasis, and may be used of any person.

2. See footnote 2, page 56.

3. Notice that, after *idem*, *qui* may be translated *as*, instead of *who*.

propinqua hīs locīs erat, contendit. 14. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus, quod ipse longē aberat, nāvēs aedificārī, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā instituī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī jubet.

II.—1. On the same day ambassadors sent by the enemy came to Caesar. 2. He himself drew up a triple line of four legions. 3. He hastens to them by the same route and sends all the cavalry before him. 4. He had learned this from the Romans themselves through the same messengers. 5. He ordered them to be sent to him. 6. The same night the camp was moved. 7. These are the same enemies with whom the Helvetians have waged war. 8. They themselves sought denser forests. 9. The enemy betook themselves to the camp. 10. The next day they move the camp from that place ; Caesar does the same. 11. Supplies began to fail the enemy themselves. 12. Hostages were given up, and the two sons of the king himself. 13. They were ordered to give themselves up to him. 14. The Sequani remained silent in the same dejection. 15. He himself began the battle on (*literally, from*) the right wing. 16. The town was protected by the very nature (*literally, the nature itself*) of the place.

LESSON L.

- (a) **Castris munitis, copiās In-** *the camp having been fortified, he*
struxit, *drew up his forces.*
- Obsidibus acceptis, pacem** (literally, hostages having been
fecit, *received) having received*
hostages (or after receiving
hostages), he made peace.
- Armīs traditis, pacem fecit,** (literally, arms having been given
up) when (or as) the arms
were given up, he made peace.
- Impetū factō, nostrōs per-** (literally, an attack having been
turbaverunt, *made) making an attack, they*
threw our men into confusion.
- Cognitō Caesaris adventū,** (literally, Caesar's arrival having
lēgātōs mittunt, *been learned) on learning of*
Caesar's arrival, they send
ambassadors.

Observation.—The nature of the ablative absolute.¹ The various translations for the ablative absolute in the perfect participle passive. The absence of a perfect participle active in Latin.

(b) *Nostris castra oppugnanti-* while (or as) our men were assault-
bus, eruptiōnem hostēs ing the camp, the enemy made
fēcērunt, a sally.

Observation.—The translation of the ablative absolute in the present participle active. The position of the ablative absolute clause.

EXERCISE L.

I.—1. Hōc proeliō factō, exercitum trādūcit. 2. Datō signō ex castris ērumpunt. 3. Vicis aedificiisque eōrum incēnsis, Caesar exercitum redūxit. 4. Hīs rēbus expositis, signum dat. 5. Hīs nūntiis acceptis, cōnsilium convocāvit. 6. Colle occupātō, mille passūs ab nostris mūnitiōnibus cōnsidunt. 7. Germānī clāmōre auditō, armīs abjectis sē ex castris ējēcērunt. 8. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās in Italiā cōscripserat in castris relictis, reliquās sex legiōnes prō castris in aciē cōstituit. 9. Hīs nūntiis litterisque commōtus, rē frūmentāriā comparātā, castra movet. 10. Nullō hoste prohibente, legiōnem in prōvinciam perdūxit, ibique hiemāvit. 11. Hīs cōstitūtis rēbus, paulum suprā eum locum pontem fēcērunt. 12. Dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptis, praesidia dēdūcent. 13. Itinere conversō, novissimum agmen lacessere coepērunt. 14. Multa, ipsō praesente, in conciliō Gallōrum dicta erant. 15. Phalange disjectā equitibusque repulsis, impetum in eōs fēcērunt. 16. Impedimentis relictis eruptiōne factā, eisdem itineribus quibus pervēnerant, ad flūmen Rhēnum contendērunt. 17. Celeritāte nostrōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt, et petentibus Rēmīs impetrant. 18. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvisā equitātūque comparātō, in hostium finēs exercitum intrōdūxit. 19. Nihil timentibus nostris, hostēs impetum fēcērunt. 20. Instrūctō exercitū ut loci nātūra postulābat, proelium commisit. 21. Helvētīū impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt, ipsī rējectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciēm succēssērunt. 22. Caesar, prīmum suō deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equis, proelium commisit.

1. See more fully Part III., section 85, o.

II.—1. After receiving many wounds, they betook themselves to the woods. 2. Having pitched the camp, they determined to await his arrival. 3. Collecting large forces, he drives him out of the state. 4. When several towns had been taken by storm, Cæsar determined to await the fleet. 5. Having procured supplies and selected the cavalry, he began to march into that country. 6. Drawing their swords, they seized the gates. 7. Having sent ambassadors, they had sought peace from him. 8. As a large number had been slain, the rest cast themselves into the river. 9. After capturing a large number of men and cattle and laying waste the fields, he compelled them to give hostages. 10. As our men were in distress, he ordered the third line to make an attack on the enemy's forces. 11. When several battles had been fought, they sent ambassadors to Cæsar and surrendered themselves to him. 12. On learning this (*literally, these things*), he sends Labienus in advance with three legions; he himself with the remaining two hastened to the river. 13. While these were fighting, a few fled to the camp. 14. Having slain a third part of them, our men began to attack the town. 15. On learning of his arrival, the enemy, collecting large forces, began a cavalry battle with our men on the march; then on their cavalry being defeated, they suddenly disclosed the infantry which they had stationed in ambush. 16. As (but) a few are defending (it), they are likely to take the town by storm. 17. Having thus routed all the forces of the enemy, they withdrew themselves to their own camp. 18. He himself, after drawing up a triple line of battle, advanced to the enemy's camp. 19. The signal being given, our men made an attack on the enemy's line. 20. Having in one summer finished two very important (*literally, great*) wars, Cæsar withdrew the army into winter quarters; he himself wintered in hither Gaul. 21. As these were resisting bravely, he ordered the ships to be removed.

LESSON LI.

Quis tibi persuāsit?

who has persuaded you?

Quem ūsum belli habent?

what experience of war have they?

Quid vēnistis?

why have you come?

Quanta est Insula?	<i>how large is the island?</i>
Uter est celerior?	<i>which (of the two) is the swifter?</i>
Cūr mē accūsās?	<i>why do you accuse me?</i>

Observation.—The difference between the English and the Latin verb in asking a question.¹ The declension of the interrogative pronouns. (For **quis** and **qui**, see Part III., section 25; for **uter**, section 14.)

EXERCISE LI.

I.—1. Quanta est insulae magnitūdō? 2. In utram partem² flūmen fluit? 3. Quis ejus cōsiliī auctor fuit? 4. Quā dē causā³ discēdunt? 5. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, bellum parāre coepērunt. 6. Quae et quantae nātiōnēs Britanniam incolunt? 7. Quid mihi faciendum est? 8. Primā lūce prōductis omnibus cōpiis, duplici aciē instructā, hostēs exspectābat. 9. His rēbus cōgnitis, eum ad sē vocārī jubet. 10. Cūr ab officiō discēssūrus es? 11. Quibus ex regiōnibus³ vēnistis, quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōvistis? 12. Quid dubitās? 13. Quid petunt aliud Rōmānī? 14. Quid illō bellō simile fuit? 15. Cūr dē vestrā virtūte aut dē meā diligentiā dēspērātis? 16. Hāc orātiōne habitā, concilium dīmisit.

II.—1. What states are in arms? 2. Why have they led their forces across into our territories? 3. What⁴ was said in the council of the Gauls about him? 4. Alarmed by the scarcity of corn and supplies, he hastened the next day into the province, after burning all the buildings of that village. 5. What⁴ is being done in the enemy's camp? 6. In what³ place have the forces of the enemy encamped? 7. How large a number of men are they likely to send to that war? 8. The enemy, after losing all their baggage, fled. 9. What (*literally, of what sort*) is the nature of the mountain? 10. On giving this answer he withdrew. 11. In

1. In English the order is often different in a statement and in a question, the subject (unless it is itself the interrogative pronoun) coming after either the whole or part of the verb; e.g., *he has come, has he come?* No such difference is found in Latin. See also footnote 2, page 19. In both Latin and English the interrogative begins the sentence.

2. *In . . . partem=in . . . direction, literally, into . . . quarter (or part).*

3. When the interrogative pronoun agrees with a noun which depends on a preposition of one syllable, the order is pronoun, preposition, noun; this order is usual with the relative pronouns also, and is often found with emphatic adjectives.

4. The neuter plural, literally, *what things*, is very commonly rendered by *what*. See footnote 2, page 56.

what¹ place is Cæsar? 12. In what¹ direction are the enemy marching? 13. With whom are they waging war? 14. What² have you heard or learned about this matter? 15. On receiving hostages he leaves Labienus with the cavalry in the same village; he himself hastens to the nearest town. 16. What is more disgraceful? 17. Which is the more disgraceful deed?

LESSON LII.

(a) Longē, far;	longius, farther;	longissimē, farthest, or very far.
Liberē, freely;	liberius, more freely.	liberrimē, most, or very freely.
Acriter, fiercely;	acrius, more fiercely.	acerrimē, most, or very fiercely.
Fortiter, bravely;	fortius, more bravely.	fortissimē, most, or very bravely.
Diligenter, care- fully;	diligentius, more carefully.	diligentissimē, most, or very carefully.

Observation.—The regular formation of adverbs from adjectives in the positive, comparative and superlative degrees.³

(b) Turn to Part III., section 17.

Observation.—Irregular formation and comparison of adverbs.

(c) Quam m̄xim̄as cōpl̄as cō-	he collected forces as large as possible.
git,	sible.
Quam longissimē,	as far as possible.

Observation.—The translation of a superlative modified by *quam*.

EXERCISE LII.

I.—1. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt. 2. Inter-

1. See footnote 3, page 75.

2. See footnote 4, page 75.

3. The corresponding adjectives are *longus, a, um; liber, era, erum; acer, acris, acre; fortis, e; diligens, entis*.

pretibus remōtīs, dīcit liberius atque audācius. 3. Sē in currūs citissimē recipiunt. 4. Ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter ēvēnit. 5. Novō genere pūgnae perterritīs nostrīs, illī per mediōs audācissimē per-rūpērunt. 6. Quam māximīs itineribus in Galliam ūteriōrem contendit. 7. Id quod ipsī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ille ūnō diē fēcit. 8. Cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appetunt. 9. Mīlitēs legiōnis decimae, cui quā māximē cōfidēbat, ācriter pūgnāvērunt. 10. Quā minimē arduus ascēnsus erat, ex oppidō ēruptiōnem subitō fēcērunt. 11. Facillimē impetūs hostium diū-tius sustinēbimus. 12. Haec cīvitās longē plūrimum tōtīus Galliae valet. 13. Haec cīvitās diū plūrimum tōtīus Galliae valēbat. 14. Hīs rēbus quā mātūrrimē occurrere cōstituit. 15. Huīc legiōnī Caesar indulserat praecipuē, et propter virtūtem cōfidēbat māximē. 16. Omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pūgnāvērunt. 17. Quam aequissimum locum dēlēgit, atque castra quā māximē contrāxit.

II.—1. They will resist us less easily. 2. They are approaching nearer. 3. After procuring supplies as quickly as possible, he hastens by forced marches towards Ariovistus. 4. Our men were greatly alarmed. 5. They began to resist more boldly and fight more bravely. 6. He persuades them more easily because the Helvetians are hemmed in on all sides by the nature of the country. 7. Our men hesitated to leap down, chiefly on account of the depth of the sea. 8. He forbade the soldiers to depart too far¹ from the line of march. 9. Our men, quickly making an attack on them, fought long and vigorously. 10. He ordered as many ships as possible to be collected in that winter. 11. The right of ambassadors must be more carefully upheld. 12. Many ships were most seriously shattered. 13. He demanded as large a number of soldiers as possible. 14. He stationed the army in winter quarters in those states which had last made war. 15. He himself is slain while fighting bravely. 16. He determined to have an escort as friendly as possible. 17. He has waged many wars with the neighboring states most successfully.

1. Translate *too far* by the comparative; literally, *farther (than they should)*.

LESSON LIII.

(a) Morābantur , <i>they were delaying.</i>	Secūtī erant , <i>they had followed.</i>
Morātus , <i>after delaying.</i>	Sequī coepit , <i>he began to follow.</i>
Verētur , <i>he fears.</i>	Potitur , <i>he gains.</i>
Veritus , <i>fearing.</i>	Potitus , <i>having gained.</i>
	Prōgreditur , <i>he advances.</i>

Observation.—To what voice do these verb-forms belong (a) with respect to their form, (b) with respect to the translation ?¹

(b) **Sequēns**, *while following.*

Secūtūrī sunt, *they are going to follow.*

Observation.—To which voice do these forms belong ?

For a synopsis of the deponent verb in all conjugations, see Part III., section 40.

EXERCISE LIII.

I.—1. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar morātur, tempestās subitō coorta est. 2. Helvētiī, oppidīs suīs vicīsque exūstīs, cum eīs proficiscuntur. 3. Lēgātōs cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit. 4. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī cōnsecūtī, māgnūm numerū eōrum concidērunt. 5. Inopiam frūmentī veritus, cōstituit nōn prōgredī longius. 6. Nostrīs militibus cunctantibus, centuriō deōs contestātus dēsilit. 7. Id cōspicātī, Helvētiī, itinere conversō, nostrōs insequī ac laessere coepērunt. 8. Dum civitās jūm suū exsequī cōnātur, Orgetorix mortuus est. 9. Germānōs cēdentēs insequī ausī erant. 10. Cohortātus suōs, hostēs aggressus est. 11. Nē in locīs quidem superiōribus hostēs cōsistere patiuntur. 12. Repulsī ab equitatū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnitum. 13. Hī nostrōs adortī proelium renovant. 14. Hīs cōstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam tempestātem, tertiā vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ūlteriōrem portum prōgredī et sē sequī jūssit. 15.

1. Such verbs are called *Deponents*. The principal parts, as given in the vocabulary, differ, of course, from those of the regular active verb; e.g., *moror, arī, atus sum; sequor, ī, secutus sum*. Of these the first is the present indicative, the second the infinitive marking the conjugation (see Lesson XLVIII., c), and the third the perfect indicative.

Equitātū suō pulsō atque insequentibus nostrīs, subitō pedestrēs cōpiās ostendērunt.

II.—1. Cæsar, after encouraging his men, gives the signal. 2. The Aedui had promised corn. 3. He did not allow the soldiers to go outside of the fortifications. 4. On the interpreters being removed he converses with him more freely. 5. After advancing seven miles from that place, he drew up the line of battle. 6. A sudden war arose in Gaul. 7. When this battle had been reported, those who had come to the Rhine began to return; he himself set out for hither Gaul. 8. He ordered the Helvetians to return to their own territories, from which they had set out. 9. They have not ventured to attack us. 10. They will attempt to seize the higher ground. 11. He himself sets out with all his forces. 12. At daybreak, leaving the camp of the Helvetians, they hastened to the territories of the Germans. 13. A great storm having arisen, all the ships were most seriously shattered. 14. Suddenly attacking them, they slew a large number. 15. With whom (*plural*) does he hold converse?

LESSON LIV.

- (a) **Virtūte praestant,** *they are superior in valor.*
Celeritāte omnēs praccē- *they excel all in speed.*
dunt,
Oppida numerō duodecim, *towns twelve in number.*
Oppidum nōmine Bibrax, *a town Bibrax by name.*

Observation.—The use of the ablative without a preposition to specify in what respect a statement or term is to be applied.

- (b) **Fortiōres quam Galli sunt,** *they are braver than the Gauls.*
Hibernia est minor quam *Ireland is smaller than Britain.*
Britannia,
Amplius octingentae nāvēs *more than eight hundred vessels*
erant visae, *had been seen.*
Militēs minus septingenti *less than seven hundred soldiers*
conveniunt, *assemble.*

Observation.—The force of *quam* after a comparative.¹ The omission of *quam* with numerals.²

EXERCISE LIV.

I.—1. Haec civitās hominum multitudine praestābat. 2. Magis virtūte quam dolō contendimus. 3. Venetī scientiā atque usū nauticārum rērum reliquōs Gallōs antecēdunt. 4. Virtūte omnibus praestātis. 5. Ūnō diē amplius vīgintī urbēs incenduntur. 6. Praestat omnia ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab Gallīs interficī. 7. Flūmen ab castris nōn amplius millia passuum decem aberat. 8. Germānōs Gallī virtūte superābant. 9. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacī et³ virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valent. 10. Haec rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit.⁴ 11. Aquitānia et³ regiōnum lātitudine et multitudine hominum tertia pars Galliae est aestimanda. 12. Gallōs dispersōs adortus, magis ratiōne et cōsiliō quam virtūte vīcit. 13. Plūs tertiā parte interfectā, reliquōs in fugam conjiciunt.

II.—1. The Helvetians surpass in valor all the rest of the Gauls. 2. They are strong in infantry. 3. He himself was not farther than a mile and a half from the enemy's camp. 4. Our fleet was superior in swiftness. 5. They themselves have not more than three hundred cavalry. 6. They are going to burn all their own towns, twelve in number. 7. The Gauls do not compare themselves with them in valor. 8. The lot of the Sequani is more wretched and bitter than (that) of the others. 9. Our men were equal to the enemy both in valor and in number. 10. The nights are shorter than in Gaul. 11. Labienus has collected all the ships, two hundred in number. 12. It is better to be slain in battle (*use aciēs*) than not to regain our liberty.

1. So also after words implying comparison, e.g., *praestat, it is better*. The use of the ablative of comparison is omitted here because of its rarity in Caesar.

2. So only after *amplius, plus, minus* and *longius*.

3. See footnote 3, page 66.

4. From *affero*.

LESSON LV.¹

- (a) Respondent Rōmānōs ve- they answer that the Romans are
nīre, coming.
Existimat Gallōs esse in- he thinks that the Gauls are hos-
imīcōs, tile.
Certior factus est Helvētiōs he has been informed that the Hel-
iter facere, vetians are marching.
Intellegit nostrōs castra he perceives that our men are
movēre, breaking up camp.

Observation.—The Latin equivalent for English clauses introduced by *that* after verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving. Mood. Case of subject. Translation of *that*.

- (b) Respondent Rōmānōs vē- they answer that the Romans have
nisse, come.
Existimat Gallōs fuisse in- he thinks that the Gauls have been
imīcōs, hostile.
Intellegit nostrōs castra he perceives that our men are
mōtūrōs (esse), going to move the camp.
Respondet sē nōn ventūrum he answers that he will not come.
(esse),
Respondent eum nōn ven- they answer that he will not come.
tūrum (esse),

Observation.—The formation of the various tenses of the infinitive active, and their translation after verbs of saying, thinking, etc. (See Part III., section 31, and for the verb *sum*, section 41.) The changes of form in the future infinitive.² Use of *sē* and *eum* as subject of an infinitive.³

1. On account of the length and difficulty of this lesson, the exercise is so arranged that sections (a), (b) and (c) may be taken as separate lessons. See more fully Part II., sections 12 and 16, and Part III., section 101, b.

2. The future infinitive is made up of the future participle in *-urus* and the infinitive of *sum*, but *esse* is generally omitted. The participle in *-urus* will, of course, agree in gender, number and case with the person to whom it refers, i.e., its subject.

3. *Se* regularly in short sentences refers to the subject of the verb on which the infinitive depends. As there are no personal endings with the infinitive, the subject should always be expressed by a noun or pronoun in the accusative case.

- (c) **Certior factus erat eōs iter** *he had been informed that they*
facere, *were marching.*
Respondērunt Rōmānōs ve- *they answered that the Romans*
nīre, *were coming.*
Respondērunt Rōmānōs vē- *they answered that the Romans*
nisse, *had come.*
Existimābat cōpiās ventū- *he thought that the forces would*
rās (esse), *come.*

Observation.—The translation of the various tenses of the infinitive, when the verb of saying, thinking, etc., is in a past tense, *i.e.*, imperfect, perfect (= English past) or pluperfect.¹

EXERCISE LV.

I.—(a) 1. Renūntiant Gallōs ex vicō discēdere. 2. Intellegit Nervios bellum parāre. 3. Nostrōs ex nāvī dēsīlire cōspiciunt.² 4. Hostem intrā portās esse existimant.² 5. Dicit cōpiās hostium fossās complēre vallumque scindere. 6. Vidētis nihil esse arduum.

(b) 7. Sē obsidēs recipērātūrū existimat. 8. Cōgnōscit nāvēs in continentem revertisse. 9. Duās vēnisse legiōnēs videt. 10. Nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōscit. 11. Cōpiās temperātūrās ab injūriā et maleficiō existimat. 12. Eīs sēsē vel persuāsūrōs vel vī coactūrōs existimat. 13. Omnem exercitum discēssisse renūntiant.

(c) 14. Respondit māgnam Caesarem injūriam facere. 15. Renūntiāverant Gallōs adventum Rōmānōrū expectāre cōstituisse. 16. Negāvit Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditurū esse. 17. Helvētiī angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur.³ 18. Helvētiōs temperātūrōs ab injūriā existimābat.³ 19. Ex captivīs cōgnōvit flūmen ab castrīs suis nōn amplius millia passuum duodecim abesse, trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervios cōnsēdisse, adventumque ibi Rōmānōrū expectāre. 20. Hostēs simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, ad Caesarem dē pāce lēgātōs mīsērunt, atque obsidēs sē datūrōs polliciti sunt. 21. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiōs iter in Aeduōrū

1. These tenses are called the *secondary* or *historical* tenses; the present, future and perfect (when translated by *have*) being called the *primary* tenses.

2. The verb of saying, thinking, etc., often follows the clause which depends on it.

3. With verbs of thinking, feeling and knowing, the imperfect tense is generally to be translated by the English past tense.

finēs facere. 22. Cæsar postquam per explōrātōrēs comperit hostēs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veritus, cōstituit nōn prōgredi longius. 23. Helvētīi timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimābant.¹ 24. Breviōrēs esse quam in Galliā noctēs vidēbāmus.¹

II.—(a) 1. He learns that the Belgians are assembling. 2. They think that Cæsar is waging war without supplies. 3. He sees that the Germans do not venture to begin battle. 4. They bring back word that the enemy's cavalry are riding up and hurling stones and weapons. 5. They understand that cavalry, ships (and) provisions are wanting. 6. He says that the corn is now ripe in the fields.

(b) 7. They perceive that Cæsar has led across the forces without baggage. 8. He thinks that Labienus will order the Aedui to send ambassadors. 9. He learns that the Britons have seized the ambassador and put (him) in chains. 10. He says that they have rested all hope of safety in valor alone. 11. They bring back word that Cæsar, after leading his army across, has broken down the bridge. 12. All the states promise to send (*literally, that they will send*) hostages.

(c) 13. He answered that he would break up camp the next night. 14. On the same day Cæsar was informed by scouts that the enemy had encamped at the foot of the mountain, eight miles from his camp. 15. He promised not to neglect² the wrongs of the Aedui. 16. He was informed that all the neighboring states were revolting. 17. They promised not to revolt.² 18. They declare that they will neither send ambassadors nor surrender their arms. 19. He said that for this reason he had been silent. 20. From these he learns that a town, protected by woods and marshes, is not far distant from that place. 21. They said that, influenced by him, they had revolted from the Aedui. 22. He declares that they have always been hostile to him. 23. Cæsar, thinking (*literally, having thought*) that this had happened quite opportunely, demands hostages. 24. He promised to finish² the war without any danger to them (*literally, of them*).

1. See footnote 3, page 82.

2. Compare sentence 12, and avoid using the *present* infinitive after verbs of promising.

LESSON LVI.

Vir m̄ximae virtūtis,	<i>a man of the greatest bravery.</i>
Cl̄assis n̄vium v̄ginti,	<i>a fleet of twenty ships.</i>
Novem dīerum iter,	<i>a nine days' march (literally, a march of nine days).</i>
Mōns m̄gnā altitūdine,	<i>a mountain of great height.</i>
Vir m̄ximā virtūte,	<i>a man of the greatest bravery.</i>
Imm̄nī corporum m̄gnitū- dine hominēs,	<i>men of huge size (of bodies).</i>

Observation.—The cases used to describe the qualities or characteristics of objects. Which case is used when the description refers to number? which case is preferred when physical characteristics are described?¹

EXERCISE LVI.

I.—1. Reperit Nervios esse homines magna virtutis. 2. Quod erat civitas magna inter Belgas auctoritatis, atque hominum multitudinem praestabat, sescentos obsides poposcit. 3. Volusenus, tribunus militum, vir et consilii magni et summae virtutis, ad Galbam accurrit, atque unam esse spem salutis docet. 4. Mercatorum ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanos esse praedicabant. 5. Nervii vallō pedum novem et fossā quindecim² hiberna cingunt. 6. Erat inter Labienum atque hostem difficili transitu flumen. 7. Quibus viribus homines tantulae staturae tantī oneris turrim moturi sunt? 8. Per exploratores certior factus est silvam esse infinitā magnitudine. 9. Vercingetorix, summae potentiae adulescens, cuius pater principatum Galliae totius obtinuerat, clientēs convocat. 10. Ceteri ejusdem generis sunt humaniores.

II.—1. He was distant a few days' journey from him. 2. A mountain of great height takes up the rest of the space. 3. It was an enterprise of great danger. 4. A wood of immense extent stretches from the river Rhine to their territories. 5. They

1. See more fully Part III., sections 81, e, and 85, c.

2. The height of the wall and the breadth of the trench are the important measurements. Compare sentence 6 in the English.

brought back word that the Germans were (men) of incredible bravery. 6. They are going to fortify the town with a rampart twelve feet high (*literally, of twelve feet*). 7. He found that Dumnorix was (a man) of the utmost boldness, and of great influence with the Gauls on account of his liberality. 8. He sends to them Valerius, a young man of the highest valor and accomplishments. 9. He did not think that men of an unfriendly disposition would refrain from wrong-doing and mischief. 10. This state was powerful, and was of great weight among them.

LESSON LVII.

- (a) **Certior factus est agrōs** *he was informed that the fields*
vastārī, *were being laid waste.*
Respondērunt agrōs vastā- *they answered that their fields had*
tōs et oppida incēnsa *been laid waste and their*
esse, *towns burned.*
Pollicitī sunt sē secūtūrōs *they promised to follow (literally,*
(esse), *that they would follow).*
Dixit eōs loqui cōnātōs esse, *he said they had attempted to*
speak.

Observation.—Formation of present and perfect infinitive passive (see Part III., section 32). Changes in form of the perfect infinitive passive. Infinitive of Deponents (see Part III., section 40). Compare Lesson LV.

- (b) **Praesidiō castrīs erant,** *they were a protection (literally,*
for a protection) to the camp.
Omnia quae erant ūsui *all things which were of service*
nostrīs, *(literally, for an advantage)*
to our men.
Nostrīs erat impedimentō, *it was a hindrance (literally, for*
a hindrance) to our men.
Equitēs auxiliō nostrīs mī- *they sent the cavalry as aid (literally,*
sērunt, *for an aid) to our men,*
or to aid our men.

Observation.—The case used as a predicate to state the purpose a person or thing serves.¹

EXERCISE LVII.

I.—1. Respondit omnēs eōrum cōpiās ā sē pulsās ac superātās esse. 2. Multitūdine hostium castra complērī et nostrās legiōnēs premī vidērunt. 3. Eāsdem cōpiās praesidiō castrīs reliquit. 4. Renūntiant Helvētiōs iter per prōvinciam facere cōnārī. 5. Haec rēs māgnō ūsuī fuit. 6. Dēmōnstrat idem omnibus Gallīs esse faciendum. 7. Equitēs nūntiāvērunt superiōre nocte, māximā coortā tempestāte, omnēs nāvēs afflictās esse. 8. Equitēs ab hostibus urgērī cōspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsīt. 9. Gallīs māgnō erat impedimentō. 10. Arbitrātī eum nōn longius prōgredi cōnātūrūm, in finēs suōs revertērunt. 11. Respondērunt nōn sē hostem verērī sed magnitudinem silvārūm. 12. Certiōrēs factī sunt Caesarem, praesidiō quīnque cohortium impedimentīs relictō, cum reliquīs cōpiīs prīmā lūce profectum esse. 13. Hōc māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābantur.²

II.—1. He found that their arrival was being awaited by the enemy. 2. He was afterwards informed that Labienus' approach had not been discovered by the enemy. 3. The two legions which had been last enrolled were left as guard for the baggage. 4. He promised to follow Cæsar. 5. Those who were coming to the aid of the Belgians learned that several towns had been taken by storm. 6. He was informed that a sudden war had arisen in Gaul. 7. One thing was a great advantage to our men. 8. They answered that the friendship of the Roman people was an honor and a safeguard, not a loss. 9. These informed Cæsar that the two ambassadors had been put to death. 10. All (things) were wanting which were of use for (*use ad*) these purposes. 11. He said that the Aedui had been compelled to give hostages. 12. He said that he would set out for the province the next day. 13. He perceived that our men were being surrounded by the enemy.

1. This use of the dative is found chiefly with the words given above. It should be noticed that there is generally another dative telling the person to whom the thing spoken of is a benefit or injury, and often to be translated by *for*.

2. See footnote 3, page 82.

LESSON LVIII.

- Māgnā celeritātē dēcurrērunt,** *they ran down with great swiftness.*
- Aliā ratiōne bellum gerunt,** *they carry on the war in another manner.*
- Summō studiō castra mūniunt,** *they fortify the camp with the greatest zeal.*
- Suā cōsuētūdine dēsiluērunt,** *they leaped down, according to their custom.*
- Caesaris voluntātē profecti sunt,** *they set out with Caesar's consent.*

Observation.—The use and translation of the ablative expressing the manner in which, or that in accordance with which, something is done.

EXERCISE LVIII.

I.—1. Equitibus nostris pulsīs, incredibilī celeritātē ad flūmen dēcurrunt. 2. Gallīs māgnō erat impedimētō quod nūdō corpore pūgnāvērunt. 3. Ab eis cōgnōvit Gallōs mōre suō conciliō habitō, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse. 4. Hostēs māximō clāmōre scālīs vallum ascendere coepērunt. 5. Cōsuētūdine suā Caesar cohortēs complūrēs praesidiō castris reliquerat. 6. Repperit id flūmen per finēs Aeduōrum in Rhodanum influere incredibilī lēnitātē. 7. Ad castra māgnō cursū contendērunt. 8. Cōsēnsū omnium Gallōrum, pāce factā, Germānī hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgērunt. 9. Ad haec Caesar respondit sē nunquam aliā ratiōne bellum gestūrum. 10. Summō studiō militēs nāvēs aedificāre veterēsque reficere coepērunt.

II.—1. He ordered the camp to be moved with greater noise and confusion. 2. He said this in a loud voice. 3. They reported that all the Gauls with loud weeping began to ask aid from Caesar. 4. Having with incredible speed covered a great distance, they reached the camp on the eighth day. 5. According to their custom, they leap down and fight on foot. 6. They brought back word that the camp had not been fortified with the same care on

(*use ex*) all sides. 7. He answered that he would not come on any other condition. 8. With the same speed they hastened towards our camp. 9. With the approval of all, they sent ambassadors to him and promised to give hostages. 10. He found out through scouts that, according to the practice of the Roman people, the enemy were fortifying a camp.

LESSON LIX.

Impetum tam subitō faciunt	<i>they make an attack so suddenly</i>
ut nēmō resistat,	<i>that no one resists.</i>
Impetum tam subitō fēcērunt	<i>they made an attack so suddenly</i>
ut nēmō resisteret,	<i>that no one resisted.</i>
Tantus timor hostēs occupāvit	<i>such a panic seized the enemy that</i>
ut proelium committere	<i>they did not dare to join</i>
nōn audērent,	<i>battle.</i>
Accidit ut castra militēs mū-	<i>it happened that the soldiers were</i>
nīrent,	<i>fortifying the camp.</i>

Observation.—Formation of the subjunctive in the present and imperfect active of all conjugations. (See Part III., section 29.)¹ The translation and use of these tenses of the subjunctive in dependent sentences of result.² Position of the clause introduced by *ut*.³

EXERCISE LIX.

I.—1. Tam subitō impetum fēcērunt ut hostēs terga verterent. 2. Nōn tam barbarus sum ut haec nōn sciam. 3. Ita Helvētīī institūtī sunt ut obsidēs accipere nōn dare soleant. 4. Tantus fuit timor ut discēdere ab sīgnis nōn audērēmus. 5. Accidit ut Galli cōpiās comparārent. 6. Ita currūs collocant ut expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. 7. Tantum potentiā antecēsserant ut

1. See also Part III., section 39, for the subjunctive of the verbs in *-io* of the third conjugation.

2. In these lessons it will be sufficient to notice that the tenses of the subjunctive are translated in the same way as the indicative is; the present like the present indicative, the imperfect like the imperfect or perfect (= English past) indicative, the perfect like the perfect indicative, and the pluperfect like the perfect (= English past) or pluperfect indicative. This is for beginners a safer guide in translation than the rules for the "Sequence of Tenses."

3. Notice that except after verbs of happening (the result of chance), some word containing the idea of *so* or *such* precedes the *ut* clause.

Galliae tōtūis p̄ncipātum obtinērent. 8. Tam celeriter ēruptiōnem faciunt ut nēmō resistat. 9. Tantam sibi auctōritātem comparāverat ut undique ad eum lēgātīōnēs concurrerent. 10. Tantum exercitātiōne efficiunt ut in praecipitī locō equōs brevī moderārī soleant. 11. Sic nostrōs contempserunt ut fossās complēre audērent. 12. Hostēs tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut altissimās rīpās ascendere audērent.

II.—1. The enemy were so terrified that they fled to the woods. 2. So great was the valor of the soldiers that all fought fiercely and bravely. 3. On their arrival such a change occurred (*literally, was made*) that our men at once renewed the battle. 4. It happened that the soldiers were leaving the standards. 5. Such was the swiftness of the Germans that they equalled the speed of their horses. 6. So great is the panic that we do not venture to engage battle with them. 7. So great a storm arose that very few of all the ships reached land. 8. The enemy have been so alarmed by his arrival that they are sending ambassadors about peace. 9. They fought so fiercely that no one dared leave the standards. 10. They display such valor that the neighboring states eagerly seek their friendship. 11. They have such influence among the Belgians that no one dares to lay waste their fields. 12. So quick were they (*literally, so great was their quickness*) that he with difficulty saved himself from the enemy's hands.

LESSON LX.

Cum frūmentum nostrī com- portārent, certior factus est . . . ,	when our men were bringing in corn, he was informed
Cum haec vīdisset, equitēs mīsīt,	when he saw (literally, had seen) this, he sent the cavalry.
Cum agrōs vastāvissent, oppi- da oppūgnāvērunt,	when (or after, or since) they had laid waste the fields (or after laying waste the fields), they attacked the towns.
Cum mille passūs abesset, cer- tior factus est . . . ,	when he was a mile distant, he was informed

Observation.—Formation of pluperfect subjunctive active of all conjugations (see Part III., section 29).¹ The subjunctive of **sum** (see Part III., section 41). The use and translation of **cum** and the subjunctive.² The difference between the imperfect and the pluperfect subjunctive after **cum**.³ The position of the clause introduced by **cum**.

EXERCISE LX.

I.—1. Cum per eōrum finēs quattuor diēs iter fēcisset, ad flūmen pervēnit. 2. Caesar⁴ cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum duodecim millia abesset, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur. 3. Ibi⁴ cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī tēla ex locō superiōre conjicerent, nostrī subitō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. 4. Eādē nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna. 5. Cum appropinquārent Britanniae, tempestās subitō coorta est. 6. Cum sine impedimentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāvisset, castra erant angustiōra. 7. Eō⁴ cum dē imprōvisō vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae sunt, ad eum lēgātōs mīsērunt. 8. Nostrī⁴ cum sē in castra reciperent, hostibus occurrunt. 9. Caesar⁴ cum septimam legiōnem urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, equitēs subsidiō mīsīt. 10. Cum jam nōn solum virēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius instārent, et fossās complēre coepissent, Volusēnus ad eum accurrit, atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docet. 11. Tanta est equitum virtūs ut hostēs nōn parēs sint.

II.—1. When Cæsar was in hither Gaul in winter quarters he was informed that all the Belgians were conspiring. 2. When our men saw that the camp was being filled with a multitude of the enemy, they betook themselves to flight. 3. After he had ordered corn to be brought in, he was informed by scouts that all the Gauls had departed. 4. So great a storm arose that the rest of the ships were useless. 5. It happens that the nights are shorter. 6. When the Germans were marching into our province, they left three thousand men as a guard for⁵ the baggage. 7. When he had

1. See footnote 1, page 88.

2. See footnote 2, page 88.

3. As both are often rendered by the same English tense, it is important to notice that with the imperfect the time of both verbs is the same, while the pluperfect refers to a time earlier than that of the principal verb.

4. See footnote 1, page 60.

5. See footnote 1, page 86.

approached nearer, he was ordered to throw away his arms. 8. So great is the scarcity of all things that we are in very great danger. 9. When he was a few days' march from their territories, ambassadors came to him. 10. When the Gauls saw that our legions were being hard pressed, they hastened towards the camp. 11. On learning that Cæsar was going to set out that night, they stationed an ambush in the woods. 12. It happened that the camp was smaller.

LESSON LXI.

Haec facere possum,	<i>I am able to do this, or I can do this.</i>
Cum haec facere nōn possent,	<i>when they were not able to do this, or when they could not do this.</i>
Dixit sē haec facere posse,	<i>he said that he could do this.</i>
Dixit sē haec facere potuisse,	<i>he said that he could have done this (literally, had been able to do).</i>
Haec facere nōn potuērunt,	<i>they were unable to do this, or they could not do this.</i>
Submovēri nōn possunt,	<i>they cannot be driven off.</i>

Observation.—Translation of the various forms of **possum** with the present infinitive of another verb. (For the conjugation of **possum**, see Part III., section 42.) Position of the infinitive.¹

EXERCISE LXI.

I.—1. Nulli civitati Germanōrum persuādere potestis. 2. Vōbīs possumus ūtilēs esse amīcī. 3. Ab hīs sē dēfendere, trāditīs armīs, nōn possunt. 4. Minus facile eam rem cōsequī poterunt. 5. Cum oppidum expūgnāre nōn potuissent, agrōs populātī sunt. 6. Nē ipse quidem spērat nostrum exercitum superārī posse. 7. Quid sine reliquīs legiōnibus efficere potestis? 8. Id efficere

1. The infinitive is used with *possum* in the same way as is illustrated in Lesson XIX.

nōn potuerant. 9. Cum iter in prōvinciam nostram facerent, ea impedīmenta, quae sēcum portāre nōn poterant, citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēposuērunt. 10. Tanta est Germānōrum virtūs ut nē dī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint. 11. Cum ab proximīs Germānīs impetrāre nōn possent, ūteriōrēs temptant. 12. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. 13. Nostrīs subsidiō venīre nōn poterāmus. 14. Oppidum oppūgnāre cōnātī, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem expūgnāre nōn potuērunt. 15. Haec quis patī potest?

II.—1. They cannot defend their own territories. 2. He thinks that he can do this without danger. 3. When they could not persuade these, they send ambassadors to us. 4. He was informed that they had not been able to hold out (any) longer. 5. They could not withstand the attacks of our men. 6. He has been unable to advance farther. 7. We had not been able to storm the camp. 8. We could not take up arms quickly. 9. Such a storm arose that we were not able to finish the work. 10. They did not think that even (*literally, they thought that not even*) their first attack could be withstood. 11. We can very easily prevent them. 12. So great was the alertness of our men that nothing could be accomplished. 13. You cannot be seen from the enemy's camp. 14. We have been so alarmed by these things, that we can less easily resist the enemy. 15. They could not pursue the enemy, because the cavalry had been unable to set out.

LESSON LXII.

(a) Study the formation of the perfect subjunctive active of all conjugations (Part III., section 29),¹ and of the subjunctive passive, all tenses (Part III., section 30).²

(b) **Rogat quis tibi persuāserit,** *he asks who has persuaded you.*

Rogāvīt quis tibi persuā- *he asked who had persuaded you.*
sisset,

1. See footnote 1, page 88, and refer also to Part III., sections 41 and 42, for the perfect subjunctive of *sum* and *possum*.

2. See footnote 1, page 88, and compare also the subjunctive of the deponent verbs in Part III., section 40.

Quem ūsum belli habeant	<i>he inquires what experience of</i>
quaerit,	<i>war they have.</i>
Quem ūsum belli habērent	<i>he learned what experience of war</i>
cōgnōvit,	<i>they had.</i>
Quid vēnissētis nōn intel-	<i>I did not understand why you</i>
legēbam,	<i>had come.</i>
Quanta facultās darētur	<i>they pointed out what an oppor-</i>
dēmōnstrāvērunt,	<i>tunity was afforded.</i>

Observation.—The mood used in dependent sentences introduced by an interrogative.¹ Contrast the independent sentences given in Lesson LI. The translation of the different tenses of the subjunctive.²

EXERCISE LXII.

I.—1. Ab hīs quaesīvit quae cīvitātēs in armīs essent. 2. Rogat quās³ in partēs hostēs iter faciant. 3. Ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. 4. Rogāvit cūr eōs ab officiō discēssūrōs jūdicārēmus. 5. Quibus³ in locīs sit Caesar ex captīvis quaerunt. 6. Ostendit quae⁴ in conciliō Gallōrum dē eō sint dicta. 7. Intellegēbat quantō³ cum periculō legiōnem ex hibernīs ēductūrus esset. 8. Eīus rei quae causa esset mīrātus erat. 9. Caesar intellegēbat quā³ dē causā ea dicerent. 10. Ibi ex captīvis cōgnōscit quae⁴ in hostium castrīs gerantur. 11. Flūmen est incredibili lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, jūdicārī nōn possit. 12. Īnsidiās verēbātur quod quā³ dē causā discēderent hostēs nōndum perspexerat.

II.—1. He asked him why they were coming to him. 2. They asked in what³ direction they were being led. 3. He could discover neither what (*literally, how great*) was the size of the island, nor what nations inhabited (it). 4. They know what⁴ he does, with whom he converses. 5. They ask the merchants from what³ districts they come, and what things they have learned there. 6. Although Cæsar understood for what³ reason they had said this, he yet ordered him to come to him with two hundred hostages.

1. The verbs upon which these subjunctive clauses depend are verbs of asking, learning, knowing, telling, perceiving and deciding.

2. See footnote 2, page 88. 3. See footnote 3, page 75. 4. See footnote 4, page 75.

7. We had learned how great a number they had promised for (*use ad*) that war. 8. They compel the traders to declare what¹ they have heard or learned about these things. 9. He shows what¹ is being done in Gaul. 10. He could not discover what¹ was being done in our camp. 11. When Cæsar learned where (*literally, in what² place*) the enemy's forces had encamped, he left ten cohorts as guard for the ships. 12. They are unable to find out what (*literally, of what kind*) is the nature of the mountain.

LESSON LXIII.

Haec facere vult, *he wishes to do this.*
Haec facere nōlēbat, *he did not wish to do this, or he was unwilling to do this.*
Haec facere mālunt, *they prefer to do this, or they had rather do this.*

Observation.—Translation of **volō**, **nōlō** and **mālō**, with the present infinitive. For the conjugation of these verbs, see Part III., section 43.³

EXERCISE LXIII.

I.—1. Quās² in partēs vultis proficiscī? 2. Quae¹ vellet ostendit. 3. Servīre quam pūgnāre mālunt? 4. Quod fortunam temptāre nōlēbat, posterō diē in prōvinciam revertī cōstituit. 5. Mōns, quem Labiēnum occupāre voluistis, ab hostibus tenētur. 6. Respondit sē velle dē rē publicā cum eō agere. 7. Eōs interficiet quod haec facere nōlunt. 8. Rogāvit quid vellent. 9. Cum post tergum hostem relinquere nōllet, obsidēs sescentōs poposcit. 10. Praesidium quam amīcissimum habēre volēbat. 11. Responderunt sē aquilam hostibus prōdere nōluisse. 12. Pācem nōbīscum facere vult. 13. Certior factus est eōs obsidēs dare nōlle.

II.—1. He wishes war to be carried on. 2. He did this be-

1. See footnote 4, page 75.

2. See footnote 3, page 75.

3. Apart from the peculiar principal parts, these verbs are precisely like those of the third conjugation, except in the *present tense* and in the *imperfect subjunctive*.

cause he did not wish that place to be unoccupied. 3. They answered that they had been unwilling to come to him. 4. He asked why we were more willing to submit than to fight. 5. The Helvetians, whom we were unwilling to leave, had turned aside their line of march from the Arar. 6. He said that he wished to treat with him about these things. 7. You wish to settle in their territories. 8. As he wished the business to be finished, he set out at once. 9. They are so alarmed by his arrival, that they are unwilling to join battle. 10. We had rather be slain, than betray the eagle to the enemy. 11. He asked why they were unwilling to hold the place. 12. They said that they were unwilling to return. 13. When he had set out for Britain, because he wished to become acquainted with those regions, a sudden war arose in Gaul.

LESSON LXIV.

Hostēs lēgātum, quī missus erat, retinuērunt,	<i>the enemy have detained the ambassador who had been sent.</i>
Renūntiant hostēs lēgātum, quī missus esset, retinuisse,	<i>they bring back word that the enemy have detained the ambassador who had been sent.</i>
Lēgātum quem retinent interficient,	<i>they will put to death the ambassador whom they are detaining.</i>
Cōgnōscit lēgātum quem retineant cōs interfectūrōs esse,	<i>he learns that they will put to death the ambassador whom they are detaining.</i>
Existimābat lēgātum quem retinērent cōs interfectūrōs esse,	<i>he thought that they would put to death the ambassador whom they were detaining.</i>
Galli commōtī sunt quod Germānī cōpiās coēgerant,	<i>the Gauls were alarmed because the Germans had collected forces.</i>
Certior factus est Gallōs commōtōs esse quod Germānī cōpiās coēgissent,	<i>he was informed that the Gauls were alarmed because the Germans had collected forces.</i>

Observation.—The difference between English and Latin usage in relative or other subordinate sentences when put in indirect narration.¹

EXERCISE LXIV.

I.—1. Certior factus est lēgātōs ab omnibus nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, ad sē venīre. 2. Respondet cum sōlā decimā legiōne, dē quā nōn dubitet, sē proelium commissūrum. 3. Nūntiāvērunt omnēs nāvēs afflīctās esse quod nautae vim tempestātis patī nōn potuissent. 4. Respondērunt impulsōs ā suis princīpibus, quī dicerent Aeduōs ab Caesare in servitūtem redāctos esse, sē ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse. 5. Renūntiāvērunt Gallōs proelium eō diē nōn commissūrōs, quod ampliōrēs cōpiās, quae nōndum convēnissent, expectārent. 6. Certiōrem Caesarem faciunt Venetōs nāvēs habēre plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvīgāre soleant. 7. Animadvertit Caesar Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent. 8. Respondit miseriōrem et graviōrem esse fortunam Sēquanōrum quam² reliquōrum quod sōlī querī nōn audērent. 9. Ex captivīs cōgnōvit omnēs Gallōs ad oppidum quod circiter millia passuum quīnque abesset cōnfūgisse. 10. Per explorātōrēs comperit Ariovistum omnēs cōpiās quās cōēgisset trāns Rhēnum trādūxisse.

II.—1. These informed Cæsar that the Germans who dwell across the Rhine are in arms. 2. They think that they will recover the hostages which they have given to Crassus. 3. He perceived that our men were being thrown into great confusion, because they were unable to keep their ranks. 4. On the same day Cæsar was informed by scouts that the enemy had encamped at the foot of a mountain, which was eight miles from his camp. 5. They promised to do what³ he had commanded. 6. He was informed that all the Belgians were conspiring, because they did not wish a Roman army to winter in Gaul. 7. He thought⁴ that they would not do what³ they were promising. 8. He had learned that the Germans were awaiting the cavalry which had been sent

1. For the rendering of the various tenses of the subjunctive, see footnote 2, page 83. Notice that this subordinate clause in the subjunctive regularly depends on another clause whose verb is in the infinitive after a verb of saying, thinking, etc.

2. In translating this sentence supply the word *that*.

3. See footnote 4, page 75.

4. See footnote 3, page 82.

across the Rhine. 9. They answered that the leading men who had said this had fled to Britain, because they understood in what (*literally, how great*) danger they were. 10. Cæsar thought terms should not be received from those who, after seeking peace, had voluntarily made war.

LESSON LXV.

Turn to the conjugation of the verb *ferō*, Part III., section 44.

Observation.—The irregularities in the inflection of *ferō* and its compounds.¹

EXERCISE LXV.

I.—1. Nocte clam ex castris exercitum dūcit et ad Caesarem auxilium fert. 2. Quae audivērunt ad lēgātōs dēferunt. 3. Tanta erat militum virtūs ut nē ūnum quidem nostrōrum impetum hostēs ferrent. 4. Respondērunt impulsōs ā principibus populō Rōmānō sē bellum intulisse. 5. Frūmentum ex agris in castra cōferēbat. 6. Servitūtem perferre mālunt. 7. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. 8. In silvās ac palūdēs sē suaque omnia contulērunt. 9. Imperium populī Rōmānī nōn perferēmus. 10. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī pedem referre coepērunt. 11. Respondit nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse. 12. Tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nāvēs ad Galliam referrentur. 13. Commissō proeliō, nostrōrum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuerant. 14. Multum ab reliquīs differtis. 15. Impeditīs hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, nostrī subitō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt.

II.—1. He was informed that all who could bear arms were assembling to one place. 2. The Aedui said that the corn was being collected. 3. Alarmed by these things the barbarians retreated. 4. They understand how great a disaster they have brought on the state. 5. He promised not to make war² on them

1. Apart from the peculiar principal parts, *fero* is irregular in the *present indicative*, *present infinitive*, *imperfect subjunctive* and the *imperative*, but in all the other forms is precisely like verbs of the third conjugation. Study carefully also the variations in form of the principal parts of compounds of *fero*.

2. See footnote 2, page 83, and footnote 3, page 61.

or their allies. 6. On this answer being brought back to Cæsar, he a second time sends ambassadors to him. 7. The report is carried with incredible speed to Labienus. 8. They found out what he had said and reported (it) to Cæsar. 9. The ambassadors denied that the Germans were making war on the allies of the Roman people. 10. All these differ from one another¹ in language and laws. 11. He explains how (*literally, in what*) these nations differ from one another.¹ 12. Galba is slain and his head brought back to the camp. 13. He attacked them when the Helvetians could not bring aid to their friends.² 14. Such was the strength of the ships that they easily withstood the storm. 15. He ordered the baggage to be collected to (*literally, into*) one place, and that (place) to be fortified.

LESSON LXVI.

- (a) **Profectus est ut oppidum** *he set out that (or in order that)*
oppugnāret, *he might attack the town, or*
he set out to attack the town.
- Portās claudī jubet, nē in-** *he orders the gates to be closed,*
jūria accipiātur, *that (or in order that) injury*
may not be received, or lest
injury be received.

Observation.—The mood used to express purpose. The difference between **ut** and **nē**. The various translations. The tenses used in sentences of purpose.³ The position of the clause of purpose.

- (b) **Lēgātōs mīserunt quī pā-** *they sent ambassadors to seek*
cem peterent, *peace (literally, who werē to*
seek peace, or who should
seek peace).

1. *From one another, literally, among themselves.*

2. See footnote 2, page 64.

3. The present subjunctive is used where English would use *may, i.e.,* after the *primary* tenses (see footnote 1, page 82), the imperfect where English would use *might, i.e.,* after the *secondary* tenses. Notice also that in clauses of purpose the subjunctive is not to be translated, as is generally the case, by the English indicative (see footnote 2, page 88).

Observation.—The use and translation of the subjunctive denoting purpose with the relative pronoun.¹

(c) *Militēs cōhortātus est nē he urged the soldiers not to be perturbārentur, dismayed.*

Petere coepit ut in Galliā he began to ask to be left in Gaul. relinquerētur,

Observation.—The use and translation of the subjunctive with *ut* or *nē* after verbs of requesting, urging, etc.²

EXERCISE LXVI.

I.—1. *Vadīs repertīs, cōpiās trānsducere cōnātī sunt ut oppidum expūgnārent et agrōs populārentur.* 2. *Cohortēs longiōre itinere circumductae sunt nē ex hostium castrīs cōspici possent.* 3. *Cicerōnem hortātur ut pristinam virtūtem retineat.* 4. *Tantae tempestātēs cōsecūtāe sunt ut nostrī opus perficere nōn possent.* 5. *Lēgātī ad eum missī sunt quī obsidēs sē datūrōs pollicērentur.* 6. *Suōs³ intrā castra continet nē ea rēs ad hostēs perferri possit.* 7. *Caesar omnium ex cōspectū remōvit equōs ut spem fugae tolleret.* 8. *Lēgātī ad Caesarem vēnērunt quī pācem peterent.* 9. *Equitēs monet ut quam lātissimē pervagentur.* 10. *Ita perterritī sunt ut lēgātī statim ad Caesarem mitterentur.* 11. *Phalangem faciēmus ut celeriter perrumpere possimus.* 12. *Nūntiōs praemittit quī Bōiōs dē suō adventū doceant, hortenturque ut hostium impetum sustineant.* 13. *Caesar cum duābus legiōnibus et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Britanniam proficiscitur, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur.*

II.—1. *He left two legions in the camp that the enemy might not be able to surround our men.* 2. *The cavalry fought most bravely to wipe out the disgrace of the flight.* 3. *The Helvetians had left their homes to make war on the whole of Gaul.* 4. *He urges the Nervii not to lose the opportunity.* 5. *Ambassadors were sent to ask aid.* 6. *They decided to return home that they*

1. This in *Cæsar* is chiefly used after verbs of *sending*.

2. The infinitive should not be used in Latin after verbs meaning to urge, ask, command (except *jubeo*), advise or persuade, or generally to express purpose.

3. See footnote 2, page 64.

might carry on the war in their own territories. 7. He urged him to remain in his allegiance. 8. They ask Cæsar (*literally, from Cæsar*) to come to them. 9. Such a storm arose that the work could not be finished. 10. He led the rest of the forces across that he might pursue the Helvetians. 11. He determined to lead the army across in order to punish the Germans. 12. That he may not be compelled to spend the summer in Gaul, he orders¹ him to come to him with two hundred hostages.

LESSON LXVII.

Turn to the conjugation of the verbs **eō** and **fiō**, Part III., sections 45 and 46.

Observation.—The irregularities in the inflections of **eō** and **fiō** and their compounds.²

EXERCISE LXVII.

I.—1. Trānseunt Rhēnum nāvibus ratibusque. 2. Explōrātōrēs jūssit quid fieret cōgnōscere. 3. Eās nātiōnēs adire volēbat. 4. Ignēs fierī jubet ut significātiō adventūs Caesaris fiat. 5. Quid fierī velit docet. 6. Ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. 7. Ipsī trānsire flūmen nōn dubitāverant. 8. Pontem fierī jūssit ut minōre cum periculō flūmen trānsiret. 9. Hīs rēbus fiēbat³ ut minus facile fīnitimīs bellum inferre possent. 10. Eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit. 11. Iter per Alpēs patefierī volēbat. 12. Captīvōs interficī jūssit. 13. Rhodanus vadīs trānsītur. 14. Hōc idem reliquīs fit³ diēbus. 15. Locum duplici fossā munīvit nē impetus ab hostibus fierī posset. 16. Rogāvit num hostēs palūdem trānsirent. 17. Militēs cohortātus ut fortiter pūgnārent, quid fierī velit ostendit. 18. Cum sōlā decimā legiōne ibō.

1. This sentence may be translated in two ways, using *impero* or *jubeo* for order; see footnote 2, page 99.

2. Notice that *eo*, while very irregular, resembles verbs of the fourth conjugation, while *fiō* is exactly like a verb of the fourth conjugation, except in the *present infinitive* and *imperfect subjunctive*. Notice also that while *fiō* serves as the passive of *facio*, its forms are active.

3. In the third person singular *fiō* often means *it comes about, happens*, generally with an *ut* clause of result following.

II.—1. He orders a sally to be made. 2. That river the Helvetians were crossing. 3. He declares that he will go with the tenth legion alone. 4. He did not wish that country to be unoccupied, lest the Germans should cross into the Helvetians' territories. 5. They will not allow the Helvetians to go through their territories. 6. In order that an attack might be made on the enemy from all sides at one time, he sent Labienus in advance with two legions and all the cavalry. 7. He ordered those through whose territories they had gone to bring the Helvetians back. 8. He declares that he knows what is being done. 9. The river can be crossed by a ford. 10. He showed what he wished done (*literally; to be done*). 11. He was informed that those who had crossed the river had not been able to bring aid to their friends. 12. The Helvetians are informed about his arrival. 13. That was being done at that time. 14. While crossing the river they are surrounded by our cavalry. 15. He thought that this could be done. 16. About fifteen thousand Germans have crossed the Rhine. 17. The enemy will not cross the river. 18. He is informed that the Germans who are crossing into Gaul have been invited by the Sequani.

LESSON LXVIII.

Oppugnandi causā¹ conveniunt,	<i>they come together for the purpose of attacking, or to attack.</i>
Dimicandi facultātem habent,	<i>they have an opportunity of fighting.</i>
Parātus ad proficiscendum,	<i>ready for setting out, or ready to set out.</i>
Nāvēs inūtilēs erant ad nāvīgandum,	<i>the ships were useless for sailing.</i>

Observation.—Formation and translation of the gerund (see Part III., section 35). Voice of gerund. How may the gerund

1. *Causā, for the purpose (or sake)*, always follows the genitive which depends on it.

be used to express purpose? How does the gerund differ from the gerundive in its forms?

EXERCISE LXVIII.

I.—1. Reliquās nāvēs parātās ad nāvīgandum invēnit. 2. Omnī spē impetrandī ademptā, princīpēs Galliae sollicitāre coepit. 3. Cōgnōverat equitatum praedandī⁷ causā trāns Rhēnum missum esse. 4. Caesar loquendī² finem facit. 5. Ulciscendī² Rōmānōs occāsionem dīmittere nōlēbant. 6. Hunc ad ēgrediendum² nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātur. 7. Cum finem oppūgnandī nox fēcisset, lēgātī dē pāce ad eum vērunt. 8. Ea, quae ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant, comparāre coepit. 9. Equitēs frūmentandī² causā praemittendī erant. 10. Nostrī, dēpositīs armīs, in mūniendō occupātī sunt.

II.—1. They saw that our men were advancing into unfavorable ground in order to fight. 2. This was the reason for (*literally, of*) crossing the Rhine. 3. He had got suitable weather for sailing. 4. Time for (*literally, of*) hurling their javelins at the enemy is not given. 5. When they saw that our men had crossed the river, they left the camp in order to pillage. 6. They had made our men more eager for fighting. 7. Suddenly making a sally, they leave the enemy no opportunity of learning what was being done. 8. They had collected large forces for an attack (*literally, for attacking*). 9. They made an end of pursuing. 10. They made an attack so suddenly, that time for (*literally, of*) taking up arms was not given.

LESSON LXIX.

Praesidium pontis tuendī causā he stations a garrison^o for the purpose of protecting the bridge, or to protect the bridge (*literally, for the sake of the bridge to be defended*).

sā pōnit,

1. Caesar uses *ad* and the gerund to express *with regard to* rather than *for the purpose of*.

2. For the gerund of deponent verbs, see Part III., section 63, c.

Difficultās faciendī pontis,	<i>the difficulty of building a bridge</i> (literally, of, or as regards, ¹ the bridge which is to be built).
Lēgātōs mīserunt ad pācem petendam,	<i>they sent ambassadors to seek peace</i> (literally, for the peace which was to be sought).
In petendā pāce haec dī- xērunt,	<i>in asking peace, they spoke thus.</i>

Observation.—The use of the gerundive instead of the gerund with an object.² How may purpose be expressed by the gerundive construction? How is this gerundive construction to be distinguished from the use of the gerundive given in Lesson XL?

EXERCISE LXIX.

I.—1. His rēbus coāctī, lēgātōs ad eum pācis petendae causā mittunt. 2. Nāvēs lātiōrēs facit ad multitūdinem jūmentōrum trānsportandam. 3. In agrīs vastandīs occupātī sunt. 4. Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur. 5. Gallī in cōsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs sunt. 6. Spē expūgnandī oppidī adductus, mājōrēs cōpiās cōgere coepit. 7. Reditiōnis spē sublātā,³ parātiōrēs ad omnia subeunda erunt. 8. Haec faciunt recipiendōrum suōrum causā. 9. Ibi discit Litaviēcūm ad sollicitandōs Aeduōs profectum esse. 10. Nēminem bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant.

II.—1. They are assembling from all sides to defend the Remi. 2. Influenced by all these things, he set out for the province to ask aid. 3. Orgetorix is chosen to carry out these arrangements. 4. He gave the signal for (*literally, of*) joining battle. 5. Caesar had set out to harass the enemy. 6. They promised a sufficiently large number of ships to transport two legions. 7. They hasten to Caesar for the purpose of lending aid. 8. He sends a lieutenant in

1. The genitive is often to be rendered by *as regards* (or an equivalent expression), rather than by *of*.

2. See more fully Part III., section 104, b. This gerundive construction is regularly preferred to the use of the gerund with an object in the accusative.

3. *Sublata* is from *tollo*.

advance to ascertain these (things). 9. He answered that the seventh legion had been sent to seek supplies. 10. Cæsar runs down to encourage the soldiers.

LESSON LXX.

Pontem rescindī jūssit nē quis	<i>he ordered the bridge to be cut</i>
flūmen trānsiret,	<i>down, lest any one should</i>
	<i>cross the river, or that no one</i>
	<i>might cross the river.</i>
Aliquōs ex nāvī ēgredientēs	<i>they saw some leaving the ship.</i>
cōspexērunt,	
Quisque in cōspectū Caesaris	<i>each was fighting in Cæsar's sight.</i>
pūgnabat,	
Comprehendunt utrumque,	<i>they seize each (or both).</i>
Neque turpius quicquam habē-	<i>nor is anything considered more</i>
tur,	<i>disgraceful.</i>
Quidam centuriō ad eum ac-	<i>a certain centurion runs up to</i>
currit,	<i>him.</i>

Observation.—Use and translation of **quis**, **aliquis**, **quisque**, **uterque**, **quisquam**, **quidam**. For the declension of these pronouns, see Part III., section 26. Which of the two words for *any* is used after *nē*? Which of the two words for *each* implies *each of two*?

EXERCISE LXX.

I.—1. Prīncipēs cūjusque civitātis ad sē vocat. 2. Proximō diē Cæsar ex castrīs utrisque cōpiās dūxit. 3. Aliquem dē mōtū Gallōrum nūntium sē acceptūrōs existimābant. 4. Idōneum quendam hominem dēlēgit ex iis quōs sēcum habēbat. 5. Cum Rōmānis sē bellum gestūrōs dixērunt, neque cūjusquam¹ imperiō obtemperātūrōs. 6. Militēs ex oppidō exire jūssit nē quam¹ injūriam acciperent. 7. Ab Ariovistō postulāvit nē quōs Rhēnum

1. *Neque quisquam*, literally, *and not* (or *nor*) *any one*, may often be well rendered by *and no one*. Similarly, *ne quis* may often be rendered by *that no one*, or (in agreement with a noun) *that no*.

trānsīre paterētur. 8. Uterque sē lēgibus creātum esse dīcit. 9. Quantam quisque multītūdinem ad¹ id bellum pollicitus esset cōgnōverant. 10. Ēruptiōnem subitō fierī jūssit nē quis² arma capere posset.

II.—1. Certain of (*literally, out of*) these came to him by night. 2. He orders each to return. 3. They have lands and villages on (*use ad*) each bank of the river. 4. He ordered all the horses to be removed, lest any hope remain (*literally, be left*) in flight. 5. The rest resist most vigorously, nor does any one turn his back. 6. Some opportunity will be given of crossing the river. 7. They inquire what each of them has learned about each matter. 8. He hopes that there will be some opportunity of fighting. 9. He requests him not to bring any large number of Germans into Gaul. 10. After selecting certain cohorts, he ordered both legions to follow him.

1. Translate *ad* by *for*.

2. See footnote 1, page 104.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES.

I.

(*This exercise may be introduced after Lesson XXIII.*)

Ad initium silvārum Caesar pervēnit, et castra mūnīre īnstituit. Rōmānī in opere dispersī suūt. Subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae hostēs ēvolāvērunt et in militēs impetum fēcērunt. Rōmānī celeriter arma cēpērunt hostēsque in silvās repulērunt et multōs interfēcērunt. Omnēs hostium agrī ā Rōmānīs vastātī sunt, vīcīque incēnsī. Caesar exercitum redūxit et in finitimīs civitātibus in hibernīs collocāvit.

—(*Adapted from Caesar, B. G., III., 28, 29.*)

II.

(*This exercise may be introduced after Lesson XXXII.*)

Britanniae interior pars ab iīs¹ incolitur, quī² nātī³ sunt in insulā, maritima pars ab iīs, quī praedae causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt⁴ et ibi permānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est īfīnīta multītūdō, crēberrimaque⁵ aedificia. Loca⁶ sunt temperātiōra quam⁷ in Galliā. Īnsula nātūrā⁸ est triquetra, cūjus⁹ ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Ex hīs¹⁰ omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī¹¹ Cantium incolunt. Interiōrēs frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte¹² et carne vīvunt, pellibusque sunt vestītī.¹³ Omnēs sē¹⁴ Britannī vitrō īficiunt, quod¹⁵ caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc¹⁶ horridiōrēs sunt in pūgnā. Ūnā¹⁷ ex parte est Hibernia, minor quam⁷ Britannia, et complūrēs minōrēs subjectae sunt insulae. Breviōrēs sunt quam⁷ in continentī noctēs.

—(*Adapted from Caesar, B. G., V., 12-14.*)

1. = *Those*. 2. = *Who*. 3. *Nati sunt* = *have been born*. 4. *From transeo*. 5. *Supply there are*. 6. = *The climate, literally, the regions*. 7. = *Than*. 8. = *In shape*. 9. = *Of which*. 10. = *These*. 11. = *Those who*. 12. *Translate ablative by on, literally, by means of*. 13. = *Clothed*. 14. = *Themselves*. 15. = *Which*. 16. = *Thus*. 17. *Una ex parte* = *on one side*.

III.

(*This exercise may be introduced after Lesson XXXIX.*)

Galli, quī māgnās cōpiās peditātūs equitātūsque coēgerant et Labiēnum cum ūnā legiōne, quae in finibus Aeduōrum hiemāverat, adorīrī¹ parābant, jam ab eō² millia passuum quīndecim aberant cum³ adventum duārum legiōnum, quae ā Caesare missae erant, cōgnōscunt. Castra pōnunt et auxilia Germānōrum exspectāre cōstituunt. Labiēnus, quī hostium cōgnōverat cōsiliū, praesidium sex cohortium impedimentis⁴ relinquit atque cum vīginti quattuor cohortibus et duōbus millibus equitum contrā hostēs prōcēdit, et circiter mille passūs ā locō in quō Galli cōsēderant, castris⁴ idōneum locum dēligit. Sēdecim cohortēs in armīs esse⁵ jūssit, octo reliquae castra commūniunt.

—(*Adapted from Caesar, B. G., VI., 7, and I., 49.*)

IV.

(*This exercise may be introduced after Lesson XLVI.*)

Hōrā circiter diēi quartā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Erat⁶ ob hās⁷ causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitudinem nisi⁸ in altō cōstituī nōn poterant, militibus autem,⁹ māgnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressis, ordinēs in fluctibus servandī erant; hostēs vērō¹⁰ ab latere apertō tēla conjiciēbant. Nostrī, simul atque in aridō cōstitērunt, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt, atque eōs in fugam dedērunt.¹¹ Hostēs proeliō¹² superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt.

—(*Adapted from Caesar, B. G., IV., 23-27.*)

1. = *To attack.* 2. = *Him.* 3. = *When.* 4. Translate the dative by *for.* 5. *In armīs esse* = *to remain under arms.* 6. = *There was.* 7. = *These (or the following).* 8. *Nisi . . . constitui non poterant* = *could be stationed only.* 9. = *While.* 10. = *Moreover.* 11. = *Put,* and translate *in* by *to.* 12. = *In battle.*

V.

(*This exercise may be introduced after Lesson LIII.*)

His rēbus gestis, Labiēnō in continentī cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum millibus duōbus relictō, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et eōdem numerō equitum, quem in continentī reliquerat, solis occāsū nāvēs solvit. Omnēs nāvēs ad Britanniam accessērunt circiter merīdiem, neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus, sed ut¹ postea Caesar ex captīvis cōgnōvit, māgnae cōpiae, quae convēnerant, multitudīne nāvium perterritae ā litore discēsserant ac sē in² superiōra loca abdiderant. Caesar, expositō exercitū et locō castri³ idōneō captō, cohortibus decem ad⁴ mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit. Millia passuum circiter duodecim pōgressus, hostium cōpiās cōspicātus est.

—(*Adapted from Caesar, B. G., V., 8, 9.*)

VI.

(*This exercise may be introduced after Lesson LVII.*)

Caesar Avarici⁵ complūrēs diēs commorātus, summamque ibi cōpiam frūmentī et reliquī commeātūs nactus, exercitum ex⁶ labōre atque inopiā refecit. Jam prope hieme cōfectā, lēgātī ad eum Aeduōrum veniunt, quī haec locūtī sunt: duo magistrātum gerere, et utrumque⁷ eōrum sē lēgibus creatum esse dīcere; hōrum esse alterum Convictolitāvem, flōrentem et illustrem adulescentum, alterum Cotum, antiquissimā familiā nātum,⁸ atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et māgnae cōgnātiōnis; civitātem esse omnem in armīs; dīvisum⁹ senātum, dīvisum populū. Caesar, etsi ā bellō discēdere dētrimentōsum esse existimābat, tamen ipse in Aeduōs proficiscī statuit, senātumque omnem ad sē ēvocāvit.

—(*Adapted from Caesar, B. G., VII., 32, 33.*)

1. = *As*. 2. = *In*. 3. Translate dative by *for*. 4. = *By* or *at*. 5. = *At Avaricum*. 6. = *After* or (literally) *from*. 7. = *Each* (*que* is part of the word, and does not mean *and*). 8. *Natus* with the ablative = *born of, descended from*. 9. *i. e., divisum esse*.

VII.

(*This exercise may be introduced after Lesson LXII.*)

Caesar cum in Britanniam proficisci cōstituisset, māgnō sibi fore ūsui arbitrābatur sī¹ reperire posset quanta esset insulae māgnitūdō, et quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, et quem ūsum bellī habērent. Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercātōribus, cum haec omnia ferē eis essent incōgnita, Volusēnum praemittit et jubet eum, explorātis omnibus rēbus, ad sē quam primum² reverti. Nāvibus interim circiter octōgintā coāctis, ipse tertiā ferē vigiliā lēni ventō³ solvit. Cum nāvēs appropinquārent Britanniae tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed permultae ad inferiōrem partem insulae dējicerentur. Eādē nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, ut⁴ nōnnullae nāvēs, ancoris jactis, aestū complērentur.

—(*Adapted from Caesar, B. G., IV., 20-29.*)

VIII.

(*This exercise may be introduced after Lesson LXIX.*)

Caesar, hīs rēbus administrātis, ad cohortandōs militēs dēcurrebat et ad legiōnem decimam dēvenit. Militēs cohortātus ut suae⁵ pristinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, proeliū committendī⁶ sīgnum dedit, atque in alteram partem⁷ item cohortandī causā profectus est. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās, hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus, ut etiam ad galeās induendās tempus dēfuerit.⁸ Quae⁹ prīma quisque¹⁰ sīgna cōspexit, ad¹¹ haec cōstitit,¹² nē in quaerendīs suis,¹³ pūgnandī⁶ tempus dīmitteret.

—(*Adapted from Caesar, B. G., II., 21.*)

1. = *If*. 2. = *As soon as possible*. 3. Translate the ablative by *with*. 4. = *So that*. 5. = *Their*. 6. Translate the genitive by *for*. 7. = *Side*. 8. From *desum*; translate by the English past tense. 9. = *Whatever*; with *signa*. 10. = *Each*. 11. = *By*. 12. From *consisto*. 13. = *His comrades*.

REVIEW EXERCISES ON THE ACCIDENCE.¹

I. Decline the following combinations of a noun with an adjective in agreement :

Duplex fossa, commūne cōnsilium, reliqua cohors, alia rēs, regiō finitima, omnis pars, longius iter, incēdibilis virtūs (s.),² mājor pars, manus dextra, tōta aciēs (s.), omnis annus, Belgae sōlī (p.),² injūria vetus, ūlla nāvis, pūgna superior, nāvis longa, exercitus noster, vir fortis, rēs familiāris, idōneus locus, omnis cōpia, utra pars, ager ferax, locus superior, reliquī Belgae (p.), aciēs triplex (s.), vetus nāvis, tōta prōvincia, omne genus, proelium equestre, continēns impetus, prīmus ōrdō, complūrēs annī (p.), caput solum, homō nōbilis, omnia arma (p.), nūllus ager, omnis equitātus (s.), ūnum proelium, castra mājōra (p.), nūllus commūnis magistrātus, prīmum agmen, altera pars, equitātus noster (s.), omnis ōrdō, silva continēns, proxima nox, par bellum, tōta civitās, castra nāvālia (p.), latus apertum, omne tempus, altius vallum, rēs opportūna, commūne pericūlum, silva dēnsior, alia pars, humilior nāvis, eques Rōmānus, reliqua legiō, ūnum latus, nūllus hostis, legiō-nārius mīles, sīgnum militāre, commūnis salūs (s.), locus dēclivis, commūne pericūlum, mājor cōpia, aliud tempus, pedestre iter, ingēns māgnitūdo (s.), continūi complūrēs diēs (p.), māgnum iter, omnis spēs (s.), ūllus diēs, cōpiae pedestrēs (p.), superior diēs, mīles integer ac recēns, summa spēs (s.).

II. Give the other degrees of comparison of the following adjectives, in the same case, gender and number as the form given :

Facillimō, ācrem, altissimae, breviorum, mājōribus, optimārum,

1. These exercises are intended to be suggestive merely, for which reason the examples given to illustrate many of the most valuable kinds of drill are few in number, the teacher being left to add, as he easily can, further examples of the same nature.

2. The letters (s) and (p) mean that the combined phrase is to be declined in the singular or plural only, as the case may be.

fortis, crēbris, veteris, multōs, dītissimī, humiliōrī, prīma, difficilia, dēnsissimā, superiōre, gravium, proximum, celerrimās, māgnae, ferōcissimam, potentēs, plēnō, antīquam, parvum.

III. *Change the following adjectives to agree with the nouns in parentheses :*

Omnis (rērum), complūrēs (annōrum), paucus (diēbus), māgnus (cōpiās), plūs (loca), ingēns (māgnitūdine), omnis (nōbilitātis), omnis (annōs), novus (rērum), māgnus (auctōritātis), plūrimus vetusque (nāvēs), noster (marī), reliquus (ōrdinēs), māximus (multitūdini), finitimus (partem), inīquior (locum), dexter (cornū), alter (castra), summus (duce), omnis (hībernīs), singulāris (studiō).

IV. *Give the Latin numerals for the following numbers, in agreement with the nouns in parentheses :*

3 (hōrās), 200 (obsidibus), 2 (legiōnibus), 3rd (diē), 3 (diērum), 20 (vicōs), 1000 (equitēs), 1000 (equitibus), 1500 (Belgās), 1 (proeliō), 1 (cohortis), 10th (legiōnem), 10 (legiōnum), 1st (aciē), 12 (annōs), 1st (impetū), 4th (nocte), 3 (millia), 2 (millibus), 13th (legiō), 4th (diem), 1892nd (annō).

V. *Decline the following combinations of a pronoun and noun in agreement :*

Nostra castra, utrumque latus, illa pars, hōc proelium, utraque castra, quīdam miles, hīc locus, is collis, hōc ipsum flūmen, quodque tempus (s.), idem illud cōnsilium, quī diēs, qua legiō, meus filius, haec cīvitās, eadem rēs.

VI. *Write those forms of hīc, is, suus, ille, quī, idem, which will agree with the following words :*

Legiōne, cōnsilium, loca, locum, rem, militum, cohortī, diēbus, annōs, diē.

VII. *Give the other degrees of comparison of the following adverbs :*

Audācius, saepissimē, multum, minus, māximē, fortiter, ācrius, melius, mātūrē, facile, liberrimē, diū, satis.

VIII. Circumveniō, *surround*; collocō, *station*; dō, *give*; interficiō, *kill*; jubeō, *order*; mittō, *send*; accipiō, *receive*; relinquo, *leave*; veniō, *come*; videō, *see*.

Cōnor, *attempt*; experior, *try*; polliceor, *promise*; proficiscor, *set out*; prōgredior, *advance*.

1. Write out the principal parts of these verbs.
2. Under each of the principal parts (a) of mittō, (b) of cōnor, write out the names of the moods and tenses which are formed from it.
3. Name and write out in full the tenses of the indicative whose first person singular means:

I shall send, I have given, I am coming, I had left, I shall order, I receive, I was coming, I shall have seen, I station, I saw.

I was ordered, I shall be sent, I have been left, I used to be sent, I am ordered, I had been ordered.

I had promised, I shall attempt, I advance, I advanced, I shall set out, I have tried.

4. Translate the following forms:

Circumventī erant, interficit, accipiētur, vōnerāmus, dabunt, mittēris, vidēris, collocantur, jūssae estis, relinquare.

Pollicēbantur, prōgredimur, cōnātus est, experiēminī, proficiscitur.

5. Translate the following forms:

We shall leave, they will station, he had sent, they come, they were killed, you shall have seen, we were giving, it has been received, you are being surrounded, I shall order.

We shall attempt, he tried, she had promised, I was setting out, they advance.

6. Translate the following:

Cum vidisset, nē interficerēmur, cum collocārent, ut veniret, nē accipiātur, quod reliquerit, quis interfectus esset, cum jubeat, nē dētur.

Cum proficiscerētur, nē cōnantur, quod pollicitus sis, ut experiāmur, cum prōgressi essent.

7. Write out (a) the third singular imperfect subjunctive passive, the third plural present subjunctive active, and the first plural plu-

perfect subjunctive active and passive, of mittō, circumveniō, dō, videō and interficiō ; and (b) the third singular present and pluperfect subjunctive and the third plural imperfect subjunctive of cōnor, exuperior, polliceor, proficiscor and prōgredior.

8. *Write out and name all the infinitives, active and passive, of relinquo, accipio, colloco, video, circumvenio.*

9. *Translate :*

(Dicit eōs) mittere, reliquisse, interfectōs esse, collocārī, ventūrōs esse, profectūrōs esse, prōgredi, cōnātōs esse.

(Dixit eōs) venīre, dedisse, circumventōs esse, mittī, acceptūrōs esse, cōnātūrōs esse, cōnārī, pollicitōs esse.

(Jūssus est) venīre, interfici, proficisci.

10. *Write out and name all the participles, active and passive, of jubeō, interficiō, colloco, mittō, circumveniō, cōnor, prōgredior, exuperior, polliceor, proficiscor.*

11. *Write out the participles meaning while coming, after advancing, after being surrounded, while attempting, in agreement with the following words: militibus, Caesarem, legiōne, legiōnis, equitum, exercitū.*

12. *Write out the genitive of the gerund of dō, veniō, prōgredior, videō and relinquo ; and all cases of the gerund of proficiscor.*

13. *Write out the following parts :*

Third singular pluperfect subjunctive active of dō, mittō.

Second plural present subjunctive active of veniō, colloco.

Third plural imperfect indicative passive of interficiō, relinquo.

First plural future indicative active of dō, veniō, videō

Perfect infinitive active of videō, veniō, interficiō.

Present infinitive passive of accipio, dō, mittō.

Future participle active feminine plural accusative of videō, relinquo.

Gerundive ablative singular neuter of accipio, dō, jubeō.

14. *Name fully the following forms :*

Viderēmur, accipiētis, reliquit, interficiendōs, cōnātī sunt, proficisci, prōgressī, interfēcī, jubentem, data essent, det, videris.

15. *Write the corresponding active or passive form (as the case may be) of the following:*

Interfēcit, relinquam, reliquisset, datum est, vidētur, accipi-
ēris, accipere, datum esse.

16. *Write the corresponding form in the indicative or subjunctive (as the case may be) of the following:*

Dabat, mīsisset, vēnērunt, circumveniātur, relictī essent,
jūsseram, jubeō, interficitur.

17. *Translate:* He promises to come, he was ordered to come, he was asked to come, so terrified as to come, it is difficult to come, he did this in order to come; they said that he had come, so important that he had come, he did this that he might come; they attack the soldiers who are coming, he learns who are coming, they attack those who are coming, he learns that they are attacking the soldiers who are coming.

IX.—1. *Write out the principal parts of* sum, possum, ferō, eō, volō, nōlō, mālō, fiō.

2. *Write out in full the present indicative and subjunctive of these verbs.*

3. *Write out the following parts:*

First singular imperfect and future indicative of sum, possum, eō.

Third singular imperfect subjunctive of sum, possum, ferō, eō, volō, fiō.

Present participle, nominative and genitive singular, of possum, absum, eō.

Present imperative of ferō, eō, nōlō.

Genitive of gerund of ferō, eō.

4. *Write out the principal parts of the compounds of* ferō *with* in, ex, ab, ad, dis, sub, con, ob; *of* eō *with* prō *and* re; *and of* sum *with* ab *and* prō.
-

PART II.

RULES OF SYNTAX AND EXERCISES IN PROSE COMPOSITION.

EXERCISE I.

(a) ORDER OF WORDS.¹

1. The best way to become familiar with the order of words in Latin is to give careful attention to the writings of some good Latin prose author, such as Cæsar. The following general remarks, however, may be of some service to the young student :

2. As a rule, the subject, followed by its attributes, comes first in the sentence ; the verb comes last, preceded by the words that modify or depend upon it ; as, *All these differ from one another in language, customs and laws*: **HĪ omnēs linguā, institūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt.**

3. The usual order of words is often changed, for the sake of emphasis or of euphony ; as, *Among the Helvetii by far the noblest-born and richest was Orgetorix*: **Apud Helvétios longē nōbilis-**

1. It may be stated generally that the order of words in Latin corresponds to the order of the notions or the thoughts, and that the writer mentions in natural succession, as they would appear to him, the persons, objects, conditions, circumstances, etc., connected with the actual event. Take, for example, the sentence, *Rex illo anno agrum ferro et igni vastavit*: *The king—in that year—the land—with fire and sword—laid waste.* Here we have before our mind's eye the actor, the time, the object, the instruments, and finally, as a finishing touch to the picture, we are told what was done. How much more vivid, dramatic and natural is this than the impatient, business-like order of the English sentence, *The king laid waste the land in that year with fire and sword.* An Englishman seems eager to know at once what the subject did, and then the setting of time, place and other attendant circumstances may be described—if he has leisure to listen.

The order of words in a Latin sentence may be likened to the sequence of events in a play or a novel, in which we have all the actors and the accessories of time and place before us, when in the last act or chapter comes the catastrophe or denouement ;

simus et dītissimus fuit Orgetorix. *Other route had they none: Aliud iter habēbant nūllum.* *They point out that there is but one hope of safety: Ūnam esse spem salūtis docent.*

4. The link verb *esse* should not be placed at the end of the clause, its usual position being before its predicate word; as, *Gaul as a whole is divided into three parts: Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs.* *Among them this punishment is very severe: Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima.* *One side is opposite Gaul: Ūnum latus est contrā Galliam.* *The nature of the place was as follows: Locī nātūra erat haec.*

5. In an inflected language such as the Latin, the order of the words may be varied (for emphasis or euphony) to an almost unlimited extent without any sacrifice of clearness; whereas in English, such a variation would pretty certainly lead to ambiguity, if, indeed, the meaning of the sentence were not entirely changed. Compare, for example:

(1) Cōsul interfēcīt rēgem,

(2) Rēgem interfēcīt cōsul,

(3) Cōsul rēgem interfēcīt,

(4) Rēgem cōsul interfēcīt,

with

(1) The consul slew the king,

(2) The king slew the consul,

(3) The consul the king slew,

(4) The king the consul slew.

6. *Inquit, enim, vērō, autem, quidem* and *quoque* never come first in a sentence. *Itaque* usually has first place, and the word or phrase emphasized by *nē* . . . *quidem* is enclosed by them; as, *I, said he, have returned home: Domum, inquit, rediī.* *You also were there: Tū quoque aderās.* *Not even the wounded are spared: Nē sauciīs quidem parcitur.*

while following the order of the words in the English is somewhat like reading the last chapter of a novel immediately after the first, and then going back to get some idea of the framework of the story and a knowledge of the circumstances that led up to the climax.

Each language, however, follows the order best adapted to its character and genius, and the above statement of the arrangement of words that usually obtains in the respective tongues, is not meant to be considered as an invariable rule, but only as a general tendency, for in both languages the position of a word, phrase or clause depends mainly on its relative importance in the thought, and, to some extent, may be varied accordingly. The same principle of order holds in long sentences, producing the periodic structure which prevails extensively in Latin, in which the subjects, objects and adverbial adjuncts are frequently represented by subordinate clauses.

A good example of the Latin period is found in Cæsar, Bell. Gall., Book II., ch. XXV.

7. The particles *ve*, *ne* (interrogative), *que* are enclitics, and are always appended to some word. In like manner, the preposition *cum* is written after and appended to *mē*, *tē*, *nōbīs*, *vōbīs*, *sē*, *quō*, *quā* and *quibus*. Examples :—*One or two were present* : *Ūnus alterve aderat*. *Will you write?* *Scrībēsne?* *The senate and the people of Rome have made this decree* : *Senātus populusque Rōmānus hōc dēcrēvit*. *I cannot save myself along with you* : *Mē ūnā vōbiscum servāre nōn possum*. *He carries all his possessions with him* : *Omnia sua sēcum portat*.

8. The more unusual the position for any word in a sentence the more emphatic is it for that word. Accordingly the subject will have most emphasis when placed at the end of the sentence, and the verb when placed at the beginning ; as, *It was Cæsar who conquered the Gauls* : *Gallōs vicit Cæsar*. *Cæsar sailed to Greece* : *Nāvīgāvit Cæsar in Graeciam*. *It was avarice that instigated them* : *Impellit eōs avāritia*.

N.B.—The order of words is often (especially in narrative) determined by what may be called the principle of proceeding from the known to the unknown. For example, in *Cæsar* we find that generally the first words of a sentence form a connecting link between what follows and what goes before, by beginning the new sentence with something known to us from the preceding one ; as, *He makes haste to lead his army across the river Axona*. *Upon that river there was a bridge* : *Flūmen Axonam exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvīt*. *In eō flūmine pōns erat*.¹

In accordance with this principle, the relative (pronoun or adjective) is regularly the first word in the clause or sentence, often even preceding prepositions and conjunctions, though necessarily coming after them in the English translation ; as, *When Cæsar learned this, he set out* : *Quod ubi Cæsar resciit, profectus est*. *He was informed of these matters* : *Quibus dē rēbus certior factus est*.

(b) CONCORDS.

9. The following concords, or general forms of agreement, should be noticed and borne in mind :

(a) A noun, or pronoun, in apposition with another substantive, agrees with that substantive in case. If the appositive has a different form for a different gender, it agrees also in gender ; as,

1. It will be observed that the principle of arrangement is the same in English, the introductory words of the second sentence forming, as it were, a common ground on which the minds of the hearer and the speaker meet, a sort of mental stepping-stone leading out from the known present of the one sentence to the unknown future of the other.

He persuades Dumnorix, the Aeduan, the brother of Divitiacus: Dumnorigī Aeduō frātrī Divitiacī persuādet. Experience, the best of masters, has taught us: Ūsus magister optimus nōs ērudīvit. Philosophy, the best of teachers, will instruct you: Philosophia magistra optima vōs ērudiet.

(b) A predicate noun, or pronoun, agrees with its subject in case, and usually in gender, if capable of distinguishing gender; as, *He had been called friend by the senate: Is ā senātū amicus appellātus erat. We are allowed to be freemen: Nōbīs esse līberīs licet. Philosophy is the guide of life: Philosophia magistra vītāe est. Athens was victorious: Athēnae erant victriēcēs.*

(c) An adjective, whether attributive, appositive or predicative, agrees with its substantive in gender, number and case. This rule applies to possessive and demonstrative pronominal adjectives.

(1) An attributive adjective, qualifying two or more substantives of different genders, agrees with the one nearest it, or is repeated with each; as, *Many boys and women were on the wall: Puerī multī mulierēsque erant in mūrō. Puerī mulierēsque multae erant in mūrō. Multī puerī, multae mulierēs erant in mūrō.*

(2) A predicate adjective, or participle, qualifying two or more nouns representing persons, is masculine and plural, or it may be made to agree with the noun nearest it; as, *The boys and women were seen on the wall: Puerī mulierēsque in mūrō vīsī (or vīsaē) sunt. My brother and your sisters have set out: Meus frāter et tuae sorōrēs sunt profectī (or profectae). Meus frāter profectus est et tuae sorōrēs.*

(3) A predicate adjective, or participle, qualifying two or more nouns representing things, is put in the neuter plural, or it may agree with the noun nearest it; as, *The city and temple were taken: Urbs templumque capta sunt. The task of (constructing) the winter camp and the fortifications had been completed: Opus hibernōrum mūnitiōnēsque erant perfectae.*

(d) A pronoun (relative or other) agrees with its antecedent in gender, number and person.

When the relative has several antecedents, it follows the rule for the adjective. Occasionally we find the relative agreeing, not with its antecedent, but with some word in the predicate, especially after the verb *esse*; as, *He pushed forward to seize Vesontio, which is the largest town of the Sequani: Ad occupandum Vesontionem quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum contendit.*

(e) A finite verb agrees with its subject (which is in the nominative case) in number and person.

If the verb has two or more subjects, it may be plural, agreeing with all, or it may agree with the one nearest it, being understood

with the others; as, *Cæsar and Labiennus were in Gaul*: In Galliã erat Cæsar et Labiënus. Cæsar et Labiënus erant in Galliã.

The verb is also singular if the subjects form but one notion; as, *The order and arrangement of the column was different*: Ratiõ ordõque agminis aliter sē habēbat. *A loud din and shouting (= a noise of shouting) arose*: Clāmor fremitusque oriēbatur.

N.B.—It is to be observed that for the unemphatic introductory word *there*, and also for *it*, when used as an impersonal or representative subject, Latin has no equivalent words; as, *There is no one without some hope*: Nēmo est sine aliquã spē. *It is pleasant to be praised*: Laudārī est jūcundum. *It is raining*: Pluit.

10. In the case of two or more subjects of different persons, the verb is plural, and the second person is preferred to the third, and the first to both second and third; as, *You and I (=we) have spoken*: Ego et tū dīximus. *He and I (=we) have spoken*: Ego et ille dīximus. *You and he (=you) have spoken*: Tū et ille dīxistis. *You and he and I (=we) have spoken*: Ego et tū et ille dīximus.

Observe the order of the pronouns in the Latin sentences.

11. By a sense construction (*synesis, cōstructio ad sēsum*) a plural verb, adjective, or pronoun, is often found with a singular substantive, agreeing with the latter in meaning, but not in form; as, *The multitude depart*: Multitūdõ abeunt. *Some of them are ready*: Pars eõrum parātī sunt. *He sends forward the cavalry to see in what direction the enemy are pursuing their march*: Equitātum præmittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant.

(c) THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE—THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

12. One of the most characteristic idioms of the Latin language is the infinitive with its so-called subject accusative, after verbs of *saying, thinking, believing, knowing, feeling, declaring*, and such like (*verba sentiendī et dēclārandī*), where in English we find a noun clause introduced by the conjunction *that*; as,

He says that the Gauls are exceedingly brave: Dicit Gallõs esse fortissimõs. *Cæsar perceived that Dumnorix was meant*: Cæsar Dumnorigem dēsignārī sentiēbat.

The conjunction *that* is frequently omitted in English, as is the case with the *esse* of the compound forms of the Latin infinitive; as, *He says he will not come*: Negat sē ventūrum.

13. Verbs signifying *to hope, to promise, to undertake, to threaten, to swear* (*spērāre, pollicērī, prōmittere, recipere, minārī, minitārī, jūrāre*), usually take the future infinitive with subject accusative expressed, while in English we use the present infinitive without a subject ; as,

He promised to come: Pollicitus est sē ventūrum (esse). They swore to adopt no measures against the Sequani: Jūrāvērunt nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsiliū inītūrōs.

Spērāre is also found with a present infinitive, but regularly so only with *posse* ; as *They hope to be able to become masters of the whole of Gaul: Tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīri posse spērānt. They do not hope that our armies can be entrapped: Nōn spērānt nōstrōs exercitūs capī posse.*

14. When *verba sentiendī et dēclārāndī* are found in the passive, the personal construction is used in Latin, except in the compound tenses ; as,

It is said that Cæsar was consul: Cæsar fuisse cōsul dīcitur, not Cæsarem fuisse cōsulem dīcitur. It has been said that the Gauls occupy one part: Ūnam partem Gallōs obtinēre dictum est.

15. When the subject of the infinitive is a pronoun of the third person, standing for the same person as the subject of the principal verb, *sē* must be used ; but, if it denotes a different person, use the proper form of *is* or *ille* ; as,

He says that he (=the person denoted by the subject of says) will come: Dīcit sē ventūrum esse. He says that he (=some other person) will go: Dīcit eum (or illum) itūrum esse.

16. Consider carefully the following rules for the use of the different infinitives :

(a) When the time denoted by the two verbs is the same, use the present infinitive ; as,

(1) *He says that Cæsar is a brave soldier: Cæsarem esse fortem mīlitem dīcit.*

(2) *He said that Cæsar was a brave soldier: Cæsarem esse fortem mīlitem dīxit.*

(3) *He will say that Cæsar is a brave soldier: Cæsarem esse fortem mīlitem dīcet.*

(b) If the time denoted by the infinitive is prior to that denoted by the principal verb, use the perfect infinitive; as,

(1) *He says that Cæsar was (or has been) consul: Caesarem fuisse cōnsulem dīcit.*

(2) *He said that Cæsar had been consul: Caesarem fuisse cōnsulem dixit.*

(3) *He will say that Cæsar has been consul: Caesarem fuisse cōnsulem dīcet.*

(c) If the time denoted by the infinitive is subsequent to that denoted by the principal verb, the future infinitive is to be used; as,

(1) *He says the leader will come: Ducem ventūrum dīcit.*

(2) *He said the leader would come: Ducem ventūrum dixit.*

(3) *He will say that the leader will come: Ducem ventūrum dīcet.*

(d) *Would have* is expressed by the future participle and *fuisse*; as, *He said he would have come: Dixit sē ventūrum fuisse.*

These rules may be briefly summed up thus:—Let the pupil imagine himself in the place of the original speaker and discover the tense employed in what was actually said or thought, and use the corresponding infinitive. For example, in the sentence, *He said the boy was his brother*, the words of the original speaker would be, *The boy is my brother*; hence, in Latin, *Dixit puerum esse suum frātre*m. So, in the sentence, *He said Cæsar would come*, his exact words would be, *Cæsar will come*; hence, in Latin, *Caesarem ventūrum esse dixit*.

17. It is not necessary that the verbal function should be performed, in every case, by a single word. Any phrase or combination of words having the logical value of some particular verb, may have the construction of that verb; as, *There is a report (=they say) that the enemy is at hand: Fāma est hostem adesse. He began to have great hopes that it would result in his abandoning his obstinate position: Māgnam in spem veniēbat (=spērābat) fore uti pertināciā dēsisteret. He bound the citizens by an oath (=made them swear) that they would not ask aid from the Roman people: Jūrejūrāndō cīvēs obstrinxit sē nōn auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs.*

Other examples of such phrases are: *rūmor est, testis est, certior fieri, certiorē facere, spem habēre, ratiōnem habēre, ratiōnem cōficere, cōsciū esse*; as, *Cæsar was informed that the enemy had encamped at the foot of the mountain: Caesar certior factus est hostēs sub monte cōsēdisse.*

18. With the exception of *inquit*, and *crēdō*, used ironically (=I suppose), verbs of saying and thinking are not used parenthetically as in English; for example, "*The enemy*," he answered, "*are close at hand*," is in Latin, **Respondit hostēs adesse.**

19. Several verbs, as in English, are followed by a complementary infinitive without a subject intervening. These are called *modal* verbs, and are chiefly the following: *possum*, *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *dēsīnō*, *coēpī*, *cōnor*, *nequeō*; also, *cōnsuēscō*, *dēbeō*, *contendō*, *dubitō*, *mātūrō*, *cōstituō*, *dēcernō* and *parō*.

EXAMPLES.—*He wishes to be Cæsar's friend*: **Vult esse amicus Caesaris.** *He preferred to remain at home*: **Domī remanēre māluit.** *He prepares to complete the fortifications that were begun*: **Mūnitiōnēs institūtās parat perficere.** *He hastens to set out for Britain*: **In Britanniam proficisci contendit.** *He makes haste to leave the city*: **Mātūrat ab urbe proficisci.**

Polliceor is also exceptionally used as a modal verb; as, *They promise to give hostages*: **Obsidēs dare pollicentur.**

20. When the infinitive, after a modal verb, is followed by a predicate word, this agrees with the subject of the principal (*i.e.*, the modal) verb; as, *Cæsar determined to become consul*: **Caesar cōsul fierī cōstituuit.**

21. *Coepī* is used with an active or deponent infinitive, but where the complementary infinitive is passive, *coeptus sum* is used; as, *Cæsar began to advance the battering ram*: **Caesar arietem agere coepit.** *The battering ram began to be advanced*: **Ariēs agī coeptus est.** *Javelins began to be hurled*: **Tēla conjici coepta sunt.**

22. Some of these verbs, especially *volō*, *nōlō* and *mālō*, take an infinitive with subject accusative if the subject of the infinitive is different from that of the principal verb, and occasionally (chiefly with *esse* or a passive infinitive), even when the subjects are the same; as, *He wishes his friends to grow in honor*: **Amīcōs honōre auctiōrēs vult esse.** *He did not wish that place to be unoccupied*: **Nōluit eum locum vacāre.** *He wishes to be consul himself*: **Sē cōsulem esse vult.**

This is the regular construction with *simulō*: as, *They make a pretence of returning home*: **Domum revertī sē simulant.**

23. The accusative and infinitive is also found after the verbs *jubeō*, *vetō*, *patior*, *sinō*, *prohibeō*, and some others; as, *He orders the lieutenant to storm the town*: **Lēgātum oppidum oppugnāre jubet.** *He had forbidden the soldiers to depart*: **Militēs discēdere vetuerat.** *They suffer no wine to be brought in*: **Nihil vinī inferri**

patiuntur. *They do not allow wine to be brought to them at all: Vinum ad sē omnīnō importārī nōn sinunt.* *They prevented the Germans from crossing: Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant.*

EXERCISE 1.

1. He replied that Cæsar had conquered Gaul. 2. He thinks that the Roman leader will easily vanquish the Belgians. 3. We saw that the nights were shorter in Britain than on the continent. 4. The enemy sent ambassadors to Cæsar, and promised to give hostages. 5. Word was brought to Cæsar that the hill was held by the Roman soldiers. 6. To these envoys Cæsar replied that the Gauls had been conquered by the Roman army. 7. The general hears that the enemy are hurling javelins at the soldiers. 8. The enemy, he answered, had been hurling javelins at Cæsar's cavalry. 9. He learned from the scouts that all the Belgians had encamped on the other side of that river. 10. It is said that Cæsar set out into Gaul, and defeated the Helvetii on the other side of the river Rhone. 11. To that embassy he replied that he would have come to the enemy's camp. 12. The Helvetii are accustomed to receive, not give, hostages. 13. Some even reported to Cæsar that the soldiers would not advance (*literally, bear on the standards*). 14. He said the Aedui wished to wage war with the Germans, and to be the friends and allies of the Roman people. 15. The troops began to storm the town, and stones began to be hurled from all sides against the wall.

EXERCISE II.

FINAL CLAUSES (CLAUSES OF PURPOSE).

24. In Latin prose the infinitive is never used in a final sense, that is, to denote the purpose or end of the action. In English the adverbial or gerundial infinitive (*i.e.*, with *to*) is regularly so used.

25. The commonest mode of expressing purpose in Latin is by *ut* (*utī*) with the subjunctive—in negative clauses, *nē*—or by the relative followed by the subjunctive, if the clause of

purpose is closely connected with some one substantive in the principal clause. The *quā* clause is especially common after *mittō* and *praemittō*.

EXAMPLES.—*He sets out to attack the camp of the enemy: Proficiscitur ut castra hostium oppūgnēt. He waited for our troops, in order that an attack might be made upon the enemy from all sides: Ut undique in hostēs impetus fieret nōstrōs exspectābat. In order that they may not (or in order not to) be surrounded by the enemy, they will make a sally: Nē ab hostibus circumveniantur ēruptionem facient. Caesar thought he ought to take the greatest precaution that this might not happen: Id nē accideret māgnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimāvit. Soldiers were sent to seize (literally, who were to seize) the city: Militēs missi sunt quī urbem occuparent. He sent forward the cavalry to withstand (literally, who were to withstand) the attack of the enemy: Equitātum quī sustinēret hostium impetum praemisit.*

26. When the clause of purpose contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, it is usually introduced by *quō* (= *ut eō*) which should be closely followed by the comparative; as, *In order that men may grieve the more deeply, the immortal gods sometimes grant them a longer exemption from punishment: Quō gravius hominēs doleant, dī immortalēs iis interdum diūturiōrem impūnitātem concēdunt. He gave orders to open out the ranks, that they might use their swords more easily: Manipulōs laxāre jussit quō facilius gladiis ūti possent.*

27. The subjunctive with *ut* or *nē* is used after verbs of urging, wishing, commanding, advising, asking, striving, etc. (*hortor, optō, imperō, suādeō, persuādeō, rogō, contendō*, etc.), where the notion of purpose is often scarcely discernible. Such a subordinate clause is really substantival, and forms the object of the principal verb (or the *subject*, if the verb is passive).

EXAMPLES.—*He persuades Casticus to seize the chief power in his state: Persuādet Casticō ut rēgnum in civitāte suā occupāret. He asked me not to do this: Mē rogāvit nē hōc facerem. He was persuaded to cross the Rhine: Eī persuāsum est ut Rhēnum trānsiret.*

N.B.—But *jubeō, cōnor* and *volō* regularly, and *contendō* generally, are followed by a complementary infinitive. See sections 19 and 23, page 122. *Cæsar uses nitor* with an infinitive, once. *They strive to burst through: Perrumpere nītuntur.*

28. With regard to the sequence of tenses in final clauses, primary or principal sentences are followed by the present subjunctive; secondary or historical tenses, by the imperfect subjunctive.

The Primary tenses are :—

Present, **amō**; *I love, I am loving, I do love.*

Perfect (translated by *have*), **amāvī**; *I have loved.*

Future, **amābō**; *I shall love.*

Future Perfect, **amāverō**; *I shall have loved.*

The Secondary tenses are :—

Imperfect, **amābam**; *I was loving, I loved, I did love.*

Perfect (Aorist), **amāvī**; *I loved, I did love.*

Pluperfect, **amāveram**; *I had loved.*

The historical present often follows the rule for secondary tenses, as in meaning it is really a past tense; as, *He persuades Dumnorix to make the same attempt*: **Dumnorigī ut idem cōnārētur persuādet.**

29. A negative purpose is never expressed by *ut nōn*, always by *nē*. So in clauses of purpose,

that nobody = **nē quis.**

that nothing = **nē quid.**

that no = **nē quī (or quis).**

that never = **nē unquam.**

EXAMPLES.—*He persuaded the leader to do nothing*: **Ducī persuāsīt nē quid faceret.** *He will destroy the bridge that no one may cross the river*: **Pontem rescindet nē quis flūmen trānseat.**

30. Negative final clauses are connected by *nēve* or *neu* (seldom by *neque*); as, *He ordered the Gauls not to assist them with corn or anything else*: **Gallis imperāvit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē juvārent.** *He orders Cassivelaunus not to injure Mandubracius or the Trinobantes*: **Imperat Cassivelaunō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinobantibus noceat.** So also if the first clause is affirmative; as, *He urged the soldiers to bear in mind their former valor, and not to be thrown into confusion*: **Militēs cohortātus est utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriā retinērent, neu perturbārentur.**

31. The same verb may be used in two senses, and with corresponding constructions. For example, it may at one time be used as a verb of thinking or declaring (*sentīendi vel declarandi*), when it has the accusative and infinitive, and at another time as a verb of commanding or effecting (*imperandi vel efficiendi*), when it is followed by a clause introduced by *ut* or *nē*. Such verbs are: *moneō, persuādeō, faciō, dicō, scribō*, etc.; as, *Cæsar persuaded the soldier not to go*: **Militī nē iret Cæsar persuāsīt.** *Cæsar was*

persuaded that the enemy were near: *Caesarī persuāsum est hostēs adesse.*

32. Certain verbs usually modal, such as *cōstituō*, take an *ut* or *nē* clause when the subject of the subordinate verb is different from that of the verb which governs such clause; as, *He determines that these should leave the town: Cōstituit ut hī oppidō excēdant.*

EXERCISE 2.

1. They sent Cæsar into Gaul to carry on war with the Helvetii. 2. The Gauls had sent envoys to Cæsar to ask for peace. 3. In order to defeat the enemy, and not to suffer them to cross the river, Cæsar exhorted the soldiers to fight valiantly. 4. Cavalry were sent to take possession of the enemy's camp. 5. He ordered the cavalry not to pursue the enemy, but to return at once to the camp. 6. He sent forward the cavalry and the slingers to attack the enemy in the rear. 7. He sent messengers to announce to Cæsar that the Roman cavalry had been routed by the enemy and were fleeing into the woods. 8. He replied that Cæsar had praised the soldiers of the tenth legion in order that they might fight the more valiantly. 9. Cæsar ordered (*imperō*) his soldiers to press forward and not to hurl any weapon whatever at the enemy. 10. They ordered the bridge to be destroyed in order that no one might be able to cross the river. 11. The Gauls sent a messenger to say that the Roman troops had built a bridge over the river in order to pursue the enemy more easily. 12. He persuaded the Helvetii to go forth from their territories with all their forces. 13. He warned the leader that the Gauls were at hand, and directed the soldiers not to leave the camp. 14. He persuaded the soldiers that ambassadors had been sent to Cæsar concerning a surrender. 15. Cæsar determined that Labienus should not be sent to storm the town.

EXERCISE III.

CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES (CLAUSES OF RESULT).

33. Result or Consequence is denoted by *ut* (*utī*) with the subjunctive; in negative clauses by *ut nōn*; as,

He is so honest that all men believe him: Tam probus est ut omnēs eī crēdant. They made an attack so suddenly that no one resisted: Impetum tam subitō fēcērunt ut nēmo resisteret. No one is so brave as not to fear death (or that he does not fear death): Nēmo est tam fortis ut mortem nōn pertimēseat. It happened that there was a full moon: Accidit ut esset lūna plēna.

It will be observed that just as the infinitive in English is used to express purpose, so the English infinitive preceded by *as* after *so* and *such*, is used to denote result.

N.B.—A common use of the consecutive clause is to form with a preceding *fore* (*futūrum esse*), or *futūrum fuisse*, a substitute for the *future* or *future perfect* infinitive, represented in English by *will*, *would* or *would have*: *He said that the city would be (or would have been) taken by storm: Dixit fore (or futūrum fuisse) ut urbs expūgnārētur.*

This is especially the case after verbs that want the supine.

34. Closely connected with consecutive clauses are clauses of characteristic introduced by the relative pronoun or by relative adverbs. Such clauses describe the antecedent as being or not being one of a class characterized by a certain quality.

EXAMPLES.—*Nor am I the man to be frightened (= Nor am I one of the class of men who are frightened): Neque is sum quī terrear. He is not the man to do this: Nōn is est quī hōc faciat. No ship capable of carrying soldiers was lost: Nulla nāvis quae militēs portāret dēsiderābātur.*

35. Such a clause of characteristic is found after *ūnus*, *sōlus*, *dignus*, *indignus*, *idōneus*, and some other words; as, *He is worthy to be loved: Dignus est quī amētur. The Belgae are the only ones who have prevented the Teutons from entering their territories: Belgae sōlī sunt quī Teutonōs intrā finēs suōs ingredi prohibuerint. He is a suitable man to be sent: Homō idōneus est quī mittātur.*

36. *Quīn* (= *quī + nē*) is often used to express result after negatives or interrogatives implying a negative; as, *Who is there who does not see (or, but sees)? Quis est quīn videat? There is no one who does not see (or, but sees): Nēmo est quīn videat. No one is so brave as not to be disturbed: Nēmo est tam fortis quīn perturbētur.*

37. Observe that in consecutive clauses,

that nobody = *ut nēmo.*

that nothing = *ut nihil.*

that no = *ut nullus.*

that never = *ut nunquam.*

EXAMPLES.—*The attack was so sudden that no one offered resistance*: Impetus tam subitus erat **ut nemo** resisteret. *He was so brave that he feared nothing*: Tam fortis erat **ut nihil** timēret. *He is so cowardly that he never engages in battle*: Tam timidus est **ut nunquam** proelium committat.

38. As regards the use of tenses in consecutive clauses, the English will, in general, be a sufficient guide, noting that the imperfect is generally used for our past tense; as,

The enemy inspired our troops with such terror that they do not to-day dare to join battle: Tantum terrōrem nostris militibus hostēs **injēcērunt** ut hodie nōn committere proelium **audeant**.

39. However, after a historical tense, the perfect subjunctive is frequently used, either (1) to denote the action as one whole, nothing being stated as to its continuance; or, (2) for the sake of greater vividness, as if the result were present to the mind of the speaker; as,

(1) *Such a panic seized all, that not only did not a single other man endeavor to drive the enemy out of the camp, but even the king himself fled to the river and the ships*: Tantus pavor omnēs occupāvit ut nōn modo alius quisquam castris pellere hostem **cōnārētur** (denoting continuance or repetition) sed etiam ipse rēx ad flūmen nāvēsq̄ **perfūgerit** (a single act).

(2) *Such was the expression of his face that he presented the appearance even of one who laughed*: Eō fuit habitū oris ut ridentis etiam speciem **praebuerit**.

EXERCISE 3.

1. The leader was of such a character that all the soldiers loved him. 2. The sea was so closely bordered by cliffs, that from the higher places a missile could be thrown to the water's edge. 3. He said that so great was the valor of the soldiers that they dared even to cross the river. 4. So great a panic seized our soldiers that we did not dare to join battle with the enemy. 5. There is no one but knows that brave soldiers are always praised by the general. 6. There are (those) who say that Cæsar was defeated by the cavalry of the Gauls. 7. He replied that the commander was not worthy to be loved by the soldiers. 8. There followed such storms as confined our troops to the camp and kept the enemy from fighting. 9. He was the only man who had not been induced to take the oath or to give his children (as) hostages.

10. Such was the valor of the soldiers that not a man withdrew from the rampart. 11. Cæsar said that from these circumstances it had happened that they roamed about less widely. 12. We have been so taught by our ancestors that we are accustomed to receive, not to give, hostages. 13. The general had judged this cavalry-man a suitable person to send to Cæsar to ask assistance. 14. The envoys made answer to Cæsar that the bridge had been so bravely defended by the enemy that the army had been unable to cross. 15. So great was the terror of the whole army that no soldier dared to leave the standards or to hurl weapons at the enemy.

EXERCISE IV.

QUESTIONS, DIRECT AND INDIRECT.

40. A direct question is a principal clause introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb, or by one of the interrogative particles, *nōnne*, *num* or *-ne*; as,

Who has done this? Quis hōc fēcit? Did not the boy come to the city? Nōnne puer ad urbem vēnit?

41. The following sentences will show how the particles *-ne*, *num* and *nōnne* differ from one another in meaning.

(1) *Is he writing? Scribitne? (Asks for information.)*

(2) *He is writing, is he not? (or, Is he not writing)? Nōnne scribit? (Expects affirmative answer.)*

(3) *He is not writing, is he? (or, Surely he is not writing)? Num scribit? (Expects negative answer.)*

Ne (which is sometimes omitted) is an enclitic, that is, an unemphatic particle appended to the introductory word of the sentence. These particles must not be used when the sentence contains some other interrogative word.

42. Alternative or disjunctive questions are expressed by *utrum* or *-ne* (*whether*) in the first clause, and *an* (*or*) in the second; as, *Whether are you slaves or freemen? Utrum servī (or Servīne) estis an liberī? (Utrum and -ne are sometimes omitted.)*

For direct questions, whether single or alternative, the indicative is the proper mood except in the case of dubitative or rhetorical questions (of which mention is made in section 151, c).

43. A subordinate clause introduced by any of the interrogative words mentioned above is called a dependent or indirect question, and always has its verb in the subjunctive ; as,

He asked who the man was : Quis homō esset rogāvit. He asked whether the man had been a slave : Quaesīvit servusne fulsset homō. Tell me if you have seen the man : Dic mihi num hominem videris.

Observe that, in a dependent question, *num* does not necessarily imply a negative answer.

44. In form, indirect disjunctive questions are much the same as the direct. Of course the subjunctive mood must always be used ; as, *I ask whether you are slaves or freemen : Utrum servī (or, Servīne) sitis an liberī rogō.*

Or not, in the direct question, is *annōn* ; in the indirect, *ne*.

45. In English we do not usually consider the clause as a dependent question unless the principal sentence contains a verb of asking or inquiring, but in Latin the principal verb need not be of an interrogative nature, but may be a verb meaning *learn, find out, know, tell, point out, see or decide* ; as,

He told me what he was doing : Quid faceret mihi dīxit. I cannot hear what you are saying : Audīre nōn possum quid dicās.

46. The use of the tenses in dependent questions in Latin is, as a rule, the same as in English, except that after a primary tense the perfect subjunctive is generally used instead of the imperfect. The future is represented by the subjunctive of the active periphrastic conjugation. (Part III., 69, a.)

EXAMPLES.—

- (a) *I see what you are doing : Quid faciās videō.*
- (b) *I see what you have done (or did) : Quid fēceris videō.*
- (c) *I saw what you were doing : Quid facerēs vīdī.*
- (d) *I saw what you had done (or did) : Quid fēcissēs vīdī.*
- (e) *I have seen what you are doing : Quid faciās vīdī.*
- (f) *I see what you will do : Quid factūrus sīs videō.*
- (g) *I saw what you would do : Quid factūrus essēs vīdī.*

47. English abstract nouns, such as *size, number, character, reason, time, place, etc.*, are generally best rendered into Latin by clauses introduced by such words and phrases as *quantus, quot,*

quālis, cūr, quandō, quō in locō, etc. ; as, *He was unable to learn their numbers (literally, how many they were) : Quot essent reperire nōn poterat. He cannot discover the position of the enemy (literally, in what place they are) : Quō in locō hostēs sint cōgnōscere nōn potest. I do not know the reason of his return (literally, why he has returned) : Cūr redierit nesciō.*

EXERCISE 4.

1. He asks who is leading the army into the city. 2. He told the general who had persuaded the soldiers to leave the camp. 3. He was unable to ascertain what harbors were convenient for the war-galleys. 4. Cæsar had sent horsemen in advance to observe in what direction the enemy were marching. 5. He said Cæsar had inquired why the officers had not led the troops against the enemy to prevent them crossing (*literally, to cross*) the river. 6. The general asked whether the Roman people had made peace with the Helvetii or not. 7. Did you not know that Cæsar had asked if (= *whether*) the Roman people were likely to make peace with the enemy ? 8. I shall ask the date of his return to the city. 9. He found out what villages the Gauls had beyond the Rhone, and their size. 10. He could not learn how the Sequani had led their forces through the territories of the Aedui, and why they were laying waste their lands. 11. Cæsar inquired by whom the inland part of Britain was inhabited and the number of the towns. 12. Are you a Roman soldier or not ? What is the reason of your coming into our territories ? 13. He sent spies in order that he might be able to know with whom the leader of the Gauls held communication. 14. They wished to learn what sort of man the leader was, and the position of the enemy's forces. 15. He sent scouts across the river to ascertain what was going on in the camp of the enemy, and when they were going to make an attack upon the city.

EXERCISE V.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE AND ITS COMMONEST EQUIVALENTS.

48. A construction which (owing to the want of a perfect participle active) is exceedingly common in Latin, is the

ablative absolute, which somewhat resembles the much less common nominative absolute in English, in its defining the time or attendant circumstances of an action. The ablative absolute is usually a combination of a substantive and a participle—generally the perfect participle passive, more seldom the present active.

EXAMPLES.—*On hearing this (literally, this having been heard), he departed: His auditis, abiit. While these were fighting, one of his men put him on a horse: His pugnantis, illum in equum quidam ex suis intulit. After receiving hostages (literally, hostages having been received), he made peace: Obsidibus acceptis, pacem fecit. While the enemy were assaulting the camp, our men made a sally: Hostibus castra oppugnantis, eruptionem nostri fecerunt.*

49. As the English nominative absolute is comparatively seldom used, it is generally best to avoid that construction in translating the ablative absolute, and to use, instead, a dependent clause introduced by such words as *after, while, when, if, although, because*; or, one of the prepositions *on, after, without*, etc., followed by the gerund; or, the English active participial phrase with *having*, or even the present participle active.

Such expressions consequently (especially if short) are to be translated into Latin by means of the ablative absolute.

EXAMPLES.—

(a) *After this battle was fought, he led the army across: Hoc proelio factō, exercitum tradūcit.*

(b) *Having said (or, after saying, or saying) this he departed: His dictis, discēssit.*

(c) *They will not be able to defend themselves from these men if their arms are surrendered: Ab his se defendere, traditis armis, nō poterunt.*

(d) *Although the defenders were few, he was not able to take the town by storm: Oppidum, paucis defendentibus, expugnare nō potuit.*

(e) *At the request of the Remi (or, because the Remi asked it), the enemy obtained their safety: Petentibus Remis, hostes ut cōservarentur impetrant.*

(f) *Without any time having elapsed, he led the troops back to the camp*: **Nūllō tempore intermissō**, in castra cōpiās redūxit.

N.B.—It will be observed that the absolute phrase is usually grammatically equivalent to an adverbial clause of some description, *time, cause, condition, concession*, etc., although it may frequently be best translated by a co-ordinate sentence; as, *The enemy made an attack and threw our men into confusion*: **Hostēs, impetū factō**, nostrōs perturbāvērunt.

50. As the verb *esse* has no perfect or present participle, we frequently find a noun, or pronoun, with an adjective, or with another noun in the ablative absolute; as, *He did that against my will*: **Mē invitō**, hōc fēcit. *He was born in the consulship of Cæsar*: **Caesare cōsule**, nātus est. *So long as their vigor was unimpaired, our men offered a brave resistance*: **Nostrī, integrīs vīribus**, fortiter repugnāvērunt.

51. The conditional force of the ablative absolute is, in negative expressions, more clearly brought out by the use of *nisi* instead of *nōn*; as, *He thought he ought not to fight unless the place were favorable*: **Nisi aequō locō** dīmīcandum nōn existimāvit. *There are no terms of surrender unless the arms are given up*: **Dēditiōnis nūlla est conditiō nisi armīs trāditīs**. It is really a case of omitted protasis (see section 79), the first example in full being: **Nisi aequō locō (dīmīcārētur)**, dīmīcandum nōn existimāvit.

52. But the ablative absolute is not used invariably where the English phraseology would lead us to expect that idiom.

(a) The absolute construction is not used with intransitive verbs, that is, with verbs which, in the active, do not govern an accusative case; as, *Cæsar, having pardoned the prisoners, returned to Rome*: **Caesar, cum captīvīs ignōvisset (not captīvīs ignōtīs)**, Rōmam rediit. *Having reached the Rhine, they plunged into the river*: **Cum ad Rhēnum pervēnissent**, sē in flūmen præcipitāvērunt.

(b) The absolute construction is not used when the verb is a deponent, as the perfect participle of such a verb has an active force; as, *When he had said this, he took his departure*: **Haec locūtus**, abiit.

Occasionally the perfect participle of a deponent verb is passive in force, when the ablative absolute may be used; as, *After laying waste Gaul, the Cimbri departed*: **Dēpopulātā Galliā**, Cimbri excēssērunt.

However, when the participle refers to some other word than the subject or object of the verb, the ablative absolute may be used with a deponent; as, *As soon as our troops gained a footing on*

the dry land, their lead being followed by all their comrades, they made an attack upon the enemy: *Nostrī simul in aridō cōstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōsecūtīs, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt.*

(c) The absolute construction is not generally used when the noun or pronoun modified by the participle is the subject or object of the principal verb; as, *While he was fleeing he was concealed by the woods: Fugiēns (not illō fugiente) silvīs tectus est. Having led out their troops from the camp, they drew them up in battle array: Suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās (not cōpiīs ēductīs) intrūxērunt.*

In Cæsar, however, there are frequent exceptions to this rule; as, *After summoning the leading men he reconciled them to Cingetorix: Principibus convocātīs, hōs Cingetorigī conciliāvit.*

53. From an observation of the preceding examples, it will be seen that the absolute phrase is usually placed at or near the beginning of the sentence.

54. Instead of the ablative absolute we find, for the perfect participle, *cum* with the pluperfect subjunctive, or *ubi*, or *postquam*, with the perfect indicative, and for the present participle, *cum* with the imperfect subjunctive, or *dum* with the present indicative; as, *When he had said this, he departed: Cum haec dixisset, abiit, or postquam (or ubi) haec dixit, abiit. After receiving hostages he made peace: Cum obsidēs accēpisset pācem fēcit. When the enemy were assailing the camp, our troops made a sally: Cum hostēs castra oppugnarent eruptionem nostrī fēcērunt.*

In Cæsar, the ablative absolute is the almost invariable rule with short expressions, that is, in the case of verbs capable of having that construction. When the expression is somewhat long, the *cum* clause is generally used, *ubi* and *postquam* being seldom found.

N.B.—Groups of ablatives absolute, with equivalent expressions, may be found in Cæsar, Bell. Gall. II. 25; III. 1; IV. 23; V. 15.

The ablative absolute may be connected (although the connective is very often omitted) by a conjunction (*e.g.*, *et*, *-que*) with another ablative absolute, but not with any other (even an equivalent) form of expression.

EXERCISE 5.

1. After settling these matters, the commander returned to the city with his army. 2. After encouraging the soldiers, and giving the signal, he ordered the lieutenant to make a sudden attack upon the enemy. 3. He set out for the city against the will of the commander, after promising to return shortly. 4. In the consulship

of Marius many citizens were put to death without a hearing. 5. After that assembly had been dismissed, the chief men of the states returned to Cæsar. 6. As no enemy prevented (him), he led the legion in safety into the province, and there passed the winter. 7. After this was done, the Roman soldiers, drawing their swords, made an attack upon the enemy's infantry. 8. Cæsar with reluctance heard the prisoner and dismissed him. 9. Having pardoned all the prisoners, he ordered the troops to return to the camp. 10. After this battle was fought, the enemy, having been impressed by the bravery of our soldiers, sent ambassadors to Cæsar to seek peace. 11. Having called to him the traders from all quarters, he was unable to learn what tribes inhabited the island. 12. This said, after dismissing the ambassadors, he returned to the city in safety. 13. After lingering a short time before the town, having laid waste the fields of the enemy, and having set fire to all their villages, Cæsar returned to the camp. 14. In the face of a valiant resistance on the part of our men (*literally, our men resisting bravely*), the enemy pushed forward up the hill to our camp. 15. After pardoning the prisoners and receiving hostages, he set out (*use participle*) a little after midnight, and reached the camp in safety.

EXERCISE VI.

VERBS WITH THE DATIVE.

55. Many verbs which in English are considered transitive and take a direct object, are intransitive in Latin and are followed by the dative. Such verbs are those meaning *to favor, harm, spare, command, obey, believe, distrust, serve, please, displease, indulge, pardon, threaten, be angry with*, and many others; (*faveō, noceō, parcō, imperō, pāreō, crēdō, fidō, cōnfido, diffido, serviō, placeō, displiceō, indulgeō, īgnōscō, minor, īrāscor*).

EXAMPLES.—*He favors the Helvetii: Helvētīis favet. He spares neither man nor beast: Neque hominī neque ferae parcit. It pleased the majority: Mājōrī partī placuit. He obeyed Cæsar: Cæsarī pārēbat.*

In like manner, such expressions as *fidem habere*, to trust, to have confidence in, take a dative; as, *He reposed the greatest confidence in Procillus*: **Procillō summam fidem habēbat.**

56. The dative is found with many (but not with the majority of) verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *dē*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *sub* and *super*; as,

This one thing Caesar lacked: **Hōc ūnum Caesarī dēfuit.** *Labiēnus commanded the cavalry*: **Labiēnus equitātūī praeerat.** *Night put an end to the contest*: **Nox certāminī intervēnit.** *He came to the aid of the state*: **Cīvitātī subvēnit.**

The verb when compounded really takes a new meaning, which requires a dative case. Many of these compounds take an accusative of the direct, along with the dative of the indirect object (see section 69).

57. Verbs which in Latin take the dative must be used impersonally in the passive, the dative being retained in that voice; as,

Caesar is obeyed by the Gauls: **Caesarī ā Gallīs pārētur.** *This man can be pardoned*: **Huic hominī ignōscēī potest.** *I am believed*: **Mihī crēditur.**

This is a special case of the general rule that all intransitive verbs, that is, verbs that do not govern the accusative case in the active, if used in the passive, must be used impersonally; as, *The battle raged fiercely*: **Acriter pūgnātum est.** *A general run is made to arms*: **Ad arma coneurritur.**

58. The verbs, *laedō*, *dēlectō*, *oblectō*, *juvō* and *offendō*, take the accusative, though from their meaning we should expect them to govern the dative; as, *This life delights me*: **Haec vīta mē dēlectat.** *He violated his pledge*: **Fidem laesit.** *He assisted them with food*: **Eōs cibō jūvit.** *Jubeō* takes a complementary infinitive with the accusative; as, *He orders the troops to return*: **Militēs redīre jubet.**

59. Several verbs, especially *cōsulō*, *imperō*, *caveō*, *timeō*, *metuō*, *temperō*, *moderor*, *prōspiciō* and *prōvideō*, take a dative or an accusative, according to their signification; as, *I ask Caesar's advice*: **Caesarem cōsulō.** *I consult Caesar's interests*: **Caesarī cōsulō.** *He did not restrain (=put a check upon) himself*: **Nōn sibi temperāvit.** *He was unable to govern the states*: **Cīvitātēs temperāre nōn poterat.** *He makes a demand for cavalry*: **Equitēs imperat.** *He gives orders to the cavalry*: **Equitibus imperat.**

Notice, also, *He refrains from outrage: \bar{A} maleficiō temperat. He is taking measures against Cæsar: In Cæsarem cōsulit.*

60. The force of the dative can often be readily observed by paying strict attention to the exact meaning of the verb; thus, *He orders (= gives orders to) the soldiers: Militibus imperat. She married (= veiled herself for) an officer of Cæsar's: Cæsaris lēgātō nūpsit. He desired (= was eager for) a revolution: Novīs rēbus studēbat. They satisfied (= did enough for, or made an apology to) the Aedui: Aeduīs satisfēcērunt.*

61. In Latin prose, never use the dative to express *to* after a verb of motion; as,

He came to the city: Vēnit ad urbem (not urbi).

EXERCISE 6.

1. Cæsar is angry with the soldiers who have returned to the camp. 2. Cæsar gave the soldiers orders not to harm the prisoners. 3. The soldiers were ordered by Cæsar to obey their officers and storm the town. 4. The soldier replied that the general had participated in many battles. 5. He says that the Gauls were pardoned by the senate, and ordered to leave the city. 6. The general cannot be harmed by the soldiers, nor will the soldiers be pardoned by the Roman people. 7. He ordered the soldier to ask who was at the head of the army. 8. Casticus was persuaded by Orgetorix to seize the supreme power in his state. 9. They neither come to the assemblies, nor do they obey Cæsar's command. 10. He said the Belgians had spared neither women nor infants. 11. After dismissing the ambassadors, he asked if the general had provided for supplies of corn. 12. He consulted for the welfare of the soldiers whom Labienus commanded. 13. He answered that the soldiers were always opposing Cæsar's plans and resisting the lieutenants. 14. After promising to obey the consul, he came to the camp to consult Cæsar on these matters. 15. The legions that had displeased the lieutenants apologized to Cæsar, and said they were willing to take part in the battle.

EXERCISE VII.

VERBS WITH THE GENITIVE—VERBS WITH THE ABLATIVE.

62. Verbs of *pitying*, *remembering* and *forgetting*, such as *misereor*, *meminī*, *reminiscor*, *oblīviscor*, are followed by the genitive ; as,

They ought to pity us : Nostrī miserērī dēbent. *The soul remembers the past : Animus meminīt praeteritōrum.* *He urged the Aedui to forget the differences : Cohortātus est Aeduōs ut dissēsiōnum oblīviscerentur.* *He remembers the old disaster : Veteris incommodī reminiscitur.*

So, a phrase with the value of any of these verbs may take a genitive ; as, *He forgot the affair : In oblīviōnem negōtīi vēnit.* *I recollect that day : Venīt mihi in mentem illīus diēi.*

63. The impersonal (or rather unipersonal) verbs, *interest* and *rēfert* (*it interests*, *is of importance*, *concerns*), take the genitive of the person to whom it is of importance, except that *meā*, *tuā*, *nostrā*, *vestrā*, and *suā* are used instead of the genitive case of the corresponding pronouns. The *thing of importance* is expressed by an infinitive (with or without subject accusative), a neuter pronoun, or a substantive clause ; and the *degree of importance* by the genitive of price or an adverb.

EXAMPLES.—*It is your interest and the interest of all to do right : Interest tuā et omnium rectē facere.* *It is of great importance to the state that the enemy should be kept apart : Māgnī reīpūblicae interest hostēs distinērī.* *This concerns me very much : Hōc meā rēfert māximē.* *It is of great importance that his authority should prevail : Māgnī interest ējus auctōritātem valēre.*

64. *Recordor*, *meminī*, *to call to mind*, *to recollect*, especially when used with the name of a person, and *miserārī*, *to express pity for*, *to bewail*, take the accusative ; as, *He called to mind the common chances of war : Commūnēs bellī cāsūs recordābātur.* *I remember Cinna : Cinnam meminī.* *They kept bewailing the common danger : Commūne periculum miserābantur.*

65. The following verbs take the ablative : *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor* (and their compounds), *potior*, *vescor*, *glōrior* ; and

verbs of plenty and want, such as *egeō*, *careō*, *abundō*, etc.; also, *nītor* and *cōnfīdō*, in the sense of *to rely on*.

EXAMPLES.—*Cæsar was unable to use the corn*: *Caesar frūmentō ūtī nōn poterat*. *He is free from blame*: *Culpā vacat*. *He is amply supplied with cavalry*: *Abundat equitātū*. *He boasted haughtily about his victory*: *Suā victōriā insolenter glōriābātur*. *He enjoys all advantages in life*: *Omnibus in vītā commodīs fruitur*. *He gained the town without a struggle*: *Oppidō sine contentiōne potitus est*. *He had been without food*: *Cibō caruerat*. *He relied on the time of the year*: *Annī tempore cōnfisus est*. *They rely on deceit*: *Dolō nītuntur*.

66. *Potior* takes the genitive, in the sense of *to gain the supreme power, to become master of a state*; *egeō* sometimes takes a genitive; and *vacō*, in the sense of *to be free for, to have leisure for*, a dative. Examples.—*They hope to be able to gain the sovereignty of all Gaul*: *Tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant*. *They need assistance*: *Auxiliū egent*. *I have leisure for philosophy*: *Vacō philosophiæ*.

EXERCISE 7.

1. To this embassy the Roman leader replied that he could forget the old insult, but not the recent wrongs. 2. He says he remembers the former valor of the Helvetii. 3. He said this concerned both you and the state. 4. He asked why it was the interest of all to obey the laws. 5. It is your interest and the interest of your friends to feel pity for us. 6. These resources he is using for (*ad*) my destruction. 7. He thinks the Helvetii can gain the sovereign power of all Gaul. 8. He pointed out how greatly it concerned both the republic and the common safety for the forces of the enemy to be kept apart. 9. Word was brought to Cæsar that the Belgians were boasting insultingly of their victory. 10. The river abounded in large fish, but the enemy was without corn. 11. The messenger tells us (*see section 100, N.B.*) that these tribes eat corn and flesh. 12. He faithfully discharged his duties, and now enjoys well-merited wealth and honor. 13. On behalf of these men they requested Cæsar to exercise his usual (*suus*) clemency and forbearance. 14. Instead of money they make use of bronze, or bars of iron made of (*literally, weighed to*) a certain weight. 15. Using the bridge which he had built over the river, Cæsar made a sudden attack upon the enemy and became master of their camp.

EXERCISE VIII.

VERBS WITH TWO CASES.

(a) *Accusative and Genitive.*

67. Verbs of *reminding, accusing, condemning* and *acquitting* take the accusative of the person, and the genitive of the thing called to mind, or of the fault or crime charged ; as,

He reminds you of friendship: Tē amicitiae commonefacit. They acquitted him of injustice: Eum injūriae absolvērunt. They were accusing him of treason: Eum prōditiōnis insimulābant. They declared them guilty of the greatest injustice: Eōs summae inīquitātis condemnāvērunt.

We occasionally find the genitive of the *penalty or sentence*; as, *They sentenced him to pay the thing he had vowed: Eum damnāvērunt vōtī.*

The genitive is retained in the passive, the accusative becoming the subject of the verb ; as, *He was acquitted of injustice: Injūriae absolutus est.*

68. The impersonals, *miseret, pudet, piget, paenitet, taedet* and *pertaesum est*, take the accusative of the person, and the genitive of that causing the feeling ; as, *I repent of my folly: Mē stultitiae paenitet. I am ashamed of my life: Mē vitae pudet. We feel pity for them: Eōrum nōs miseret. They are disgusted with life: Eōs vitae taedet.*

Instead of a noun in the genitive, we find (except with *miseret*) the infinitive, and occasionally a substantive clause, or the accusative of a neuter pronoun ; as, *I am ashamed of having done this: Mē haec fēcisse pudet. I am weary of seeing you: Mē vidēre vōs taedet. I am ashamed of this: Hōc mē pudet.*

(b) *Accusative and Dative.*

69. Verbs of *giving* and *taking away*, also *imperō, crēdō, minor*, and many transitive verbs compounded with certain prepositions, such as, *ad, ante, in, inter, ob, post, prae*, etc., take the accusative and dative (see section 56) ; as,

He gave me a book: Mihi librum dedit. Caesar snatched a shield from a soldier: Caesar scūtum militī detrāxit. He orders

the state to furnish twenty hostages: **Civitatī vīgintī obsidēs imperat.** *He threatened me with death: Mihi mortem minātus est.* *He preferred death to slavery: Mortem servitūti anteposuit (or, Mortī servitūtem posthabuit).* *Cæsar inspired the soldiers with hope: Cæsar spem militibus intulit (or injecit).*

(c) *Two Accusatives.*

70. Verbs of *making, choosing, calling, electing, considering* and *showing*, take two accusatives of the same person or thing. One of these accusatives is the direct object, the other, which forms an essential part of the predicate, is brought into connection with the direct object by means of the verb, and may be called an accusative predicate noun (or adjective). If the action of the verb produces the resulting object or quality, the term *factitive* is applied both to the verb and to the noun or adjective representing such object or quality.

EXAMPLES.—*They call these (persons) friends: Hōs amīcōs appellant.* *They elected Cæsar consul: Cæsarem cōsulem creāvērunt.* *He considered himself a Roman citizen: Cīvem Rōmānum sē arbitrābātur.* *He rendered the place safe: Locum tūtum reddidit.* *He showed himself brave: Sē fortem præstitit.*

In the passive the direct object becomes the subject, and the other accusative becomes a subjective predicate noun or adjective; as, *These (persons) are called friends: Hī amīcī appellantur.* *The place was made safe: Locus tūtus redditus est.* *Cæsar was elected consul: Cæsar cōsul creātus est.*

71. Verbs of *asking, demanding, teaching* and *concealing*, admit two accusatives, the one of the person and the other of the thing; as, *I ask of you this kindness: Tē hōc beneficium rogō.* *He demands hostages of the Belgians: Belgās obsidēs poscit.* *I concealed my opinion from you: Tē sententiam cēlāvī.* *Fortune teaches the vanquished also the art of war: Fortūna bellī artem victōs quoque docet.*

In the passive the noun denoting the person becomes subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained; as, *I was asked my opinion: Sententiam rogātus sum.* *He was taught the art of war: Bellī artem ēdoctus est.*

72. A few transitive verbs compounded with *trāns* take two accusatives in the active, one governed by the verb and the other by the preposition; as,

He led the army across the river: Exercitum flūmen trādūxit. In the passive, the object of the verb becomes subject, while the other accusative is retained; as, *The army was led across the bridge: Exercitus pontem trāductus est.*

Notice also the expression *animum advertere*; as, *Caesar observed this: Caesar id animum advertit.*

(d) *Accusative and Ablative.*

73. Transitive verbs of *plenty* and *want* take the accusative and ablative; as, *He loads the ships with arms: Armīs nāvēs onerat.* *He deprived the city of supplies: Urbem commeātū prīvāvit.* *He stripped them all of their arms: Omnēs armīs exuit.* *He filled the ditch with rubbish: Fossam aggere explēvit.*

74. A few words, such as *dōnō* and *circumdō* admit a double construction, (1) dative and accusative, or (2) accusative and ablative; as, *He gives the booty to the soldiers: Praedam militibus dōnat.* *Praedā militēs dōnat.* *He surrounded the city with a wall: Mūrum urbī circumdedit.* *Mūrō urbem circumdedit.*

(e) *Other Constructions.*

75. Two datives—the object to which (the dative of interest) and the object or end for which (the dative of purpose or service)—are found (1) with a few intransitive or passive verbs, *sum, fīō, veniō*, (2) with transitive verbs in connection with the accusative; as,

They are a ruin to the state: Reipublicae clādī sunt. *He came to the assistance of the lieutenant: Lēgātō auxiliō vēnit.* *The soldiers were a hindrance to themselves: Militēs sibi impedimentō erant.* *He left five cohorts for the defence of the camp: Quinque cohortēs castrīs praesidiō reliquit.* *Do not attribute this to me as a fault: Nōlī dare hōc mihi vitiō.*

76. *Ūtor* may take two ablatives, one in the predicative relation to the other, that is, agreeing with the latter and being brought into relation with it by the verb; as, *He will find me an indulgent father: Ille facili mē utētur patre.* *He treated the man (as) a friend: Homine amiēō utēbātur.* *He used these men (as) guides: Hīs ducebūs ūsus est.*

77. *Interdīco* takes a dative of the person and an ablative of the thing; as, *Ariovistus debarred the Romans from all Gaul: Ariovistus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdixit.* *He forbade them the use of fire and water (i.e., banished them): Hīs aquā atque Ignī interdixit.*

EXERCISE 8.

1. They found the soldier guilty of treachery, but he was acquitted of cruelty. 2. He reminds the soldiers of their old disaster, and urges them not to forget the valor of the enemy. 3. The general threatened the prisoners with death, and ordered the enemy to furnish forty hostages. 4. The centurion says he is ashamed of his folly, and is sorry for having done this. 5. Cæsar surrounded the camp with a trench, and sent three cohorts to the aid of Labienus, his lieutenant. 6. Word was brought to Cæsar that the enemy had filled the trenches with rubbish and the trunks of trees. 7. The soldiers said they preferred death to slavery, and that they would oppose themselves to the advance of the enemy (*literally, enemy advancing*). 8. The Roman citizens wished to make Cæsar king, but he preferred to be elected consul. 9. I was not able to conceal the deed from the soldiers. 10. He replied that the conversation had been concealed from them. 11. Making use of (*literally, having used*) the same (men) (as) guides, he proceeded against the enemy, slew a great number of (*use ex*) them, and deprived all the rest of their arms. 12. Cæsar was informed that the enemy were leading their troops across that river. 13. He ordered (*imperō*) the soldiers neither to surround the camp with a trench nor to go to the assistance of Labienus. 14. After peace was made they chose this place as a home for themselves. 15. The senate bestowed the (rights of) citizenship upon this man.

EXERCISE IX.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

78. Conditional clauses (that is, adverbial clauses in which something is assumed for the purpose of basing an assertion thereon) are introduced by *sī*, *if*; *sī nōn* (or a weaker negative *sī minus*), *if not*; *nisi*, *unless, if not*; *sīn*, *if however, but if*; and occasionally by *nisi sī*, *except if, unless*; as,

If he has anything he gives it : **SĪ QUID HABET** dat. *If he were not absent it would be well* : **SĪ NŌN ABESSET** bene esset. *Fix a day for the conference, or if that does not quite please you, send some*

one to me : Colloquiō diem cōstitue, aut, **si id minus vīs**, aliquem ad mē mitte. *Unless some assistance is found in Caesar, I shall seek another abode* : **Nisi sī quid in Caesare erit auxiliī**, aliud domicilium petam.

79. The conditional sentence, as a whole, is made up of two parts, the subordinate clause containing the condition—the Pro-tasis—and the principal clause, containing the conclusion—the Apodosis.

80. The most obvious distinction of conditions is that of (1) *present* or *past*, in which the question of fulfilment has already been decided, and (2) *future*, in which there is always at least a possibility of fulfilment.

81. In present conditions, if we wish to represent the supposed case as contrary to fact, we use the imperfect subjunctive in both clauses ; as,

If he had anything (implying that he has not anything) *he would give it* : **SI quid habēret daret.**

If nothing is implied as to the fulfilment of the condition, the present indicative (or the perfect for completed action) is used ; as, *If he has anything he gives it* : **Sī quid habet dat.** *If he has done that he has made a mistake* : **Quod sī fēcit errāvit.**

82. In past conditions, if we wish to represent something as contrary to the fact, to imply that the condition was not fulfilled, we use the pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses ; as,

If he had had anything (implying that he had nothing) *he would have given it* : **Sī quid habuisset dedisset.**

If nothing is implied as to the fulfilment of the condition, a past tense of the indicative is found in both clauses ; as, *If it was not lawful it was not necessary* : **Sī nōn licēbat nōn necesse erat.**

83. With regard to future conditions, we may state them in either of two ways :

(1) In the more vivid form, by means of the future or future perfect indicative ; as, *If he has* (or *shall have*) *anything he will give it* : **Sī quid habēbit dabit.** *If he returns I shall send him to you* : **Sī redierit eum ad tē mittam.**

(2) In the less vivid form, by means of the present subjunctive in both clauses ; as, *If he should have* (or *had* or *were to have*) *anything he would give it* : **Sī quid habeat det.**

Notice that in the first class of future conditions, the protasis in the English sentence is generally in the *present* tense, occasionally in the future, and the apodosis in the future indicative; and in the second class, the protasis in English has *should* or *were to*, and the apodosis has *would* (or *should*, in the first person).

84. An English present in the protasis is turned by the Latin future perfect if it expresses time, future indeed, but prior to the action indicated in the apodosis; as, *If you do that I shall not pardon you*: **Hōc sī fēceris, nōn tibi ignōscam.** *Unless he does this he will be punished*: **Nisi hōc fēcerit supplicio afficiētur.**

85. Occasionally we find a tense, or even a mood, in the apodosis different from that in the protasis, according as one notion or another is prominent; as,

If my judgment had prevailed (as it did not), we should be free, (which we are not): **Sī meum cōnsilium valuisset liberī essēmus.** *If he wished to keep the maniples at the standards, the place itself was a protection to the barbarians*: **Sī continēre ad signa manipulōs vellet, locus ipse erat praesidiō barbaris.** *Nor, if he should do otherwise, has he any authority amongst his vassals*: **Neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habet auctōritatem.** In the apodosis the imperative may be used instead of the indicative; as, *Carry your point if you so wish it*: **Vincite sī ita vultis.**

N.B.—With *possum*, *dēbeō*, *oportet*, and with both *periphrastic* conjugations, the indicative is regularly used, in the apodosis, instead of the subjunctive; as, *If Caesar had set out, he could have crossed (or would have been able to cross) the river*: **Caesar, sī profectus esset, flūmen transire potuit.** *If the enemy had offered battle, the soldiers should have engaged them*: **Sī hostēs suī potestātem fēcissent, militēs proelium committere dēbuērunt (or, militibus proelium committendum fuit).**

86. Alternative conditions are introduced by *sive . . . sive* (or, *seu . . . seu*), *whether . . . or*, which follow the rules for *sī*, with regard to mood and tense; as, *Whether he wins the day or loses it, he will not return*: **Sive vicerit sive victus erit nōn redibit.** The verb is frequently omitted; as, *Whether by chance or by the will of heaven, that part of the state was the first to pay the penalty*: **Sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortalium, ea pars civitātis princeps poenās persolvit.**

87. In indirect narration, that is, after verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, the conditional sentences assume the following forms:

SĪ quid habeō dō,	{	dīcit sē, sĭ quid habeat, dare.
<i>becomes</i> - - -		dīxit sē, sĭ quid habēret, dare.
SĪ quid habēbam	{	dīcit sē, sĭ quid habēret,
dabam, <i>becomes</i>		dīxit sē, sĭ quid habēret, } dedisse.
SĪ quid habuī dedī,	{	dīcit sē, sĭ quid habuerit, dedisse.
<i>becomes</i>		dīxit sē, sĭ quid habuisset, dedisse.
SĪ quid habēbō	{	dīcit sē, sĭ quid habeat, datūrum esse.
dabō, <i>becomes</i>		dīxit sē, sĭ quid habēret, datūrum esse.
SĪ quid habeam	{	dīcit sē, sĭ quid habeat, datūrum esse.
dem, <i>becomes</i>		dīxit sē, sĭ quid habēret, datūrum esse.
SĪ quid habērem	{	dīcit } sē, sĭ quid habēret, datūrum fuisse
darem, <i>becomes</i>		dīxit } (or esse).
SĪ quid habuissem	{	dīcit } sē, sĭ quid habuisset, datūrum
dedissem, <i>becomes</i>		dixit } fuisse.

This section need not be considered until the exercise on indirect narration is reached. See Exercise XXVI.

EXERCISE 9.

1. If Casticus should seize the supreme power in his state, Cæsar would wage war against him. 2. If the army is in good health, Cæsar does not fear the enemy. 3. If our troops defeat the enemy, the Belgians will at once send ambassadors to Cæsar. 4. If the Gauls had been conquered by Cæsar they would have immediately sent ambassadors to him concerning peace. 5. The Germans would not now be carrying on war with the Gauls if Ariovistus had been defeated by the Roman troops. 6. If this is reported to Ariovistus, he will inflict the severest punishment on the hostages. 7. If the general had not sent three cohorts to the lieutenant's assistance, the enemy would have gained the victory and our soldiers would now be in the greatest peril. 8. If Cæsar had corn at that time, he gave it to the soldiers. 9. The Helvetii would return to their territories if the Roman people were to conclude (*faciō*) peace with them. 10. Unless Cæsar enrols two legions in that place, he will not be able to carry on the war successfully with the Gauls. 11. If Labienus were at the head of the army, the Romans would easily defeat the enemy. 12. If the enemy had set fire to all their towns and villages and burnt up all

their corn, they would not have been able to return. 13. If Cæsar meets with favorable weather, he will weigh anchor a little after midnight. 14. If he had sent all the cavalry in advance, the enemy would have halted and made an attack upon our army. 15. If the Germans had made an attempt to cross the Rhine, Cæsar would have marched against them with all his forces.

EXERCISE X.

CLAUSES OF CONCESSION.

88. Closely connected with conditional clauses, in which a supposed case is assumed, are clauses of concession in which the supposition is conceded or admitted. Such clauses are introduced by :

(a) *Etsi, etiamsi, tametsi*, which follow the rules for *sī* (which is itself sometimes concessive); as, *Although he saw the battle would be without danger, still he did not think he ought to engage*: **Etsi sine periculō proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat.**

(b) *Quamquam*, which usually assumes a fact and requires the indicative; as, *Although they are enemies, I wish to warn them again and again*: **Quamquam sunt hostēs, eōs etiam atque etiam monitōs volō.**

(c) *Quamvis, cum, licet* and *ut*, which are followed by the subjunctive; as, *He kept himself in camp, although the enemy every day gave him opportunity to fight*: **Castris sēsē tenēbat cum hostēs cotīdiē pūgnandī potestātem facerent. Though all things should turn out contrary to their expectation, they are very powerful in ships**: **Ut omnia contrā opīniōnem accidant, plūrimum nāvibus possunt.**

89. *Quamvis* and *nisi* are sometimes joined with single words instead of clauses, the predicate of the subordinate clause being understood. The words following these conjunctions are in the same case as the words to which they refer; as, *However few they are, they dare to advance against any number of cavalry*: **Ad quemvis numerum equitum quamvis pauci (supply sint) adire audent. He did not come without being asked**: **Nisi rogatus nōn vēnit. He says he will not return unless he is victorious**: **Negat sē nisi victōrem, reditūrum.** (See also section 51.)

EXERCISE 10.

1. Although the enemy have a great number of cavalry, Cæsar can easily defeat them. 2. Even though he should have met with favorable weather he would not have sailed for Britain. 3. If Cæsar comes up with the enemy he will easily defeat them, however brave and numerous (they may be.) 4. Although Cæsar has sent two legions to the assistance of the lieutenant, the enemy have not yet been defeated. 5. Even if Cæsar were in command of the army he would not be able to defeat the enemy. 6. The Helvetii made an attempt to cross the Rhone, although the Romans had concluded a peace with them. 7. Even though he should think that he could do this without danger, he would not send troops to take the city by storm. 8. Although few (in numbers), they said they would never return to the city unless victorious. 9. Even if the enemy had taken up their position on the higher ground, they could not have withstood the attacks of our men. 10. Though you can persuade these men to send ambassadors, you cannot make them our friends. 11. Although Cæsar saw that the legions were being hard pressed, he was unwilling to order the soldiers to retreat. 12. Even if Cæsar had been informed that the enemy were close at hand, he would not have ordered the troops to advance. 13. If Cæsar had seen that the tenth legion was being hard pressed by the enemy, he would have sent four cohorts to the lieutenant's assistance. 14. Though he were present now, he could do nothing. 15. Even if the Helvetii should return to their territories, Cæsar would not conclude a peace with them.

EXERCISE XI.

USES OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

90. (a) The direct object of an active transitive verb, or of a transitive deponent, is put in the accusative; as,

He praises the soldier: Mīlitem laudat. Cæsar followed the enemy: Cæsar hostēs secūtus est.

(b) The accusative is used with prepositions, chiefly the

following: *ad*, *ante*, *apud*, *in* (generally with the idea of motion towards), *inter*, *per*, *post*, *propter*, *sub* (with idea of motion or approach), *trāns* and *ūltrā*; as,

He returned to the camp: **Ad castra** rediit. *He set out after the third day (or three days after)*: **Post diem tertium** profectus est. *He reached home towards evening*: **Sub vesperum** domum pervēnit.

91. The subject of the infinitive (except the historical infinitive, section 131) is put in the accusative; as,

He says the soldier will not return: **Negat militem reditūrum**. *It is a most disgraceful thing for these hostages to be with Ariovistus*: **Hōs obsidēs** esse apud Ariovistum est turpissimum.

92. Duration of time (time *how long*) and extent of space and measurement are expressed by the accusative; as,

They marched three days: **Trēs diēs** iter fēcērunt. *They fought a great part of the day*: **Māgnam partem diēi** pūgnāvērunt. *The river is three feet deep*: **Flūmen trēs pedēs** est altum. *The sword is two feet long*: **Gladius duōs pedēs** longus est. *He lived many years ago*: **Abhinc annōs multōs** fuit.

93. Place to which (limit of motion) is generally denoted by the accusative with *ad* or *in*; as,

He came into the city: **In urbem** vēnit. *He set out for Britain*: **In Britanniam** profectus est. *He hastened to the Rhine*: **Ad Rhēnum** contendit.

(a) As a rule, the preposition is not used before names of towns, or before *domum*, *domōs* (home), or *rūs* (to the country); as, *He went home*: **Domum** iit. *He went away to the country*: **Rūs** abiit. *He came to Rome*: **Rōmam** vēnit.

(b) Before names of towns we find *ad* used to denote *into the vicinity of*, and sometimes in contrast with *ā* or *ab*; as, *He came into the neighborhood of Geneva*: **Ad Genāvam** pervēnit. *He came from Rome to Marseilles*: **Ab Rōmā ad Massiliām** vēnit.

(c) Observe that in English we say, *He came to the consul at Rome in Italy*, while we say in Latin, **Ad cōnsulem, Rōmam, in Ītaliā** venit. In the English sentence, the phrase, *at Rome*, is adjectival, modifying *consul*, and *in Italy* is adjectival, modifying *Rome*, while their equivalents in Latin, **Rōmam** and **in Ītaliā**, are both treated as adverbs modifying **vēnit**.

94. Many verbs (especially of the senses and the feelings), such as *redolēre* (to smell or smack of), *horrēre* (to shudder at), *dēspērāre* (to despair of), *tacēre* (to be silent about), *dolēre* (to grieve over),

spērāre (to hope for), take an accusative in Latin, while in English their equivalents require a preposition to complete their meaning; as, *He smells of wine*: **Vinum redolet.** *They shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus*: **Crūdēlītatē Ariovistī horrent.** *He despairs of honors*: **Honōrēs dēspērat.** *Despairing of safety they kill themselves*: **Dēspērātā salūte, sē interficiunt.** *He had been silent about that*: **Id tacuerat.** *They grieved over my misfortune*: **Meum cāsum doluērunt.** *He hopes for victory*: **Victōriam spērat.** *They wait for Cæsar*: **Caesarem exspectant.**

95. Intransitive verbs of motion, and some others, when compounded with *ad*, *circum*, *in*, *ex*, *trāns*, *ob*, *per*, *prae* and *praeter*, frequently become transitive, and take an accusative; as,

He attacked the enemy: **Hostēs aggressus est.** *He began to cross the river*: **Flūmen trānsire coepit.** *He stormed the city*: **Urbem oppugnāvit.** *He took the city by storm*: **Urbem expugnāvit.** *They surpass all the Gauls*: **Omnēs Gallōs praecedunt.** *They crossed the Rhine*: **Rhēnum trānsiērunt.**

96. Some intransitive verbs take what is called a *cognate accusative*, which is akin to the verb in form or in meaning; as, *No one lived a life of slavery*: **Nēmō servitūtem servīvit.** *They lived that life*: **Eam vītam vīxērunt.** *He makes the same boast*: **Idem glōriātur.** *He commits many sins*: **Multa peccat.**

97. Closely connected with the cognate accusative is the accusative of reference or specification (or adverbial accusative), which in prose is confined to a few expressions, such as *māximam partem*, *id aetātis*, *id temporis*, *id genus*, and the neuters *hōc*, *quid*, etc.; as, *They live for the most part on milk and (the flesh of) cattle*: **Māximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt.** *He will learn how brave the Germans are (literally, what they amount to with respect to valor)*: **Intellet quid Germānī virtūte possint.**

98. The accusative is used in exclamations, with or without an interjection; as, *Ah, wretched me*: **Mē miserum, or Ō mē miserum.**

99. For construction with verbs of *asking*, *teaching*, etc., verbs of *electing*, *choosing*, etc., and transitive verbs compounded with *trāns* and *ad*, see Exercise VIII.

EXERCISE 11.

1. For a few hours our men were able to withstand the attacks of the enemy. 2. For several successive days Cæsar drew up his

line of battle, and gave the enemy an opportunity of fighting. 3. After dismissing the ambassadors and encouraging the lieutenant, Cæsar returned to the army at Rome. 4. Having become apprised of their design he led his army to the river Thames in the territory of the enemy, and afterwards returned home. 5. The Gauls had already led three-fourths of their troops across that river. 6. Cæsar led his army into the vicinity of Bibracte, and remained there fifteen days. 7. The soldiers pursued their march for five miles through marshes and forests. 8. He asked the general how many miles the soldiers had marched, but he was silent on that point. 9. The Gauls shuddered at the cruelty of Ariovistus even in his absence (*literally, absent*). 10. He said that the Gauls lived for the most part on milk and flesh. 11. He came from Geneva to Rome, and afterwards set out for the country. 12. The river, he replied, was sixty feet wide and about five feet deep. 13. He crossed the river, and, having attacked the enemy, he began to storm the city. 14. Cæsar led his army across the bridge and followed the enemy four days through forests and marshes for fifty miles. 15. It is dangerous for the Germans to be accustomed to cross the Rhine.

EXERCISE XII.

USES OF THE DATIVE.

100. The indirect object (that *to* or *for* which anything is or is done) is put in the dative,

(a) With intransitive and passive verbs ; as, *He yields to the time* : **Temporī** cedit. *A book was given me* : **Liber mihi** datus est.

(b) With transitive verbs in connection with the accusative ; as, *He gave me a book* : **Mihi librum** dedit. (See section 69.)

N.B.—In Latin the dative is found after such words as *polliceor, prōmittō, dō, dicō*, etc., where in English *to* is often omitted after the corresponding verb ; as, *All this I promise you* : **Id omne tibi** polliceor. *He told me the lieutenant had come* : **Lēgātum vēnisse mihi** dixit.

101. The indirect object includes the dative of *interest* (*commodī et incommodī*), and the dative of *service, end, or purpose* (see section 75); as,

They consult their own interests: Sibi cōsulunt. He chose a place for settlement: Locum domiciliō dēlēgit. He came to Caesar's assistance: Caesarī auxiliō vēnit. They obey Caesar: Caesarī pārent. They are superior to the Roman cavalry: Equitātū Rōmānō praestant. Our short stature is an object of contempt to the Gauls: Gallīs brevitās nostra contemptū est.

102. The dative of interest is used with adjectives to indicate the person or thing affected by the quality which the adjective denotes, that towards which the quality is directed; as,

Death is common to every age: Omnī aetātī mors est commūnis. Their departure resembled a flight: Eōrum profectiō fugae cōsimilis fuit. It is dangerous to the soldiers: Militibus periculōsum est. The place was suitable for a camp: Locus castris idōneus erat.

103. In Latin, possession is quite frequently denoted by the verb *sum* with the dative; as, *I have a father: Mihi est pater. No one had the ability: Potestās erat nūlli.*

With *nōmen est* the name is generally attracted into the dative instead of agreeing with *nōmen*. A defining genitive is also rarely used. *His name was Servius Tullius: Huic Serviō Tullio (or Servi Tullī) fuit nōmen.*

104. Most of the compounds of *sum*, such as, *adsum, dēsum, intersum, obsum, praesum, prōsum*, and rarely *supersum* and *absūm*, take a dative; as, *He is present to aid me: Mihi adest. This one thing was wanting to Caesar: Hōc ūnum Caesarī dēfuit. He took part in the fight: Pūgnae interfuit. This injures the speech: Hōc ōrātiōnī obest. He is at the head of the cavalry: Equitātūī praest. He said that the name of brother of the Roman people would avail them little: Dixit longē hīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. (See section 56.)*

105. The dative is regularly used with the gerundive to denote the person on whom the necessity rests, the apparent agent; as,

You must do this (literally, this is for you to do): Hōc tibi faciendum est.

This dative is found also with the compound tenses of the ordinary passive conjugation; as, *This has received my approval: Hōc mihi probātum est.*

If the verb governs the dative or ablative, the gerundive must be used impersonally, and then, if ambiguity is likely to arise, the ablative with *ā* or *ab* is used instead of the dative of the apparent agent; as, *The consuls must be obeyed by the soldiers: Cōsullibus pārendum est ā mīlitibus. We must take occasion by the hand (use the opportunity): Occāsiōne nōbīs ūtendum est.*

Notice also:—*He ought to be consulted by us: Nōbīs cōsulendus est. His interests ought to be consulted by us: EI cōsulendum est ā nōbīs.*

106. The dative is often found depending, not on a single word, but on the entire predicate, where we should expect a possessive adjective or a genitive. This is called the *dative of reference*, and emphasizes the person or thing represented by that case; as,

He came in sight of the enemy: Hostibus in cōspectum vēnit. They wished to be blameless in Cæsar's eyes: Cæsari pūrgātī esse volēbant. He threw himself at Cæsar's feet: Cæsari ad pedēs sē prōjēcit.

107. The so-called *ethical dative* is used to designate the person who is supposed to be especially interested in what is said; as, *But see (or mark you) he comes to me: At tibi venit ad mē. He asked what they meant: Quid sibi vellent rogāvit.*

This dative is always a personal pronoun.

108. For various verbs with the dative (*imperō, pāreō, obstō, minor, crēdō*, etc.), see Exercise VI.; and for verbs that take two datives, or a dative in connection with some other case, see Exercise VIII.

EXERCISE 12.

1. Thereupon they all in tears threw themselves at Cæsar's feet. 2. He said that these matters were his care (*literally, were to himself for a care*), and that the province must be defended by you. 3. You must consult the general's interests. 4. He answered that the man's name was Ariovistus. 5. The soldiers should always obey the general, and the general should take advantage of every opportunity. 6. To these men the answer was

given that the general had left two cohorts as a protection to the ships. 7. He asked what Cæsar meant, and why he was coming into the territories of the Germans. 8. He saw that the river would be extremely dangerous to the cavalry. 9. He said that the departure of the Belgians was like a flight. 10. Word was brought to the lieutenant at the camp that Cæsar had given orders to the soldiers not to hurl back any weapon whatever at the enemy. 11. He asked that it might be permitted him to do this with Cæsar's approval. 12. An officer who had participated in many engagements was in command of the troops. 13. He answered that Cæsar had threatened the leaders of the enemy with death, and had ordered them to furnish two hundred hostages. 14. They thought they were going to persuade the Romans to allow the Helvetii to pass through the territories of the Allobroges. 15. The soldiers told Labienus that Cæsar had always shown special indulgence to the tenth legion.

EXERCISE XIII.

USES OF THE GENITIVE.

109. A noun limiting or defining another noun, and not denoting the same thing, is put in the genitive ; as,

Cicero's orations: **Cicērōnis** orātīōnēs. *Cæsar's lieutenants*: **Caesaris** lēgātī. *The bravery of the soldiers*: **Virtūs militum**.

This defining genitive may be *possessive, subjective, objective, partitive, descriptive* or *of definition*.

110. The genitive is especially used in connection with another noun to point out the *possessor* of whatever that noun signifies ; as,

Cæsar's army: **Caesaris** exercitus.

111. If the noun which is qualified by the genitive denotes some action or quality such that, if it were expressed by a verb, the noun in the genitive would be the subject of that verb, the case is called a *subjective* genitive ; as,

The flight of Dumnorix: **Dumnorigis** fuga.

In the verb form this would be, *Dumnorix fled*: **Dumnorix** fūgit.

112. The *objective* genitive denotes that which is the object of the feeling or action, that is, the genitive would be the object of the action expressed by the modified noun in verb form; as,

The fear of death: **Mortis** timor. As a sentence it might stand, *We fear death*: **Mortem** timēmus.

Both these genitives may be used in the same phrase and modifying the same word, the subjective usually standing first; as, *The wrongs done by the Helvetii to the Roman people*: **Helvētiorum** injūriæ **populī Rōmānī**.

113. The *partitive* genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken.

This genitive is found in connection with nouns, pronouns, numerals, adjectives (of all degrees), and occasionally with adverbs of quantity, time and place; as,

Part of the soldiers: Pars **mīlitum**. *Which of you?* Quis **vestrum**. *At that time*: Id **temporis**. *Many of them*: Multi **eōrum**. *The former of these*: Prior **hōrum**. *The bravest of the Gauls*: Fortissimī **Gallōrum**. *Four of the soldiers*: Quattuor **mīlitum**. *At that time*: Tum **temporis**. *Where in the world are we?* Ubinam **gentium** sumus? *There was nothing left*: Nihil erat **reliquī**.

114. With reference to the partitive genitive, the following points should be noticed:

(a) It is seldom used with an adjective of the third declension; as, *Nothing base*: Nihil **turpe** (but *nothing mean* = nihil **sordidī**).

(b) It is not used to denote the whole or any local part of a thing, as the top, middle, bottom, beginning, etc.; as, *The whole of Greece*: Tōta **Graecia**. *The top of the hill*: Summus **collis**. *The middle of the river*: Medium **flūmen**. *The foot of the mountain*: Imus **mōns**. *The rear of the line of march*: Novissimum **agmen**. *At the beginning of spring*: Primō **vère**. In these expressions the adjective usually comes first.

(c) When the adjective and the substantive denote the same number of persons or things, the appositive construction is used; as, *All of us were present*: Omnēs **aderāmus**. *We said that very few of us survived*: Diximus **nōs perpaucōs** superesse.

(d) With the positive degree of adjectives of number, we generally find *dē* or *ex* with the ablative instead of the partitive genitive; as, *A few of our men fall*: **Paucī dē nostrīs** cadunt. *They lost a few of their men*: **Paucōs ex suis** dēperdidērunt. So with *ūnus*; as, *One of his sons was captured*: **Ūnus ē filiīs** captus est.

115. A genitive of *description* or *characteristic*, accompanied by an adjective or other modifier, is used to denote character, or quality, including value, age, weight, etc.; as, *A man of very great prudence*: **Vir m̄ximī cōsiliī**. *A ditch three feet deep*: **Fossa trium pedum**. *Stones of great weight*: **M̄gnī ponderis saxa**. *Three months' provisions of ground corn*: **Trium mēnsūm** molita cibāria.

See also ablative of characteristic, section 124, a.

116. Occasionally we find a genitive of *definition*, usually with the force of a noun in apposition; as, *The virtue of justice*: **Virtūs jūstitiæ**. *The town of Antioch*: **Oppidum Antiochiæ**.

This genitive is not of frequent occurrence in prose, as the appositive construction is generally preferred (especially in the case of proper names); as, *The city of Rome*: **Urbs Rōma**. *The isle of Mona*: **Insula Mona**.

117. Many adjectives require a genitive (usually objective) to complete their meaning:

(a) Adjectives denoting desire, fondness, skill, acquaintance, memory, fulness, guilt, mastery, participation and their opposites; as, *Fond of praise*: **Avidus laudis**. *Skilled in war*: **Perītus bellī**. *Full of confidence*: **Fidūciæ plēnus**.

(b) Verbals in *āx*, and present participles used as adjectives, denoting condition or permanent quality; as, *Productive of virtues*: **Ferāx virtūtum**. *Averse to labor*: **Fugiēns labōris**. **Fugiēns labōrem** would mean *avoiding labor* on a particular occasion.

(c) A genitive is sometimes used (seldom in classical prose) to signify *in what respect*, or *in relation to what*, a quality is possessed; as, *He selected a place half way between them (literally, midway with respect to both)*: **Lōcum mediūm utrīusque** dēlēgit.

118. The genitive is used in the *predicate* to express possession, duty, part, quality, price or characteristic; as,

All things belonged to the enemy: **Omnia erant hostium**. *I sell corn at a higher price*: **Plūris vendō frūmentum**. *It is the part of a wise man to obey the law*: **Hominis sapientis** est lēgibus pārēre. *To wait for the enemy is the height of madness*: **Exspectāre hostēs summae** est dēmentiae.

If the person is represented by a personal pronoun, the neuter of the pronominal adjective is used; as, *It is my duty to defend the city*: **Meum** est urbem dēfendere.

119. The word on which the genitive depends is frequently omitted, regularly so if it has been used previously in the sentence; as, *At the temple of Jupiter*: Ad **Jovis** (aedem). *Hannibal a boy of nine years*: **Hannibal annōrum novem** (puer). *He had been in the army of Sulla and afterwards in that of Crassus*: In exercitū Sullae et posteā in **Crassī** fuerat.

120. Such words as *periculum* and *commodum*, in certain phrases take a genitive where the English expression would lead us to expect a dative; as, *From him he learns about the dangers to Cicero and the legion*: Ab eō dē periculis **Cicerōnis legiōnisque** cōgnōscitur. *He did this with advantage to the state*: Hōc commodō **reīpūblīcae** fēcit. *He perceived that it would be attended with great dangers to the province*: Intellegēbat māgnō cum periculō **prōvincīae** futūrum.

N.B.—It may be stated generally that the objective genitive with *nouns* represents not only the *accusative* as direct object of a transitive verb (section 112), and the *dative* completing the meaning of an intransitive verb (section 120), but also many English phrases made up of the objective case and other prepositions besides *of*, even where, if the verb were used in Latin, a preposition with the accusative or ablative would take the place of the objective genitive; as, *Reputation for valor*: Opiniō **virtūtis**. *For an impression on Gaul*: Ad opiniōnem **Gallīae**. *War with (or against) the Helvetii*: Bellum **Helvētiōrum**. *Fondness for war*: Studium **belli**.

121. For verbs governing the genitive, see Exercise VII., and for verbs governing the genitive and accusative, see Exercise VIII.

EXERCISE 13.

1. The wrongs inflicted by the Gauls upon the Roman people were so great that Caesar could not forget them. 2. Considius, who had the greatest experience in military matters, was sent in advance with the scouts. 3. He believed that the soldiers of Ariovistus were wholly inexperienced in this mode of fighting. 4. He said that this circumstance had dispelled all doubt as to the arrival of the legions. 5. The general's hesitation on the previous days prompted the Belgians to this measure. 6. He distributed three months' provisions of ground corn amongst the soldiers.

7. Your letters are of great value, but your friendship is of greater. 8. He was a man of very great ability, and most eager for political change. 9. The top of the hill was held by the Roman army. 10. He said that it was the part of a wise man to ask the advice of his friends. 11. In the middle of this course there is a large island which is called Mona. 12. Cæsar's lieutenant asked the scouts how many of the enemy there were. 13. On the morrow of that day they sent the cavalry to follow up those who had fled. 14. The soldier said that he had been both in the army of Labienus and in that of Cæsar. 15. Word was brought to Cæsar that the enemy were full of confidence in themselves, and were setting out for the vicinity of Alesia.

EXERCISE XIV.

USES OF THE ABLATIVE.

122. Three or four different relations are expressed by the Latin ablative, as it discharges the functions of that number of originally distinct cases.

123. The ablative *proper* expresses the relation *from*, including,

(a) *Source, separation and cause*; as, *A man born of most worthy parents*: **Homō optimīs parentibus nātus.** *We need friends*: **Nōbīs est opus amicīs.** *He freed them from oppression*: **Eōs obsidiōne liberāvit.** *He delays for the sake of supplies*: **Commeātūs causā morātur.**

All these ablatives are also found with prepositions; as, *The Belgians are descended from the Germans*: **Belgæ sunt ortī ab Germānīs.** *The place was left empty of defenders*: **Ā prōpūgnātōribus vacuus relictus est locus.** *He was ill because of his wound*: **Ex vulnere aeger erat.**

(b) *Place from which* is denoted by an ablative with a preposition; as, *He sets out from the city*: **Ab urbe proficiscitur.**

Names of towns, and of some islands, also *domus* and *rūs*, are put in the ablative without a preposition; as, *He came from Corinth* (or *from the country*, or *from home*): **Vēnit Corinthō** (or **rūre**, or **domō**). The preposition is sometimes expressed

with names of towns to denote *from the neighborhood of*, and for the sake of contrast with the name of the town marking the limit of motion.

(c) A comparative adjective or adverb (without *quam*) is followed by the ablative; as, *They are more civilized than the rest*: **CĒTERĪS hŪMĀNIŌRĒS** sunt. *He says that the Gauls are not braver than the Germans*: **Negat Gallōs fortiŏrĒs** esse **GermānĪs**. *He set out sooner than any one expected*: **Celerius omnĪ opĪniŏne** profectus est.

N.B.—This ablative, however, should be used only when the comparative adjective is in the nominative, or the accusative after a verb of saying or thinking, and is especially common in negative and interrogative sentences. In the case of adverbs the ablative is not used unless the substantive following the comparative represents the subject or direct object of the action expressed by the verb implied in the comparative clause.

(1) If *quam* (*than*) is expressed, the noun or pronoun following takes the case of the corresponding preceding substantive; as, *Crassus was less encumbered than those*: **Crassus** erat expeditior **quam illi**. *Cesar says that Ireland is less than Britain*: **Caesar dicit Hiberniam** minŏrem esse **quam Britanniam**. *He lived longer in Italy than in Gaul*: **Diŭtius** in **Ītaliā** **quam in Galliā** vixit.

(2) The comparatives *plūs*, *minus*, *longius* and *amplius*, are regularly used (with *quam* omitted) without affecting the case of the following word; as, *They completed the fortification in less than three hours*: **Minus hŏrĪs tribus** mŭnĭtiŏnem perfĕcĕrunt. *More than eighty ships had been seen*: **Amplius octingentae nāvĕs** erant vĭsae.

(3) If two qualities in the same object are compared with each other, the comparative degree of the adjective is generally used after, as well as before *quam*; as, *He is more brave than wise*: **Fortior** est **quam sapientior**.

124. The *instrumental* ablative expresses the relations *with* and *by*, including,

(a) *Means*; as, *The camp was fortified by a rampart and trench*: **Castra vallŏ fossāque** munĭta sunt. *It cannot be determined by the eyes*: **OculĪs** jŭdicārĭ nŏn potest. *They live on flesh*: **Carne** vivunt. *With that legion he completed the wall*: **Eā legiŏne** mŭrum perducit.

(b) *Manner, accompaniment and quality (or characteristic)*; as, *The war must be carried on in quite a different manner*: **Longĕ aliā ratiŏne** est bellum gerendum. *They followed with all their*

wagons : **Cum omnibus carris** secūti sunt. *He was a man of the greatest boldness* : Erat homō **summā audaciā**. *A spike as thick as a man's thumb* : Clāvus digiti pollicis **crassitudine**.

(1) As a rule the ablatives of accompaniment and manner require the preposition *cum*, when not modified by an adjective or a genitive, and even when so modified the *cum* is often retained, except in the case of such words as *modō* and *ratione* ; as,

He lived with me : **Mēcum** vixit. *He set out with a large army* : **Ingenti exercitū** profectus est. *He is slain with the greatest part of his troops* : Interficitur **cum maximā parte** militum. *He kept the soldiers carefully in camp* : **Cum diligentia** milites in castris continuit. *He did this with the greatest care* : **Summā diligentia** (or, **cum summā diligentia**) hōc fecit. *That must be done in a different manner* : **Id alia ratione** faciendum est.

(2) The ablative of characteristic (like the genitive of quality) is accompanied by an adjective or other modifying adjunct. *A man of boldness* = **Audāx** homō, not **Homō audaciā**.

(3) When the description refers to *number*, the genitive of quality should be used ; to denote *physical characteristics* or *external appearance* the ablative is the proper case, while for other descriptions either case may be used, with a preference for the genitive to express *permanent* or *inherent qualities* ; as, *He made a nine days' march* : **Novem diērum** iter fecit. *They have long hair (literally, they are [a people] of long hair)* : **Capillō sunt promissō**. *He was a man of the greatest valor* : Erat vir **summae virtutis**, or **summā virtute**.

It will be observed that the ablative (like the genitive) of characteristic may be used in the predicate.

(c) Definite *price* and *value*, with verbs of buying, selling and exchanging, are usually expressed by the ablative ; as, *He purchased the taxes for a small price* : **Vectigalia parvō pretiō** redēmit. *He sold the house for two talents* : **Duōbus talentis** domum vendidit. *He exchanged the booty for wine* : **Praedam vinō** mūtāvit.

(d) The ablative of *degree of difference* is used with comparatives and words implying comparison ; as, *He made the sword a foot longer* : **Gladium unō pede** longiorem fecit. *The Romans are much braver than the Gauls* : **Rōmāni Gallis multō** fortiōres sunt. *He lived many years before Caesar* : **Ante Caesarem multīs annis** vixit. *He encamped six miles from Caesar's camp* : **Millibus** passuum sex ā Caesaris castris cōsēdit. *He recovered the city a few days after* : **Paucis** post diēbus urbem recēpit. *He came to him a few months before* : **Paucis mēnsibus** ante ad eum vēnit. *Ireland is considered a half smaller than Britain* : **Hibernia dimidiō** minor

quam Britannia existimātur. *The sooner the better*: **Quō** citius, eō melius.

(e) The ablative of *specificatio* or *respect* denotes that in respect to which anything is true; as, *They excel the rest of the Gauls in valor*: Reliquōs Gallōs **virtūte** praeceđunt.

125. The *locative* ablative expresses the relations *at* or *in*, including,

(a) Place *where* or *in which*, generally with a preposition; as, *Caesar was in Gaul*: Caesar **in Galliā** erat.

(1) Names of towns do not require a preposition, and in the singular of the first and second declensions, the *locative*, which there is the same in form as the genitive, is used; as, *He lived at Carthage, at Athens, at Rome and at Corinth*: **Carthagine, Athēnīs, Rōmae, Corinthī** vixit.

(2) Like names of towns are the locatives *domi*, *belli* and *militiae* (in contrast with *domi*), and *humī*. *Rūri* (*in the country*) and *terrā marique* (*by land and sea*) are also used without a preposition.

(3) In the so-called pregnant construction (*cōstrūctiō praegnāns*) where there is *motion towards* implied, we sometimes find an accusative after the preposition; as, *They concealed themselves in the nearest woods* (that is, *went into the woods and hid*): **In proximās silvās** sē abdidērunt.

Collocō and *pōnō*, however, take the ablative after *in*.

(b) Time *when*, and time *within which*; as, *He returned home on the third day*: **Domum tertio diē** rediit. *He did that in one day*: **Id unō diē** fēcit. Occasionally it appears to denote duration, but in reality denotes time *in the course of which*; as, *They fought five hours*: **Pugnātum est hōris quīnque**.

(c) The *ablative absolute* (see Exercise V.) was probably originally identical with that expressing *time when* or *position*, but the notions of cause, condition and other attendant circumstances have been superadded to, and frequently have entirely superseded, the original idea.

126. The ablative is used with the words, *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus* and *frētus*, and adjectives denoting *full of* or *abounding in*, and *free from* or *destitute of*; as, *Worthy of remembrance*: **Dignus memoriā**. *Unworthy of honor*: **Indignus honōre**. *Satisfied with the infantry*: **Contentus peditātū**. *Relying on assistance*: **Frētus subsidiō**. *A life full of pleasures*: **Vita plēna voluptātibus**. *A mind free from cares*: **Animus cūrīs vacuus**.

The ablatives with *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, and with adjectives of plenty, are probably instrumental, the ablative with *frētus* local, and that with adjectives of *want*, one of separation.

127. For verbs with the ablative, see Exercise VII., and for verbs with the ablative and accusative, see Exercise VIII.

128. With passive verbs the primary agent is denoted by the ablative, with *ā* or *ab*, the secondary agent by *per* with the accusative; as,

The letter was sent by Cæsar through a slave: Litterae ā Cæsare per servum missae sunt.

With the gerundive, the apparent agent is turned by the dative; as, *Cæsar must send the letter: Litterae Cæsari mittendae sunt.*

129. As was noticed in the case of the limit of motion, so with the place *from which*, each of several phrases is in Latin taken closely with the verb; as, *He came from the consul, at Rome, in Italy: Ā cōsule Rōmā ex Italiā vēnit.* (See section 93, c.)

EXERCISE 14.

1. He asked why the soldier had wounded the lieutenant with a sling. 2. Cæsar was passing the winter in Gaul with the troops. 3. He said that the Belgians had strengthened the place with a wall and a trench. 4. A sudden attack was made on our cavalry by the enemy. 5. Ambassadors had come from all those districts to ask Cæsar to come to their aid with an army. 6. He says that the cavalry of the Belgians excel the rest of the Gauls in speed. 7. They all stain themselves with woad, which produces a dark-blue color, and on this account (*hōc*) they are of more frightful appearance in battle. 8. This victory has cost the life of so many brave men that we now need peace. 9 With such (*is*) swiftness and vehemence did the soldiers advance, that the enemy could not withstand the onset of the legions and the cavalry. 10. Cæsar with his army was distant from the enemy not more than ten thousand paces. 11. He was informed that Labienus had collected all the ships, two hundred in number. 12. On the same day he ordered his lieutenant to move forward the camp and take up a position at the foot of the hill, six miles from Cæsar's camp. 13. The letter was sent by the general, through a messenger, from Massilia in Gaul to the consul at Rome in Italy. 14. He was a man of the highest merit and worthy of all praise; relying on the friendship of the consul he came from Athens in the reign of that king, and afterwards lived many years at Rome and Tarentum.

15. (Being) a man of the greatest courage, (and) relying on the assistance of Cæsar, he spoke more freely and more boldly than the other Gauls.

EXERCISE XV.

VERBAL NOUNS—INFINITIVE, GERUND, SUPINE.

(a) *The Infinitive.*

130. The infinitive is a verbal noun used as the subject or object of a verb, or as the subject of another infinitive; as,

Being praised is delightful: Jūcundum est laudārī. *He determined to set out:* Profectus cōstituit. *He proves that carrying out their plans is an easy matter:* Perfacile esse probat cōnāta perficere. Notice that the adjective modifying the infinitive is neuter.

131. In vivid narration, to describe a series of actions, the present infinitive may be used instead of an historical tense of the indicative.

This is called the historical infinitive, and when so used it is no longer a noun, but has the value of a verb, and takes its subject in the nominative case; as,

The Aedui kept putting off day after day; they said (the corn) was being got together, was being brought in, was close at hand: Diem ex diē dūcere Aedui: cōferri, comportāri, adesse dicere.

132. Although the infinitive is a noun, it yet retains some of the peculiarities of the verb, as; for example,

(a) It is modified by an adverb instead of by an attributive adjective; as, *Brave fighting:* Fortiter pūgnāre.

(b) It governs the same case as any other part of the verb; as, *Obeying the laws:* Lēgibus pārere.

(c) It has the distinction of tense; as, *He seems to be writing, to have written, to be going to write:* Videtur scribere, scripsisse, scriptūrus esse.

(d) It has a subject in the accusative case after verbs of saying, thinking, etc., and when used as subject of a verb; and in the nominative when used as an historical infinitive. See sections 12 and 131.

(b) *The Gerund.*

133. The gerund is a verbal noun (found only in the neuter singular) of four cases, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative* and *ablative*, with uses similar to those of other substantives, except that it is never found in the accusative as object of a verb. Like the infinitive, it governs the same case as the verb from which it is derived. In use it corresponds pretty closely to the English gerund (or infinitive in *ing*), but it may frequently be translated by the English gerundial infinitive with *to*.

EXAMPLES.—*I was desirous of seeing you (or eager to see you):* Avidus eram **tē videndī**. *He was ready to obey the commander:* Parātus fuit ad **pārendum imperātōrī**. *He has come for the purpose of persuading you:* **Tibi persuādendī causā** vēnit. *Caesar makes an end of speaking:* Caesar **loquendī** finem facit.

134. In a few cases, especially with pronouns, the genitive of the gerund is used as a pure substantive modified by the neuter of the pronominal adjective; as, *Nor do they give the enemy an opportunity of recovering themselves (literally, their recovering):* Neque **suī colligendī** hostibus facultātem relinquunt.

Or we may consider *suī* here as the objective genitive plural of the reflexive pronoun = *the recovering of themselves*.

(c) *The Supine.*

135. Another verbal noun is the *supine*, which is found only in the *accusative* and *ablative* singular, with adverbial force in both cases.

136. The accusative supine, or supine in *um*, is used to denote purpose after verbs of motion (and a few others, *dare*, *collocāre*, etc.); as,

They came to ask peace: Vēnērunt **pācem rogātum**. *He gave his sister to that man to marry (or in marriage):* Sorōrem illi **nūptum** dedit.

The supine in *um*, which corresponds to the English gerundial infinitive with *to* after a verb, takes the case of the verb from which it is derived.

137. The rare future infinitive passive is formed by means of *irī* (present infinitive passive of *eō* used impersonally) and the supine

in *um*; as, *He says the city will be taken* (literally, *there is a going to take the city*): *Dicit urbem captum iri*. In this example it should be observed that *urbem* is really the object of *captum*, not the subject of *captum iri*.

138. The ablative supine, or supine in *ū*, is used as an ablative of specification with a few adjectives, with the nouns *fās*, *nefās*, *opus* and *scelus*, and occasionally with the verb *puđet*; as, *This is easy to do*: *Hōc est facile factū*. *That is hard to say*: *Id est difficile dictū*. *It is unlawful to say*: *Nefās est dictū*.

This supine corresponds to the English infinitive with adjectives.

139. The supine in *ū* does not govern a case, but is found in connection with a noun clause which forms the subject of the principal verb; as, *It is hard to say how powerful the Gauls are*: *Difficile est dictū quid Galli possint*. Here the clause, *quid Galli possint*, is not governed by *dictū*, but is the subject of *est*. *Dictū* is adverbial and modifies *difficile*.

EXERCISE 15.

1. After the assembly was dismissed, Cæsar determined to buy up a very large number of draught animals and wagons. 2. They will not let slip the opportunity of freeing themselves for ever, and of avenging themselves upon the Romans. 3. The lieutenant brought word to Cæsar that he had found the other ships ready for sailing. 4. Such showers (*literally, so great a multitude*) of stones and darts did the enemy keep hurling, that there was no possibility to any one of keeping his position on the wall. 5. Cæsar replied that he was ever ready to aid the wretched and to spare the vanquished. 6. By faithfully discharging his duties and obeying the laws, he became very popular with his fellow-citizens. 7. They sent ambassadors to Cæsar to ask help, and he sent three legions to their assistance. 8. He proves to them that it is a very easy thing to do, to seize the supreme power. 9. It is very hard to say how many there are of us. 10. He has given his daughter in marriage to a very brave man in that state. 11. They thought the best thing to do was to cut off our men from supplies, and protract the affair into the winter. 12. He had learned from the scouts that the river was distant from his camp not more than ten miles, and that on this side of that river the enemy were awaiting the arrival of our troops. 13. After making a bridge, Cæsar attempted to cross the river and pursue

the enemy. 14. He learned from the soldiers that the ships were useless for sailing, and although he was ready to set out, he thought that it would be extremely dangerous for the soldiers to embark. 15. On enquiry (*literally, by questioning*), Cæsar found out that the rest of the cavalry had been thrown into a panic by the flight of Dumnorix and his horsemen.

EXERCISE XVI.

VERBAL ADJECTIVES—GERUNDIVE, PARTICIPLES.

(a) *The Gerundive.*

140. The gerundive (or future participle passive) is an adjective of the first and second declensions, and agrees with its substantive. When so used in an oblique case, it is best translated like a gerund governing that noun; as,

They came to seek peace (literally, for peace which was to be sought): Vēnērunt ad pācem petendam. *The greatest difficulty in building a bridge (literally, of the bridge which was to be built) presented itself:* Summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur.

Observe that the gerundive is passive and does not govern the noun, but agrees with it.

141. Often in the oblique cases it is immaterial whether the gerund or the gerundive is used, but it may be stated generally that with intransitive verbs the gerund is always found, and with transitive verbs, especially after prepositions, the gerundive is preferred. Indeed, it is seldom that the Latin uses the gerund of a transitive verb with an object.

EXAMPLES.—*He is ready to help the wretched:* Parātus est ad succurrendum miserīs. *They advanced for the purpose of fighting:* Pūgnandī causā prōgressī sunt. *Cavalry were sent to follow up the enemy:* Equitēs missī sunt ad hostēs insequendōs. *Hope deceived them with respect to taking the town by storm:* Dē expūgnandō oppidō spēs eōs fefellit. *They came with the object of seeking peace:* Pācis petendae causā vēnērunt. *Ariovistus proceeds to seize Vesontio:* Ariovistus ad occupandum Vesontionem (*fem.*) contendit. (This use of the gerund is very rare.)

(a) It will be observed that *ad* and *causā* with the gerund and gerundive are regular ways of expressing purpose with short phrases. (See Part I., page 102, footnote 1.)

(b) Note that the gerundive of deponents is passive, and that in this construction (though not with *sum*, see next section), the gerundive of *ator*, *potior*, etc., is used as though these verbs were transitive; as, *Hope of taking the town failed the enemy*: *Hostibus spēs potiundī oppidī discēssit*.

142. One of the commonest uses of the gerundive (but only in the nominative and accusative) is to form as a predicate adjective, in combination with *sum*, the so-called passive periphrastic conjugation, denoting duty or necessity; as,

All things were (or had) to be done by Cæsar at one time: *Caesari omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda*. *The line of battle must be formed*: *Acies instruenda est*.

In this construction, intransitive verbs are used impersonally, the gerundive taking the same case as the verb from which it is derived; as, *The general must be obeyed*: *Imperatōri pārendum est*. *These things ought to be used*: *Hīs rēbus ūtendum est*. *We must leap down*: *Dēsiliendum est*.

In such examples as the last three, the form in *-ndum* is, by some, considered the nominative of the gerund.

143. The gerundive without a preposition is used in a predicative agreement with the object of certain verbs to express *end* or *purpose*.

Such verbs are *trādō*, *dō*, *locō*, *condūcō*, *attribuō* and *cūrō*; as, *He hands these over to the Aedui to guard*: *Hōs Aeduīs custōdiendōs trādit*. *He provided for the transportation of the army*: *Exercitum transportandum cūrāvit*. *He took a contract to build a bridge*: *Pontem faciendum condūxit*.

Examples illustrating uses of gerunds and gerundives may be found in Cæsar, *Bell. Gall.*, II., 20 and 21.

(b) *The Participles.*

144. The *present* (or *imperfect*) participle is used to denote the *same time* as that of the principal verb; as,

While fighting he is slain: *Pugnāns interficitur*. *He comes upon the soldiers fighting*: *Militibus pugnāntibus occurrit*. *While the soldiers were resisting he fled*: *Militibus resistentibus, fugit*.

Observe that in English we use *when* or *while*, apparently in connection with a participle without a finite verb. The sentence is of course elliptical, *while fighting*=*while (he was) fighting*. In Latin, *dum* and *cum* are not used in this manner, and we must either leave out these words when we use the participle, or else make the sentence complete, **Dum pūgnat**, or **Cum pūgnāret**.

Notice also such sentences as, *When (or While, or As) a boy he lived at Rome*: **Puer Rōmæ vīxit**, where a simple appositive is used in the Latin.

145. The *past* (or *perfect*) participle is used to denote an action as completed at a *time prior* to that of the principal verb; as,

Having encouraged the soldiers, he proceeded to the first line: **Cohortātus** militēs, ad primam aciem prōcēssit. *Having been captured by the soldiers, he was put to death*: **Ā** militibus **captus**, interfectus est. *Having given this reply, he went away*: **Hōc respōnsō datō**, discēssit.

Observe that the perfect participle of a deponent verb is, as a rule, active.

146. It should be carefully observed that in English we often use the present participle in a loose way, to denote something that takes place previously to the action expressed by the main verb. In Latin a perfect participle or an equivalent clause should be used; as, *Promising to return in a short time, he took his departure*: **Pollicitus** sē brevī reditūrum, discēssit. *Hearing this he set out*: **Hōc audītō**, profectus est. *Returning to the harbor he found the ships ready for sailing*: **Cum ad portum rediisset**, nāvēs parātās ad nāvigandum invēnit.

147. The *future* participle denotes an action as about to happen at a *time subsequent* to that of the principal verb. Its chief uses are to form (with *esse*) the future infinitive active, and the active periphrastic conjugation, which denotes intention or likelihood; as,

He says Cæsar will take the city by storm: **Dicit** Caesarem urbem **expūgnātūrum esse**. *He was going (or was likely, or intended) to set out*: **Profectūrus erat**.

The participles, like the infinitives, denote time *relative* to that of the principal verb. (See section 16.)

148. The commonest uses of the participle are :

(a) With a substantive in the ablative absolute construction (see Exercise V.), and as an appositive adjective agreeing with the subject or object of a verb. It then forms a substitute for a subordinate clause of some description; frequently also for a coordinate clause describing the doing of something leading up to the final action (see section 49); as, *When he had made peace he returned to the city: Factā pāce*, ad urbem rediit. *The enemy surrounded our men while they were fighting: Hostēs nostrōs pūgnantēs circumvērunt*. *It was necessary that the punishment of being burned at the stake should overtake him if he were found guilty: Damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat ut igni cremārētur*. *The enemy also had led forth their troops and drawn them up in battle array: Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēductās instrūxerant*. *Our men attacked the enemy and slew a great number of them: Hostēs nostrī aggressī māgnūm eōrum numerum occiderunt*.

(b) The participles are sometimes used (chiefly in the oblique cases) as substantives; as, *He followed up the fugitives: Fugientēs prōsecūtus est*. *They stood upon the fallen: Jacentibus insistent*.

(c) Occasionally they have the value of simple predicate adjectives; as, *He is dead: Mortuus est*. *They were engaged in the work: In opere occupātī erant*. *Gaul is divided: Gallia est divīsa*. *They are prepared to give hostages: Parātī sunt obsidēs dare*.

EXERCISE 16.

1. Thinking that he could terrify the ambassador, he said the town would be taken in three days and that he would avenge the wrongs done to his father. 2. Cæsar says that he will hand over the prisoners to the cavalry to guard. 3. He thought that eighty transport ships were sufficient to carry over the two legions. 4. Thinking this place by no means suitable for disembarking, he waited at anchor until the ninth hour. 5. They threw the ambassador into chains when he was attempting to speak. 6. Fatigued by the battle, and hearing (section 146) that two hundred horsemen were coming to the assistance of the enemy, our men began to retreat. 7. Saying this, he threw himself into the midst of the enemy and fell fighting. 8. A few days after that battle, he had caused two bridges to be built over the river. 9. Alarmed by the arrival of Cæsar, they sent hostages for the purpose (*causā*) of seeking peace. 10. The Gauls (who had been) surrounded by the cavalry he ordered to be put to death. 11. Seeing the enemy

leaving the ship, he put spurs to his horse, and hastened to Cæsar at the camp. 12. They were assembling from all sides to defend those into whose territories the Roman army had been led. 13. Having encouraged his men, he gave the signal to them as they desired it (literally, *to them desiring*). 14. He replies that Cæsar, promising to return immediately, has run down to exhort the soldiers. 15. The two legions declare that they have always been ready to carry on the war.

EXERCISE XVII.

IMPERATIVE, INDEPENDENT USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

149. In the second person, the imperative mood (regularly the present) is used in Latin as in English to express commands; as,

Suffer me to breathe my last amidst this slaughter of my soldiers: Mē in hęc strāge militum meōrum patere expirāre. Consider Gaul: Respice Galliam.

This imperative has several substitutes or equivalents which are frequently used, chiefly *velim*, *fac* or *cūrā*, all followed by the present subjunctive (*ut* being usually omitted); as, *Write to me, I wish you would write to me, See that you write to me, Be sure to write to me: Ad mē scribe, Ad mē scribās velim, Fac ad mē scribās, Cūrā ut ad mē scribās.*

These phrases are less direct and peremptory than the simple imperative.

150. The imperative is seldom used in prose to express a prohibition or negative command.

For this purpose we use most frequently, (a) *nōlī*, *nōlīte*, with the infinitive; (b) *nē* with the perfect subjunctive; (c) *cavē* (*nē*) or *fac nē* with the present subjunctive; as,

Do not do this, Be sure not to do this, Take care not to do this: Nōlī hęc facere, Nē hęc fēcēris, Cavē (or fac nē) hęc faciās. Do not deprive these of your assistance: Nōlīte hīs vestrō auxiliō expoliāre.

151. The subjunctive is used independently to express:

(a) A wish, desire, command or exhortation; as, *Let us die for our country: Prō patriā moriāmur. May he return in safety: Incolumis redeat. Let the prisoner be put to death: Captivus interficiātur. Let us consider the whole of Gaul: Omnem Galliam respiciāmus.*

This is known as the *hortative* or *jussive* subjunctive.

To express wish or desire the subjunctive is frequently preceded by *utinam*. The use of the tenses is governed by the same principles as hold in the case of conditional clauses with *sī*; as, *I hope you may (or May you) have such men, (Possibility): Utinam tālēs virōs habeātis. Would that you had such men, (Contrary to the fact at the present time): Utinam tālēs virōs habērētis. Would that you had had such men, (Contrary to the fact in the past): Utinam tālēs virōs habuissētis.*

(b) A softened assertion in a polite or hesitating manner; as, *This I would venture to say: Hōc dīcere ausim (see Part III., section 66). You would have thought them vanquished: Crēderēs victōs. Someone may say this: Hōc dixerit aliquis. I could have wished you had been present: Vellem adfuissēs.*

This is called the *potential* subjunctive, and is really the case of an apodosis with the protasis omitted (see section 79).

(c) *Doubt, perplexity* (dubitative questions), or a *virtual negative* (rhetorical questions or questions of appeal), in interrogative clauses; as, *What is he to do? Quid faciat? What was he to say? Quid diceret? Who would believe the messenger (now)? Quis nūntiō crēdat? Who would have believed this man? Quis huic hominī crēderet?*

152. When the simple imperative or the subjunctive is used to express negative commands, wishes and exhortations, *nē* is the proper negative; as,

Do not swear: Nē jūrā (not classical prose). Do not despise the enemy: Nē hostēs dēspexeris. Let us not attack the city: Nē urbem oppugnēmus. Let him not dare to return: Nē audeat redire. I wish that he may not return: Utinam nē redeat.

(a) To connect such clauses *neu* or *nēve* is used (seldom *-ve* or *neque*); as, *Do not do this nor that: Nē hōc fēceris nēve illud. Let all attack the leader, and let no one wound anybody else: Omnēs duces petant neu quis quem alium vulneret. Neither provoke the Aedui nor make war upon them nor their allies: Nēve Aeduōs lacessiveris nēve hīs sociisve eōrum bellum intuleris.*

(b) For the negative of *velim* and *vellem* use *nōlim* and *nōllem*; as, *I wish you may not return: Nōlim redeās. I could have wished you had not been present: Nōllem adfuissēs.*

153. Notice such expressions as the following, where we should almost expect the subjunctive ; *It would be tedious to tell everything* : **Longum est omnia narrāre.** *It would have been better to do this* : **Satius (or Melius) fuit hōc facere.** *You should have done this* : **Hōc facere dēbuiſti** (or **Hōc tibi faciendum fuit**, or **Tē hōc facere oportuit**). *It could have been done* : **Poterat fieri** (see section 85, N.B.).

EXERCISE 17.

1. Do not assist the enemy with corn or with anything else. 2. Let us love our native land and fight bravely for our parents and our children. 3. Let us not fear the enemy, however numerous, nor return to the city unless victorious. 4. Leap down, fellow-soldiers, unless you wish to betray the eagle to the enemy. 5. Would that Cæsar had sent two legions to the assistance of the lieutenant. 6. Let the Gauls send envoys to the Roman general to seek peace. 7. Remember the former valor of the Helvetii. 8. Labienus, my lieutenant, have two bridges built over this river as speedily as possible. 9. Be sure not to report to the enemy that the Romans have been defeated by Ariovistus. 10. Do not persuade the soldiers to make an attack upon the enemy. 11. Soldiers, fill up this trench with stones and the trunks of trees. 12. Do not forget the wrongs done by the Gauls to the Roman people. 13. Order the soldiers to advance by forced marches into the country of the enemy. 14. Perhaps some one may ask what the enemy told Cæsar concerning this matter. 15. Who can endure that this should be snatched away from them ?

EXERCISE XVIII.

VERBS OF FEARING, HINDERING, DOUBTING, OBJECTING.

154. After verbs of fearing (chiefly *vereor* in classical prose) and such phrases as *metus est*, *periculum est*, *that* and *lest* are translated by *nē* and *that not* by *ut*, both words being followed by the subjunctive ; as,

I fear that he will do this (or *lest he do this*) : **Vereor nē hōc faciat.** *I fear that he will not do this* : **Vereor ut hōc faciat.** *There is danger of his not doing this* : **Periculum est ut hōc faciat.**

N.B.—Instead of *ut*, *nē nōn* is often used, regularly so after *nōn vereor*.

155. Verbs of fearing may be used as modal verbs, followed by the infinitive without an expressed subject; as, *I hesitate to do this*: *Vereor hōc facere*.

156. Verbs and phrases of *objecting to*, *preventing*, *doubting* and *hindering* are usually followed by *quīn* or *quōminus* (consecutive or final), and the subjunctive. When *quīn* is used, the preceding clause is *always* an actual or virtual negative, and this is also *generally* the case with *quōminus*; as,

The fleet was prevented from returning into the harbor: *Clāssis tenēbātur quōminus in portum rediret*. *He could scarcely be prevented from leaving the city*: *Vix inhibērī potuit quīn urbem relinqueret*. *I do not doubt that he has left the city*: *Nōn dubitō quīn urbem reliquerit*. *And a suspicion is not wanting that he committed suicide*: *Neque abest suspīciō quīn ipse sibi mortem cōscīverit*.

157. It will be observed that *quīn* and *quōminus* with the subjunctive often answer to the English gerund governed by a preposition; as, *I do not object to your doing this*: *Nōn recūsō quōminus hōc faciās*. *The Germans could not be restrained from hurling their weapons at our men*: *Germānī retinērī nōn poterant quīn in nostrōs tēla conjicerent*.

158. Common expressions with *quīn* are *nēmo est*, *there is no one*; *nōn dubitāre*, *not to doubt*; *nōn est dubium*, *there is no doubt*; *minimum abesse*, and *haud multum abesse*, *to be within a little*; *nihil praetermittere*, *to leave nothing undone*; *facere nōn posse*, *cannot but*, *cannot help*.

With *quōminus* are found *dēterrere*, *impedire*, *tenere*, *recūsare* and such phrases as *per tē stetit*, *it was owing to you*.

159. *Recūsō*, *I object*, *I refuse*, and *dubitō*, *I scruple*, *I hesitate*, are used as modal verbs; as, *He hesitates to cross the river*: *Flūmen trānsire dubitat*. *He does not refuse to speak*: *Loquī nōn recūsāt*. *Recūsō* is also followed by *quīn*, and *dēterreo* by *nē* or *quīn*, and the subjunctive.

N.B.—*Prohibeo* usually takes the accusative and the infinitive.

EXERCISE 18.

1. I fear the soldiers will not be able to take the city by storm.
2. There was the greatest danger of the enemy's crossing the river and making an attack upon the camp.
3. The general feared that

the Gauls would attempt the walls with ladders, and that the troops would not be able to keep them off. 4. We fear that the general has been wounded by the enemy, but that he will not hesitate to cross the river. 5. He feared that he should hurt the feelings of his lieutenant. 6. It was owing to you and your brother that we did not conquer the enemy on that day. 7. There is no one who does not know that the Roman soldiers can easily defeat the Gauls. 8. Cæsar could not but believe that the enemy were filling the ditches with boughs. 9. They hesitated to raise objections to being for ever under the sway of the enemy. 10. He was within a very little of being slain by the enemy. 11. Ten vessels were prevented by the storms from being able to reach the same port. 12. He feared that the soldiers would not be able to cross the bridge and attack the enemy in the rear. 13. There was no doubt that the Aedui used to come to the Roman province. 14. He left no stone unturned to induce the Gauls to remain under the sway of the Romans. 15. They are deterring the citizens from bringing in corn, and are preventing (*prohibeō*) them from assisting our troops in any way.

EXERCISE XIX.

DUTY, NECESSITY, POSSIBILITY, PERMISSION.

160. *Duty* or *obligation* is usually expressed in one of three ways :

(a) Most frequently 'by the passive periphrastic conjugation (gerundive with *esse*) ; as, *You ought to do this (now)* : *Hæc tibi faciendâ sunt.* *It will be your duty to do this (or You will have to do this)* ; *Hæc tibi faciendâ erunt.* *You ought to have done this* : *Hæc tibi faciendâ fuêrunt.*

With intransitive verbs the gerundive (or, as it is sometimes called, the nominative of the gerund) is used impersonally ; as, *I must run* : *Currendum est mihi.* *I must obey the leader* : *Ā mē ducī pārendum est.* (See section 105.)

(b) By *dēbeō* ; as, *We ought to do this (now)* : *Hōc facere dēbēmus.* *We ought to do this (to-morrow)* : *Hōc facere (crās) dēbēbimus.* *We ought to have done this* : *Hōc facere dēbuimus.*

(c) By the impersonal (or rather unipersonal) verb *oportet* with the infinitive and its subject accusative; as, *Hōc nōs facere oportet, oportēbit, oportuit.*

N.B.—Carefully compare with their English equivalents the tenses of *dēbeō* and *oportet* used to denote past or future action. Compare also the English and the Latin infinitives.

161. *Necessity* (combined with *duty*) is expressed by the gerundive; as,

We must die for our country: Prō patriā nōbīs moriendum est.

To express absolute necessity, use *nesesse* with the third person singular of *sum*; as, *All men must die: Omnibus morī nesesse est.*

162. *Ability*, or *possibility*, is expressed by the modal verb *possum*; as,

I can do this now: Nunc hōc facere possum. I can do this to-morrow: Crās hōc facere poterō. I might (or could) have done this yesterday: Herī hōc facere poteram (or potuī).

163. *Permission* is expressed by *licet* followed by the dative and infinitive (the real subject of *licet*); as,

You may do this: Tibi hōc facere licet. You might have done (or you had permission to do) this yesterday: Tibi hōc facere herī licuit.

(a) After such infinitives as *esse, fierī, etc.*, any adjective modifying, or any substantive referring to, the preceding dative, agrees with it in case; as, *We may become orators: Nōbīs fierī orātōribus licet.*

(b) Both *licet* and *oportet* occasionally take the subjunctive (with *ut* omitted) instead of the infinitive; as, *You may come to the city: Ad urbem veniās licet. You ought to come to the city: Ad urbem veniās oportet.*

164. Notice the values of *should* in the following sentences and the different modes of translating them into Latin:

(a) *I said I should return to Rome, (should=shall of direct narration): Dixī mē Rōmam reditūrum esse.*

(b) *We should all obey the laws, (duty): Omnibus nōbīs lēgibus pārendum est.*

(c) *It is a crime that a Roman citizen should be bound, (here "should" expresses neither duty nor futurity; the subordinate clause might be rendered, "for a Roman citizen to be bound"): Facinus est vincērī civem Rōmānum.*

(d) *If I should return to Rome, I should see you, (a softened expression of condition and conclusion, less vivid and direct than, "If I return to Rome, I shall see you")*: *Sī Rōmam redeam tē videam.*

Similarly in the case of the potential subjunctive, where the condition is not expressed: *I should scarcely make that assertion*: *Vix hōc affirmāverim.*

EXERCISE 19.

1. At that time Cæsar could easily have defeated the Gauls. 2. To these envoys the answer was given that the soldiers ought always to obey the general. 3. He said that it would have been better to do this. 4. He had to die yesterday, we must die to-day, all will have to die some day. 5. The Gauls may be cowards if they wish, but the Roman soldiers must needs be brave men. 6. So far as Cæsar was concerned, you had permission to leave the camp. 7. They asked that they might be allowed to do this with his approval. 8. You should have replied that you could not leave the city. 9. You ought to attempt to take the city by storm to-morrow. 10. You ought to inform Cæsar at once that the enemy are about to make an attack upon our cavalry. 11. Cæsar could have ordered that state to furnish hostages. 12. He said the lieutenant ought to have won over the allies of the Germans to the Romans. 13. You may remain with the allies three months, and afterwards you will have permission to return to Rome. 14. He thinks the Belgians ought to fortify the place with a wall and a trench. 15. Our fields ought not to have been laid waste almost in sight of your army, our children carried off into slavery, and our towns taken by storm.

EXERCISE XX.

USES OF QUOD, QUONIAM AND CUM.

165. (a) *Quod (because)* takes the indicative when it introduces a statement positively on the writer's own authority or containing the writer's belief; as,

They surpass the rest of the Gauls in bravery, because they are engaged in almost daily struggles with the Germans: Reliquōs

Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt **quod** ferē cotīdiānīs proeliis cum Germānīs **contendunt**.

(b) It takes the subjunctive when it introduces a statement on the authority of another—virtual or informal indirect narration (see section 216); as,

Socrates was accused because (as his prosecutors charged) he corrupted the young men: Sōcratēs accūsātus est, quod corrumpere iuventūtem. *He complains because (as he says) he has been deserted: Quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur. Caesar complained that they had made war without cause: Caesar questus est quod sine causā bellum intulissent.*

N.B.—On the same principle we find *nōn quod* (or *quō*) with (generally) the subjunctive of a reason given to be rejected=*not because (as one might suppose)*. So also *quam quod* (or *quō*) after an actual or virtual comparative.

Frequently a sort of antecedent (such as *propterea, eō, hōc* or *eā dē causā*) is found preparing the way for the *quod* clause.

166. *Quoniam* (*since*) invariably takes the indicative (except in indirect narration); as,

Since I cannot save myself along with you, I shall provide for your life at least: Quoniam mē unā vōbiscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae quidem certē vitae prōspiciam.

167. *Cum*, meaning *since* or *although*, that is, with a clearly *causal* or *concessive* force, is always followed by the subjunctive; as,

Since they could not defend themselves from the enemy, they sent envoys to Caesar: Cum sē ab hostibus dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt. Though such is the case, Caesar will make peace with them: Cum haec ita sint, Caesar cum iīs pācem faciet.

168. *Cum* takes the primary (see section 28) tenses of the indicative to express *when, whenever*, used with the English present, perfect or future (see sections 200, 202, 205); as,

To these they quickly retreat when it is necessary: Ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt. Whenever a supply of this kind fails they have recourse to the punishment of even the innocent: Cum ējus generis cōpia dēfēcit (section 202), *etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt. When he returns to the camp I shall send him to Caesar: Ad castra cum redierit, eum ad Caesarem mittam.*

When I say into the harbor, I say into the city: Cum in portum dīcō in urbem dīcō.

In the last example the action expressed by the *cum* clause includes that of the principal statement, and such a clause is often best rendered by the English gerund preceded by a preposition; as, *In saying into the harbor, I say into the city.*

In rhetorical questions, *cum (when)* with a primary tense of the subjunctive is sometimes used; as, *Shall I say that the sea has been closed against our allies, when your armies have never crossed over from Brundisium, except in the depth of winter? Sociis ego nostris mare clausum fuisse dicam, cum nunquam ā Brundisiō nisi hieme summā trāsmiserint?*

Here *cum* is really causal, *Since such a state of affairs exists, I need not say, etc.*

169. *Cum* takes the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive to express *when*, used with the English past (including the past progressive) and pluperfect tenses; as,

When the magistrates were collecting men from the country, Orgetorix died: Cum hominēs ex agris magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est. When this news was brought to Caesar, he made haste to leave the city: Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, mātūrat ab urbe proficisci.

As a matter of fact in these examples, the *cum* clause, besides marking the time, gives the reason of the action expressed by the principal clause.

But the accessory notion is sometimes scarcely perceptible, the *cum* clause merely marking an action which as a whole, or in part, is *antecedent* to that of the principal clause; as, *He died after his return home: Cum domum rediisset vitā excēssit.*

170. Even when these tenses (past or pluperfect) are used in the English, *cum (when)* takes the indicative in the following cases:

(a) To mark two events strictly contemporaneous, *tum (then)* being frequently used in the principal clause to define the time more clearly; as, *When Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were the leaders of one party, the Sequani of the other: Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis p̄ncipēs erant Aedui, alterius Sēquanī. When the lieutenant was in Gaul Caesar was at Rome: Cum lēgātus in Galliā erat, tum Caesar Rōmae erat. Were the old men doing nothing when they were defending the state by their*

counsel and their influence? Senēs cum rempublicam cōsiliō et auctōritāte dēfendēbant, nihil agēbant?

In the last example the action expressed by the *cum* clause includes that of the main statement. (See section 168.)

(b) In a frequentative sense, to denote a repeated action preceding that of the main verb. In such cases the *pluperfect* indicative is used in the *cum* clause, and generally the *imperfect* indicative in the principal clause; as, *Whenever the ropes were caught by these and drawn in, they would be torn off: His cum fūnēs comprehēnsī adductīque erant, praerumpēbantur.*

(c) To introduce a clause, apparently subordinate, but really principal; as, *Mid-day was now approaching, when he hastened to the camp: Jam meridiēs appropinquābat, cum ad castra contendit.*

Here by an inversion the temporal clause becomes the main clause, and the main clause the temporal. The same peculiarity is found in the English sentence, which would read fully as well, *When mid-day was now approaching, he hastened to the camp.*

Cum in such a sentence is a co-ordinating conjunction, and has no influence on the mood of the verb: so *cum tum*, meaning *both and*.

EXERCISE 20.

1. Since this is the case I shall order the soldiers to storm the enemy's camp. 2. The enemy began to beat a retreat to the mountain, because it was not far from their camp. 3. Cæsar complained because the enemy were laying waste the territories of the allies of Rome. 4. Since he knew that Cicero was freed from imminent peril, he thought that without anxiety he might slacken his pace. 5. When the ships were drawing near the island, and were seen from the camp, so great a tempest arose that they could with difficulty hold their course. 6. Whenever our troops made a vigorous attack upon the enemy, they would retreat to their camp. 7. They all, whenever there is need, engage in war. 8. The flag had to be hung out, which was the signal when they were to rush to arms. 9. When the iron had become bent, they could neither draw it out, nor fight to any advantage. 10. The soldiers were proceeding with the greatest caution through the territories of the enemy, when the Helvetii suddenly attacked them in the rear. 11. Although this was the case, Cæsar determined to push forward by forced marches

against the enemy. 12. At the time when the enemy were preparing to storm our camp, Cæsar was leading the soldiers across the bridge. 13. In accepting the surrender of the Belgians, Cæsar was exercising his usual gentleness and humanity. 14. When our men saw that the camp was being filled with great numbers of the enemy, they immediately took to flight. 15. When Cæsar returns to the camp, our men will make an attack upon the enemy.

EXERCISE XXI.

USES OF DUM, DŌNEC, QUOAD, ANTEQUAM, PRIUSQUAM.

171. *Dum*, used in a conditional clause, with the force of *if*, or *provided that*, is always followed by the subjunctive; as,

Provided that (or so long as) the facts remain, let them fashion words according to their fancy: Dum rēs maneant verba fingant suō arbitrātū.

The proper negative in such a clause is *nē*.

172. *Dum*, *dōnec* and *quoad*, while, as long as, merely temporal, are followed by the indicative; as,

Therefore depart while you have the opportunity: Proinde abite dum est facultās. He resisted with the utmost bravery, as long as he was able: Quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit.

173. When *dum* (*while*) introduces a clause marking a longer period within which something else has taken place, it is followed by the present indicative, even when an historical tense is found in the principal clause; as, *While Cæsar was delaying in these regions, envoys came to him: Dum in hīs locīs Cæsar morātur, lēgātī ad eum vēnērunt.*

174. *Dum*, *dōnec* and *quoad*, meaning *until*, take the indicative to express *mere time*, and the subjunctive to express the further notion of *purpose, expectation, or end in view*; as,

I waited until he returned: Exspectāvī dōnec rediit. He determined that he ought not to wait until the Helvetii should reach the territories of the Santoni: Nōn exspectandum sibi statuit dum in Santonōs Helvetiī pervenirent. He determined to delay in Gaul until he learned that the winter camp had been fortified: Quoad munita hiberna cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōstituit.

175. *Antequam* and *priusquam* (*before*), to denote *mere priority of time*, take the indicative; to denote *purpose* or a *result prevented*, they are followed by the subjunctive; as,

They did not cease their flight before they reached the river Rhine: Neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum pervēnērunt. Before the enemy should recover from their panic Cæsar led his army into the territories of the Suessiones: Cæsar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre reciperent, in finēs Suessiōnum exercitum dūxit.

The use of *priusquam* is commoner than that of *antequam*, to express purpose or result prevented.

Cæsar does not use *antequam* at all, and with *priusquam* almost invariably uses the subjunctive.

N.B.—These words are compounds, made up of *ante* or *prius* and *quam* (*than*), which is used after the comparative idea in *ante* and *prius*. The parts are sometimes separated by other words, as in the first example. This separation is called *tnesis*.

EXERCISE 21.

1. While this was going on at the conference, word was brought to Cæsar that the enemy were riding up to our line and hurling stones at our men. 2. The Gauls decided they ought not to wait until Cæsar reached the river. 3. As long as the consul lived he was a friend to me and to the Roman people. 4. Before he should make an attack on the enemy he sent forward a scout to learn what their numbers were. 5. While Cæsar was delaying in this place for the purpose of getting vessels ready, the enemy sent ambassadors to him. 6. It was the height of madness to wait until the cavalry should return. 7. Before those who dwelt beyond the Rhine were informed of his arrival, he crossed that river. 8. Before he should make the attempt, he sent the lieutenant with a war-galley to find out about these matters. 9. Provided that Labienus is able to lead the troops across the bridge, we shall defeat the enemy without difficulty. 10. While these things were going on, the enemy who were in the camp took their departure. 11. While our men were getting the ships ready, it was reported that the camp had been attacked by the enemy. 12. Before I reached the city my friend had set out for home. 13. As long as he was in the city I remained at home. 14. Cæsar has determined

to attack the camp before the enemy are informed of his arrival.
15. Provided the enemy do not learn our numbers and position, we shall make an attack upon them to-morrow.

EXERCISE XXII.

PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.*

176. As the pronominal subject is really contained in the ending of the verb, the personal pronouns (*ego, nōs, tū, vōs, is, eī*) are seldom expressed except for *emphasis* or *contrast*; as,

I shall come to-morrow: Crās veniam. You will reach the city before night: Ante noctem ad urbem perveniēs. He attacked the enemy: Hostēs aggressus est. It is thundering: Tonat. I at any rate have proved myself a brave man: Ego certē mē fortem praestiti. I have injured the Gauls, you your fellow-citizens: Ego Gallis nocuī, tū cīvibus.

177. *Hīc* is called the demonstrative pronoun of the first person, and is used to denote something *near* (in time or place) or *belonging to* the speaker, or something *just mentioned* or *about to be mentioned*; as,

This present war: Hōc bellum. This place where we are: Hīc locus. This slave of mine: Hīc servus. Not far away there was a hill. This was surrounded by a marsh: Collis nōn longē aberat. Hunc palūs cingēbat. The character of the ground was as follows: Locī nātūra erat haec. In forensic language, hīc often means, "my client."

We occasionally find *hīc* used in a sort of condensed or pregnant sense in grammatical agreement with a word expressed, when logically it belongs to some word like *rēs* understood; as, *Through fear of this circumstance: Hōc metū (= Hūjus rei metū). Grief over this matter: Hīc dolor (= Dolor hūjus rei).*

178. *Iste* is the demonstrative of the second person, and is used to denote something near or belonging to the person addressed; as, *That book near you (or of yours): Iste liber. As a law term it means, "my opponent," "the defendant," and it also occasionally implies contempt.*

* N.B.—It will be understood that the words treated of in this exercise are pronouns when they are substitutes for nouns, and adjectives when they modify nouns.

179. *Ille* is the pronoun of the third person, and is used to denote something remote (from both the speaker and the person addressed), in time or place or thought ; as,

Those good old times : IIIa antiquitās. *The people of that country call them retainers* : Quōs IIII solduriōs appellant.

(a) *Ille*, as opposed to *hic*, usually signifies *the former*, while *hic* is translated by *the latter* ; as, *The rest who have remained at home support themselves and the others. The latter, again in their turn, are in arms the year following, while the former remain at home* : Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt. Hī rūsus invicem annō post in armīs sunt, IIII domī remanent.

N.B.—It is frequently used (generally in the plural) referring to persons just mentioned, who are not the subject of the last sentence, and then it may often be well rendered by an emphatic *he* or *they*, or by *the others*, *the enemy*, *the latter*.

(b) *Ille* is used pointing forward to an appositive or a relative clause explaining the demonstrative ; as, *This much he promised, that he would give them a safe passage through his territories* : Illud pollicitus est sē tūtum iter per finēs suōs datūrum. *That part which I have mentioned above* : Illa pars quam suprā commemorāvi.

Ille often means *that famous* or *well-known*.

180. *Is* is an unemphatic pronoun of mere reference. Unlike *hic*, *iste* and *ille*, it has no special force of its own. It is used to translate *he*, *she*, *him*, *her*, *it*, *they*, *them*, referring to some person or thing already mentioned. Besides this pronominal use, it is also found with the value of a demonstrative adjective, *this* or *that*.

EXAMPLES.—*Orgetorix was by far the wealthiest man amongst the Helvetii. He formed a league of the nobility* : Apud Helvētīōs longē ditissimus fuit Orgetorix. *Is* conjūratiōnem nōbilitātis fecit. *He acted in this way for the reason that he did not think he ought to engage with the enemy* : Id eā de causā faciēbat, quod cum hostibus dīmicandum nōn existimābat.

181. It is regularly used *as* or *with* the antecedent of the relative *quī* ; as, *The day that he had agreed upon came* : Ea diēs, quam cōstituerat, vēnit. *Those who had crossed the river to forage had not yet returned* : Hī quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns flūmen, nōndum redierant. *I am not the man to be frightened* : Neque *is* sum quī terrear.

182. *Is* is frequently no more emphatic than our definite, or even our indefinite article ; as, *He put the women in a place which the army could not approach*: *Mulierēs in eum locum conjecit quō exercitū aditus nōn erat.*

183. The demonstrative should not be used, as in English, to represent, with a genitive, a noun already mentioned ; as, *Between our army and that of the enemy*: *Inter nostrum exercitum atque hostium or Inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum.*

The noun is repeated if of a different case ; as, *Cæsar's army was greater than that of the Gauls*: *Caesaris exercitus Gallōrum exercitū erat mājor.*

N.B.—The demonstratives *hic*, *is* and *ille* often (like the relative) agree in gender with a predicate noun where we should expect them to be *neuter* ; as, *This is life*: *Hæc est vīta. He learned that that was merely a rumor*: *Eum esse rūmōrem modo cōgnōvit.*

184. *Ipse* (*self, very*) is an emphatic pronoun which may be used in apposition with nouns or with any of the personal pronouns ; as,

Cæsar himself (or *in person*): *Ipse* Caesar. *We ourselves*: *Nōs ipsi.* *He slew Dumnorix himself*: *Ipsum* Dumnorigem interfecit. *The very ground protected the barbarians*: *Locus ipse* erat præsidio barbaris.

(a) The genitive of *ipse* with or without the possessive adjectives may be used as the equivalent of *own* ; as, *My own fault*: *Mea ipsius* culpa. *In their own tongue these are called Celts*: *Hī ipsōrum* linguā *Celtae* appellantur.

(b) *Self* (*third person*), and *his, their*, etc., referring to the subject of the verb, are expressed by the proper case of *suū* and *suus* ; as, *Orgetorix slew himself*: *Orgetorix sē* interfecit.

(c) Where no emphasis is required, the Latin equivalents for *my, your, his, their*, etc., are generally omitted, unless ambiguity is likely to arise. (See Part I., page 13, footnote 2).

185. The one . . . the other is *alter . . . alter* ; some . . . others, *aliī . . . aliī* ; the one party . . . the other party, *alterī . . . alterī* ; as, *The one part of this village he gave up to the Gauls, the other he assigned to the cohorts*: *Alteram* partem *ējus* vicī *Gallis* concēssit, *alteram* cohortibus attribuit. *Some were carried back to the same place, others were thrown ashore at the lower part of the island*: *Aliae* eōdem referēbantur, *aliae* ad inferiōrem partem insulae dējiciēbantur. *Those of one division fled to the mountain,*

those of the other to the baggage: **Alterī** sē in montem recēpērunt, **alterī** ad impedimenta sē contulērunt.

NOTE.—Some were carried in one direction and some in another (literally, others were carried in another direction): **Aliī in aliam partem** ferēbantur. Some said one thing and some another: **Aliī aliud** dicēbant.

186. Others is expressed by *aliī*. To denote the others, the remainder, the rest, we use *cēterī* or *reliquī*: as, Others kept hurling javelins: **Aliī tēla** conjiciēbant. The rest of them were doing these things: **Hās rēs cēterī** faciēbant. They could do nothing without the other legions: **Nihil sine reliquīs** legiōnibus efficere potuērunt.

187. Some, any, some one, any one, as opposed to none, no one, is *aliquis* (adjective *aliquī*): as, In them there was some dignity: **In iis aliquīd** dignitātis fuit. There is no one without some hope: **Nēmo est sine aliquā** spē. It is no fault of yours if some have feared you: **Nōn est tua ūlla culpa sī tē aliquī** timuērunt.

188. (a) Some, when emphatic, is often expressed by *sunt quī*, *erant quī*, etc., followed by the subjunctive (see section 34); as, Some said this: **Erant quī** hōc dicerent.

(b) Some, some few, is frequently expressed by *nōnnūllī*; as, From some states envoys had been sent to the Germans: **Lēgātī ab nōnnūllīs** civitātibus ad Germānōs missī erant.

(c) Some one, some one or other, may also be expressed by *nesciō quis* (*quī*), which is treated as a single word; as, I saw some one standing near: **Nesciō quem** prope adstantem vīdī. It is used in affected ignorance to denote that something is small, mean or insignificant; as, He had raised some trifling rumor (some rumor or other): **Rūmōris nesciō quid** afflāverat.

Similarly *nesciō quōmodo*, *nesciō quō pactō*, etc., mean, in some way or other.

189. Any one or any (substantive) is *quisquam*, and any (adjective) is *ūllus* when all are excluded. This happens in sentences actually or virtually negative, such as rhetorical questions, comparative clauses, or clauses containing such words as *sine*, *vix* and *agrē*; as,

No one was found: **Neque** repertus est **quisquam**. Scarcely any one would say this: **Vix quisquam** hōc dixerit. He was braver than any of the Belgae: **Fortior** erat quam Belgārum **quisquam**. The battle was without any danger: **Proelium sine ūllō** periculō fuit.

N.B.—Instead of *quisquam* the indefinite *quis* (*quī*) is generally

used after *sī, nisi, num, nē, quō, quantō*; as, *He ordered the soldiers not to hurl back any weapon at the enemy: Militibus imperāvīt nē quod tēlum in hostēs rējicerent.*

190. *Any*, in the affirmative sense, when all are included is *quīvis* or *quīlibet*, the latter expressing less of deliberation than the former; as, *It is better for us to suffer any fate at the hands of the Romans: Nōbis praestat quamvīs fortunam ā populō Rōmānō patī. We ought to encounter any danger whatsoever: Quodlibet adīre perīculum oportet.*

191. *Some, some one, certain, a certain one*, is *quīdam*, often not more emphatic than the English indefinite article; as, *One of the soldiers: Quīdam ex militibus. Certain young men: Quīdam adūlēscentēs.*

192. *Each, every (of more than two)*, is *quisque*; *each of two* is *uterque*. *Which (of more than two)* is *quis*, *which (of two)* is *uter*. All these are used substantively with a pronoun and adjectively with a noun.

EXAMPLES.—*Every man was seeking for himself the foremost place in the line of march: Sibi quisque primum itineris locum petēbat. On each bank of the river they had villages: Ad utramque ripam flūminis vicōs habēbant. Each of us: Nostrum uterque. Which of those two conquered? Uter eōrum superāvīt?*

N.B.—*The children of all the noblest citizens: Nōbilissimī cūjusque liberī. The greatest antiquity (i.e., priority of time): Antīquissimum quodque tempus. At the earliest moment possible: Prīmō quōque tempore. Every tenth man: Decimus quisque.*

EXERCISE 22.

1. I remained at Rome for three years, but you returned at once to Gaul. 2. The Nervii and the Aduatuci were waging war against Rome: the former had taken up their position on the other side of the river Sabis, the latter were fortifying their own town. 3. Some said that Cæsar himself would not dare to lead the army across that river. 4. This is a custom of the Gauls, that they compel travellers even against their will to stop, and they inquire what everyone of them has heard concerning each matter. 5. If any of the Gauls is captured, he will be put to death by the Roman cavalry. 6. If the defeat and flight of the Gauls alarms anyone, he can learn that Ariovistus defeated them by stratagem rather than by valor. 7. Before he should make any attempt he ordered Divitiacus to be summoned before him. 8. From the

shore they saw some leaving the ship, one at a time. 9. The ships were made entirely out of oak, to endure any (amount of) violence and buffeting. 10. They thought they could gain the victory without a (=any) wound. 11. Let each of us come to that place with an army; I shall not come in (any) other manner. 12. Scarcely anyone was found to say that this soldier was far braver than any of the Gauls. 13. The enemy were fleeing in different directions. 14. The one set out to Cæsar in Gaul, the other led his army into winter quarters at Rome. 15. There was no doubt that he with his own hand (=himself) had inflicted death upon himself.

EXERCISE XXIII.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

193. The relative pronoun not only refers to some noun or pronoun—its antecedent—but also introduces a separate clause which it joins adjectively to the antecedent by way of limitation or description; as,

The bridge, which was at Geneva, he orders to be destroyed:
Pontem quī erat ad Genāvam, jubet rescindi.

On account of this connective force, which is its special characteristic, the relative is often called the *conjunctive* pronoun.

194. The uses of *quī* in final and consecutive clauses have been already noticed. (See sections 25 and 34.)

195. On account of the fondness of the Latin writers for indicating a visual connection between what follows and what goes before, we find *quī* (pronoun or adjective) used instead of a demonstrative at the beginning of a sentence, with or without a conjunction (see section 8, N.B.); as,

These Cæsar took the greatest pains to spare: **Quōs** Cæsar diligentissimē cōservāvit. *When Cæsar ascertained this, he ordered the soldiers to return to the camp:* **Quod** ubi Cæsar rescit, ut ad castra reverterentur militibus imperāvit. *For this reason the Helvetii surpass the other Gauls:* **Quā** dē causā Helvētii reliquōs Gallōs præcēdunt.

196. The relative is also used to introduce clauses of *condition, concession* and *cause* or *reason*; *as*,

If any one should put trust in this man he would make a great mistake: Erret longē quī huic fidem habeat. *Though Cicero all the previous days had kept the soldiers in the camp, on the seventh day he sends five cohorts to forage*: Cicero, quī per omnēs superiōrēs diēs militēs in castrīs continuisset, septimō diē quīnque cohortēs frumentātum mittit. *It is not without divine aid that the Romans carry on war, since they are able to move forward with such swiftness engines of so great a height*: Nōn Rōmānī sine ope divīnā bellum gerunt, quī tantae altitudinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possint.

In these uses quī takes the subjunctive.

197. The following peculiarities of the relative should be observed:

(a) In Latin the antecedent is frequently omitted, or rather contained in the relative; *as, They do that which (=what) they are ordered*: Quod jūssī sunt, faciunt. *He sent men to find out*: Misit quī cōgnōserent.

(b) Occasionally the substance of the previous or the following clause constitutes the antecedent; *as, A thanksgiving of fifteen days was decreed, that which had fallen to no one's lot previously*: Diēs quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nullī. *They feared that, as actually happened, they might be surrounded by the enemy*: Timēbant nē, quod factum est, ab hoste circumvenirentur.

(c) Often we find the antecedent repeated in the relative clause; *as, Dust was seen in that direction in which the legion had made its march*: Pulvis in eā parte vidēbātur quam in partem legiō iter fēcerat.

(d) The antecedent is often incorporated into the relative clause (which comes first) and omitted in the other, being represented in the latter by a demonstrative (*hic* or *is*); *as, That part which had brought disaster on the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty*: Quae pars calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit.

In examples like this and the preceding (c), the relative has an adjectival force.

(e) The relative is sometimes attracted into agreement with a word in the predicate (see section 9, d); *as, The Belgians who (literally, which), I have said, form the third part of Gaul, have formed a league against Rome*: Belgae, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem diximus, contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāvērunt.

Observe that in this last sentence the relative clause in Latin is treated as the object of the verb *diximus*, while in the English *I have said* is thrown in parenthetically without affecting the syntax of the adjectival clause.

(f) *As* (relative pronoun, adjective or adverb) after *the same, such, so great, as great, so many, as many, etc.*, is represented in Latin by the relatives *quī, quālis, quantus, quot, etc.*, after *īdem, tālis, tantus, and tot*; as, *This is the same as (=identical with) that*: *Hōc est idem quod illud. They are such (=of the same character) as they have ever been*: *Tālēs sunt quālēs semper fuērunt. The army was not so great as I had before seen it*: *Tantus nōn erat exercitus quantum antea videram.*

Idem may be followed by *atque* or *ac*, instead of by *quī*.

(g) In the case of two successive relative clauses modifying the same antecedent, the relative may be omitted in the second clause (if the two relatives would be in the same case, or where the second relative, if expressed, would be in the nominative or accusative), or it may be repeated, or its place in the second clause may be taken by a demonstrative; as, *He also prevails upon Dumnorix, who held the chief authority and was very popular with the common people*: *Item Dumnorigī quī principātum obtinēbat ac (or, ac quī) māximē plēbī acceptus erat, persuādet. He has sent a man whom we neither fear nor obey*: *Hominem, quem neque timēmus neque eī parēmus, mīsīt.*

(h) When in the English sentence the antecedent is modified by a superlative, or by an emphatic adjective of number or amount, the Latin equivalent for such superlative or other adjective is usually placed in the relative clause; as, *They have lost the bravest leader they had*: *Ducem, quem habēbant fortissimum amiserunt. He sent the few soldiers he had with him to our assistance*: *Militēs, quōs paucōs sēcum habuit, nōbīs auxiliō mīsīt.*

(i) Finally in Latin (unlike the English usage) the relative is always expressed; as, *I saw the soldier he had sent*: *Militem quem miserat, vidī. He saw the boy I gave the book to*: *Puerum vidit cui librum dederam.*

EXERCISE 23.

1. The ships which he had built in the previous summer, he ordered to assemble at once. 2. And no one was ever found who would refuse to die for his native land. 3. Having arranged everything for their departure, they fixed a day on which all were to assemble at the banks of that river. 4. He said there were two routes by which they would be able to go out from their home.

5. This man, since he (= *quī*) had been elected through the agency of the priests, Cæsar ordered to hold the power. 6. Cæsar, although for three days he had permitted not even a camp follower to pass beyond the works, on the fourth day sent two legions to make an attack upon the enemy. 7. The standard bearer (*use quī without antecedent*) of the tenth legion threw himself out of the ship, and began to carry the eagle against the enemy. 8. Vesontio, which is the largest town of the Sequani, was about ten miles distant from Cæsar's camp. 9. Cæsar saw that the same thing would happen as had happened on the previous days. 10. He sent the bravest horsemen he had with him to the assistance of the struggling soldiers. 11. They will not strive with the same eagerness as they are accustomed to exhibit in battles on land. 12. If we had no precedent for this course of action, I should judge it a most glorious thing (for one) to be established and handed down to posterity. 13. The scouts saw the horsemen Cæsar had sent to the assistance of the Aedui. 14. He sent in advance the soldiers Cæsar had promised to give the corn to. 15. Cæsar is not the man to send scouts to learn where the enemy are.

EXERCISE XXIV.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

198. The present tense is used of what is going on now at the present moment ; as,

Cæsar is enrolling two legions : Cæsar duās legiōnēs cōnserībit.

It is to be observed that *cōnserībit* translates not only *is enrolling*, but also *enrols* and *does enrol*.

(a) The present is frequently used in descriptions of past events, in animated narrative (the *historical present*) ; as,

Cæsar makes haste to take his departure from the city : Cæsar mātūrat ab urbe proficisci.

(b) It is also used to express a general truth, or a continued, repeated, or habitual action or state ; as, *The gods sometimes grant impunity* : Dī interdum impūnitātem concēdunt. *They do not permit wine to be brought in* : Vinum importārī nōn sinunt.

(c) With *jamdūdum*, *jamdiū*, and *jamprīdem*, the present is used instead of the perfect to denote what has been (and still is) going on ; as, *He has long been collecting forces* : *Jamdiū cōpiās comparat.*

199. The imperfect tense is used to denote what was going on in past time, and corresponds in general to the English past of a *continuous* or *progressive* action ; as, -

He was wintering (or *wintered*, or *did winter*) *in Gaul* : *In Galliā hiemābat.*

(a) The imperfect is also used to denote a repeated or habitual course of action (translated by *used to*, *would*, etc.) ; as, *He used to have the greatest confidence in this legion* : *Huic legiōnī cōfidēbat māximē.* *They would retreat into the camp* : *In castra sē recipiēbant.*

(b) It is also used to denote an *attempted* or an *incipient* action ; as, *The enemy began to hurl their weapons* : *Hostēs tēla conjiciēbant.* *They attempted to prevent our march* : *Nōs itinere prohibēbant.*

(c) It is used in the description of a locality where something took place ; as, *Before that town stretched a plain about three miles in length* : *Ante id oppidum plānitēs circiter millia passuum tria in longitudinem patēbat.*

(d) In describing battles and military manœuvres, the imperfect is essentially the tense of description, as opposed to the mere narrative. It is used to express the actions, circumstances or feelings antecedent to or accompanying the main action which is indicated by the aorist-perfect. For a good example of such use, see *Cæsar*, *Bell. Gall.*, II. 24.

(e) With *jamdiū*, *jamdūdum* and *jamprīdem*, the imperfect is used with the force of a pluperfect ; as, *He had long been carrying on war* : *Jamprīdem bellum gerēbat.*

200. The future tense is used to denote what is going to take place at some time after the present : that is, after the time at which the statement is made ; as,

Cæsar will take the city by storm : *Caesar urbem expūgnābit.*

In English we often use the present (especially with *if* and *when*) in a loose way for the future. In Latin the future is the proper tense when the actions are contemporaneous ; as, *I shall see him when he is at home* : *Cum domī erit, eum vidēbō.*

201. The Latin perfect does duty for two English tenses :

(1) It is used to denote an action completed at the present moment, or within a portion of time of which the present is a part. It is then translated by means of *have*, and is the equivalent of the English present perfect; as, *He has returned home*: *Domum rediit*.

N.B.—It is to be observed that in English we occasionally use the verb *to be* as an auxiliary for the perfect tense, especially with intransitive verbs of motion, and with other verbs in the passive; as, *He is gone home*: *Domum iit*. *The messengers are killed*: *Nūntiī interfectī sunt*. So, *He was gone* = *He had gone*.

(2) It is the tense of narrative, our *aeorist* or *past indefinite*. In this sense it is used to show that something was done in the past, without reference to the *continuance* or *completeness* of the action; as, *He sent forward the cavalry*: *Equitātum praemīsit*.

202. The perfect is used in subordinate clauses to denote a repeated action, preceding that of the main verb, which is in the present; as, *Whenever they have worked (or work) their way in between the squadrons of cavalry, they leap from their chariots and fight on foot*: *Cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedis dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur*.

203. Latin has something almost equivalent to a perfect tense in the use of the present tense of *habēō*, followed by an object which is modified by a perfect participle passive in the way of an accusative predicate adjective. These phrases literally express only the *possession of the result* of a past action, but in some cases they are expressions for the action itself and approach the value of the regular perfect; as, *He has very many states attached to him by reason of his kindness*: *Plūrimās civitatēs suō beneficiō habet obstrictās*. *This I have learnt through messengers*: *Hōc per nūntiōs compertum habēō*.

Compare the transition from *I have the letter written*, to *I have written the letter*.

N.B.—Some perfects, such as *meminī*, *nōvī* and *cōnsuērī*, have the force of presents, *I remember*, *I know*, *I am accustomed*. Their pluperfects have the value of imperfects. *Nōscō* = *I learn*; *Cōnsuēscō* = *I become accustomed*.

204. The pluperfect tense is used to mark the act as completed at some stated time in the past; as,

They had already reached the territories of the Aedui: *Jam in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant*.

(a) The pluperfect is used in subordinate clauses to denote a repeated action in past time preceding that of the main verb, which is usually in the imperfect; as, *Whenever any cohort left the*

square (literally, circle) and made an attack, the enemy would make a most rapid retreat: *Cum quæpiam cohors ex orbe excēsserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant.*

(b) A past tense of *habeō* is used with a perfect participle passive in agreement with the object, to make a phrase nearly equivalent to a pluperfect (see section 203, above); as, *He had collected cavalry from all the province: Equitātum ex omnī prōvinciā coāctum habēbat (nearly equal to coēgerat). They were persuaded (literally, they had it persuaded to themselves) that the Romans were attempting to annex that district to the neighboring province: Rōmānōs ea loca finitimæ prōvinciæ adjungere cōnārī, sibi persuāsum habēbant.*

In the last example *persuāsum* agrees with the clause *Rōmānōs . . . cōnārī*, which is the object of *habēbant*.

(c) In letters the imperfect and pluperfect are often used for the present and perfect, there being an implied reference to the time when the letter is received; as, *I have nothing to write. For I have heard nothing new, and I have already answered all your letters: Nihil habēbam quod scriberem. Neque enim novī quidquam audieram et ad tuās omnēs epistolās rescripseram.*

In a somewhat similar way Cæsar (thinking of the reader) sometimes uses the pluperfect in alluding to some fact or action already mentioned, where we should expect the perfect; as, *The Belgians who, as we have said, occupy (literally, are) the third part of Gaul, formed a league against the Roman people: Belgæ quam tertiam esse Galliæ partem dīxerāmus contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāvērunt.*

205. The future perfect is used to denote that the act will be completed at some stated time in the future; as,

When Cæsar shall have returned (returns) to the camp, we shall make an attack upon the enemy: Cum Caesar ad castra redierit, in hostēs impetum faciēmus.

(a) In English we almost invariably use the present (occasionally the perfect) in a loose way for the future perfect, especially in clauses introduced by *if, when, whoever, whatever*, etc. In Latin the future perfect is the proper tense when the action of the subordinate verb, though future, is antecedent to that of the principal verb; as, *Whoever does that will be punished: Quī id fēcerit supplicio afficiētur.*

(b) The future perfect is sometimes used to denote a prompt or speedy action, and may be rendered by *shall (or will) be found to have*; as, *I at any rate shall be found to have done my duty to the state: Ego certē meum reipublicæ officium præstiterō.*

EXERCISE 24.

1. To this legion Cæsar had shown especial indulgence, and he placed the greatest reliance (on it) on account of its bravery. 2. On the following day they move their camp from that place. Cæsar does the same, and sends all the cavalry in advance. 3. Now the Britons call (it) a town whenever they secure the impassable forests with a rampart and a trench. 4. Whenever our cavalry rushed out into the fields, the British leader would engage with them, to the great peril of our horse. 5. If you assist them with corn or with anything else, I shall regard you in the same light as the Helvetii. 6. If Cæsar is at the head of the Roman army, he will easily defeat the Gauls. 7. Before midnight the enemy will have laid aside their arms. 8. For many years he had all the revenues of the Aedui leased at a small price. 9. He marched through the forest of Ardennes, which was the largest of all Gaul, and extended from the banks of the Rhine to the Nervii. 10. When they saw that the tower was approaching the walls, they sent ambassadors to Cæsar concerning peace. 11. For the reasons I have mentioned, Cæsar had determined to cross the Rhine. 12. Within ten days after (literally, *within which*) the material had begun to be brought together, the whole work was finished, and the army led across. 13. The enemy had already reached the territories of the Aedui, and were laying waste their lands. 14. Cæsar in person proceeds by forced marches into Italy, and there levies two legions. 15. His brother, who had already left the field, perceiving this at a distance, threw himself in front of the enemy and was killed.

 EXERCISE XXV.

DIFFERENT FORMS OF THE NOUN CLAUSE.

206. A noun (or substantive) clause is one that takes the place and discharges the functions of a substantive, as *subject* or *object* of a verb (including the infinitive), or as an *appositive* to some other word in the sentence.

Most of the varieties of this clause have been already dealt

with, but it is considered worth while, for convenience of reference, to treat of them together.

N.B.—The *accusative and infinitive* is treated as a clause, since, though from the English standpoint it would be considered a *phrase*, it represents our noun sentence, with or without the conjunction *that*.

207. The commonest way of expressing in Latin an English noun clause is by means of an infinitive with its subject accusative.

This is especially the case with verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, and with expressions composed of the third person singular of the verb *to be* and an adjective. (See section 12.)

EXAMPLES.—

(a) *Subject*.—*It has been said that the Gauls hold this part*: **Hanc partem Gallōs obtinēre** dictum est. *It was dangerous for the Germans to cross the Rhine*: **Germānōs Rhēnum trānsire** periculōsum erat.

Notice that neither the introductory *it* nor *for* is translated into Latin by a separate word.

(b) *Object*.—*They thought they possessed limited territories*: **Angustōs sē finēs habēre** arbitrābantur.

(c) *Appositive*.—*This report was brought to Cæsar, that they were attempting to march through our province*: **Caesarī id nūntiātum est, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī**.

208. Instead of the *accusative and infinitive*, a clause with *ut*, *nē*, *quān* or *quōminus*, is found where the noun clause involves a notion of *purpose* or *result*. Such clauses, in origin adverbial, have come to be looked upon as possessing a substantive force, the final or consecutive notion being in many cases almost imperceptible. (See sections 27, 33, 154, 156, 157 and 158.)

EXAMPLES.—

I. PURPOSE.

(a) *Subject*.—*The soldiers were ordered to attack the enemy*: **Militibus imperātum est ut hostēs aggredereentur**.

Observe the gender of noun phrases and clauses.

(b) *Object*.—*He prevented their leaving the city*: **Effecit nē ex urbe exirent**.

(c) *Appositive.*—*They attempt to carry out that which they had determined on, namely, to leave their territories: Id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus exeant.*

N.B.—We sometimes find the subject of a substantive clause anticipated by a noun or pronoun standing as the direct object (accusative of anticipation) of the verb in the principal sentence, the dependent clause thus becoming a restrictive appositive to the direct object; as, *They had fears about the corn supply, that it might not be conveniently brought in: Rem frūmentāriam ut satis commodē supportārī posset timent.*

II. RESULT.

(a) *Subject.*—*It happened that there was a full moon: Accidit ut esset plēna lūna.*

(b) *Object.*—*He brought it about that supplies could be conveyed to him without danger: Efficiēbat ut commeātus posset sine periculō portārī ad eum.*

(c) *Appositive.*—*The day had this result, that a very great number of the enemy were wounded: Diēs hunc habuit ēventum ut māximus hostium numerus vulnerārētur.*

209. If the sentence contains the notion of *cause*, or if the fact is to be especially emphasised, we may have a clause introduced by *quod*. (See section 165, b.)

EXAMPLES.—

(a) *Subject.*—*There was added that they grieved that their children had been taken from them: Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstractōs dolēbant.*

(b) *Object.*—*He makes the complaint that he has been abandoned: Quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.*

In this example it will be observed that the noun clause shades into an adverbial one, the *object* and *cause* being identical.

(c) *Appositive.*—*A most fortunate thing happened, that on the morrow of that day the Germans came into the camp: Opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē ējus diēi Germānī in castra vēnērunt.*

N.B.—Clauses with *quod* are sometimes found at the beginning of sentences to repeat the substance of something already stated or referred to, when the *quod* may often be best translated by *as to* or *as to the fact that*; as, *As to your boasting so insultingly of your victory, it comes to the same thing: Quod vestrā victōriā tam insolenter glōriāminī, eōdem pertinet. As to your threat that you will not disregard the wrongs of the Aedui, no one has contended*

with me, except to his own destruction : **Quod** mihi dēnūntiās tē Aeduōrum injūriās nōn neglētūrum, nēmo mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit.

In the first of these examples the *quod* clause is subject of *pertinet*; in the second it is equivalent to a phrasal adverbial accusative of reference.¹

210. If the subordinate clause is introduced by an interrogative word, the clause takes the form of a dependent or indirect question. (See section 43.)

EXAMPLES.—

(a) *Subject.*—It cannot be determined with the eyes in what direction it flows : **Oculis in utram partem fluat** jūdicārī nōn potest.

(b) *Object.*—He found out what was being done : Cōgnōvit **quid fieret**.

(c) *Appositive.*—This is the real question, whether he has returned : **Illud** quaeritur **num redierit**.

211. Some verbs have more than one construction, the difference of construction, in most cases, representing a difference of meaning.

EXAMPLES.—

(a) *The majority decided to defend the camp* : **Placuit mājorī partī dēfendere castra**. *He decided to send ambassadors to Ariovistus* : **Placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret**.

(b) *It was added that they bore the tempest more easily* : **Accēdēbat ut tempestātem ferrent facilius**. (See also section 209, a.)

(c) *They determine that these should leave the town* : **Cōstituunt ut hī oppidō excēdant**. *They determined that it was best for each man to return to his home* : **Cōstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī**.

(d) *He was informed that all these states had been brought under the sway of the Roman people* : **Certior factus est omnēs eās eivitatēs in diciōnem populī Rōmānī esse reductās**. *He directs the soldiers to cease the fight for a little* : **Militēs certiōrēs facit paulisper intērmitterent proelium**.

1. The explanation of the syntax of such clauses as the last is probably this, the *quod* was originally a relative pronoun, accusative of reference, with the clause in apposition to it, then the pronominal force was lost, the *quod* being used as a mere introductory conjunction, and the clause taking its present value of an adverbial phrase. In the first example the *quod* was probably originally in the nominative. Compare the origin of the English conjunction *that*.

(e) *He orders the soldiers to attack the camp: Militibus imperat ut castra oppugnarent. He orders these light galleys to be built: Hās actuariās imperat fieri.* (With *imperō*, the accusative and infinitive is found, as a rule, only when the infinitive is passive.)

(f) *They do not suffer the rest to make a stand: Reliquōs cōsistere nōn patiuntur.* (This is the usual construction with *patior*). *The custom of the Roman people did not allow him to abandon the allies: Nōn populī Rōmānī cōsuetūdō patiēbātur utī sociōs dēsereret.*

(g) *He was ordered not to leave the camp: Nūntiātum est eī nē castra relinqueret.* (See also section 207, c.)

N.B.—It will be observed that verbs of determining, saying, directing, etc., take the accusative and infinitive, when the original words of the speaker would be in the indicative expressing a statement, and the subjunctive with *ut* (sometimes omitted) or *nē*, when the original words would express a command in the imperative or subjunctive. See-section 214, a, (1).

EXERCISE 25.

1. He felt that it would result in great danger to the province to (*ut*) have enemies of the Roman people (as) neighbors. 2. In the meantime he sent (messengers) to the cavalry officers to announce that they were not to provoke the enemy to battle. 3. As to your statement that the soldiers will not advance, I am not at all disturbed by that circumstance. 4. By means of messengers he informs Cæsar what he thinks ought to be done. 5. There was added to this that he had already said in the assembly that the chief power of the state was being conferred upon him by Cæsar. 6. It happened that some of the soldiers were intercepted by the sudden approach of the cavalry. 7. It was reported that Cæsar had given orders to the soldiers to storm the camp of the enemy. 8. The result was that he was unable to learn what tribes inhabited the island. 9. They made the complaint that the enemy were laying waste their territories. 10. This had been reported to Cæsar, that the enemy had made an attempt to cross the river. 11. He was of the opinion that it would be very dangerous to the province that the enemy should become accustomed to cross the Rhine. 12. He answered that he did not know why the soldiers had received orders to attack the town. 13. There is no doubt that the Helvetii are the most powerful of

all Gaul. 14. They do not doubt that he will inflict the most severe punishment upon the prisoners. 15. The enemy were trying to prevent our men from crossing the bridge.

EXERCISE XXVI.

INDIRECT NARRATION—ORATIO OBLIQUA.

212. *Direct discourse* (*ōrātiō rēcta*) is that form of speech which gives the exact words of the original speaker or writer ; as,

“I,” said he, “will come to the city”: “Ego,” inquit, “ad urbem veniam.”

213. *Indirect discourse* (*ōrātiō oblīqua*) gives the substance of the thought or words of some other person, or even of the speaker or writer under other circumstances ; as,

He said he would come to the city: Dixit sē ad urbem esse ventūrum. The latter is the usual construction in Latin with all *verba sentiendī et declārandī* except *inquit*.

214. The following are the principal rules for changing *ōrātiō rēcta* into *ōrātiō oblīqua* :—

(a) With regard to verbs :

(1) In principal clauses, statements and denials are expressed by the *infinitive*, so also such rhetorical questions as in the direct form would have the indicative mood in the first or third person ; other questions, also wishes, commands and prohibitions, by the *subjunctive*.

(2) In subordinate clauses the subjunctive is the proper mood. As a general rule the historical tenses are used.

N.B.—If for any reason the subjunctive is used in the direct narration, that mood is, of course, retained in the indirect, changing, if necessary, the tense and person.

(3) With regard to tenses in subordinate clauses after secondary tenses, the present, imperfect and future of direct narrative are represented by the imperfect subjunctive, and the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect, by the pluperfect subjunctive.

(b) With regard to pronouns. Since the exact words of the speaker are not given, it follows that only pronouns of the third

person will be found (unless the matter quoted refers to the person reporting or the person to whom it is reported).

(1) *Ego, nōs*, are changed to *sē* (in the nominative *ipse, ipsi*); *meus, noster*, to *suus*.

(2) *Tū, vōs*, are changed to *ille* (sometimes *is*), *illi*; *tuis, vester*, to *illius, illorum, ipsius, ipsorum*.

(3) *Hic* and *iste* will become *ille* or *is*.

(c) With regard to adverbs. Adverbs denoting present time will be changed to those marking the past. So, adverbs referring to *this* place will be changed to those denoting *that* place.

Nunc, hodiē, hic, herī, crās become respectively *tum* or *tunc*, *illō diē, ibi* or *illuc, -pridī, postridī*.

215. We occasionally find real or apparent exceptions to the above rules.

(a) For the sake of greater vividness, in the subordinate and imperative clauses the primary tenses are used instead of the historical. This is especially the case when there is a statement of a general truth, and naturally also when the governing verb is in a primary tense.

(b) The hortative subjunctive in the first person plural is usually changed into the gerundive with *esse*, the subject becoming the dative of the apparent agent; as, *Let us cross the river, said they: Flūmen sibi trāseundum esse dīxērunt*. Their exact words would be, *Flūmen trāseāmus*.

(c) For the sake of vividness (or owing to the carelessness of the writer), the pronouns and adverbs of the direct narration are often retained. Frequently, instead of *ille*, the proper name is used to represent the pronoun of the second person. Caesar often uses *nōs* and *noster* in speaking of the Roman people, even when the words are from the mouth of a foreigner.

(d) The pronouns of indirect narration are sometimes interchanged (e.g., *sē* for *eum*), and occasionally forms of the same pronoun are used in referring to two different persons in the same clause, generally where no ambiguity arises.

(e) An apparent exception is found in the use of the indicative in subordinate clauses introduced parenthetically or by way of explanation, giving the thought of the writer, and forming no part of the reported speech; as, *They bring back word that there is in that neighborhood a forest of vast extent, which is called Bacēnis: Referunt silvam esse ibi infinitā māgnitūdine, quae appellātur Bacēnis*. Here *quae appellātur Bacēnis*, is an explanatory clause added by the writer, and it forms no part of the report.

Very rarely we find the indicative used in a clause that forms part of the reported speech; it seems to make the fact more prominent.

(f) It must be borne in mind that the relative is sometimes equivalent to a demonstrative, and in such case the clause introduced by it may have the construction of a principal sentence; as, *From this it could be judged what an advantage there was in undaunted courage*: *Ex quō jūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōstantia.*

(g) In *quam* clauses after a comparative (including clauses introduced by *antequam* and *priusquam*), the verb and its subject are sometimes assimilated to an accusative and infinitive in the preceding clause. The verb after *quam* is frequently omitted, its subject remaining, expressed in the accusative case.

216. In *informal* or *virtual* *ōrātiō obliqua* (that is, where the verb *sentīendī* or *dēclārāndī* is not found in the Latin, but where in the translation we supply some such notion as, *as he said*, *as they thought*, etc.), the subjunctive is usually found in the subordinate clauses; as, *He gave me all the books that (as he said) his father had left*: *Omnēs librōs quōs pater suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit. The enemy were waiting (intending to attack) if our men should cross the marsh*: *Palūdem sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs expectābant.* Some treat such a clause as *sī . . . trānsīrent* in the last example, as an indirect question.

When the indicative is used in the subordinate clause of such a sentence, the writer makes the statement on his own responsibility.

217. *Oratio obliqua* may take the form of (a) an indirect statement, (b) an indirect command, (c) an indirect question, in each of which the subjunctive will be found in the subordinate clauses; as,

(a) *He said that the cavalry would make an attack on the enemy who were on the other side of the river*: *Dixit equitēs in hostēs quī trāns flūmen essent impetum factūrōs.*

(b) *He ordered the cavalry to attack the enemy who were on the other side of the river*: *Militibus imperāvit ut in hostēs, quī trāns flūmen essent, impetum facerent.*

(c) *He asked the numbers of the enemy who were on the other side of the river*: *Quot essent hostēs quī trāns flūmen essent rogāvit.*

218. Frequently the verb of saying, ordering or asking, is not expressed, but is implied from the context; as, *He sends an ambassador to Caesar (saying), that unless aid is sent to him, he can hold*

out no longer : Nūntium ad Caesarem mittit : nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

219. The following examples (which should be carefully studied) illustrate most of the above rules and exceptions not already exemplified :

(1) *Direct.*—I know these facts are true, and no one feels more deeply pained on that account than I. (Ego) sciō haec esse vĕra, nec quisquam ex hōc plūs quam ego dolōris capiō.

Indirect.—(He said that) he knew those facts were true, and that no one felt more deeply pained on that account than he did. (Dixit) scīre sē illa esse vĕra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere.

(2) *Direct.*—Do not, O soldiers, abandon the city, I shall not fail your friends. Nōlīte, milītēs, urbem relinquere, ego vestrīs amīcīs nōn deerō.

Indirect.—(He ordered the soldiers) not to leave the city, that he would not fail their friends. (Militibus imperāvit) nē urbem relinquerent, sē amīcīs illōrum nōn defutūrum.

Observe how the vocative may be turned in the indirect speech.

(3) *Direct.*—As to your former demand for a conference, that may be carried out with my consent, since you have drawn nearer, and I think I can do it without danger. Quod antea dē colloquīō postulāvistī, hōc per mē fieri licet, quoniam propius accēssistī, mēque hōc sine periculō facere posse existimō.

Indirect.—(Ariovistus sends envoys to Cæsar [saying]); as to his former demand for a conference, that might be carried out with his consent, since he had drawn nearer, and he thought he could do it without danger. (Ariovistus lēgātōs ad Cæsarem mittit) quod antea dē colloquīō postulasset, id per sē fieri licēre, quoniam propius accēssisset, sēque id sine periculō facere posse existimāre.

(4) *Direct.*—I came into Gaul before the Roman people did. Never before this time has the Roman army passed beyond the boundaries of the province of Gaul. What Ego prius in Galliam vēnī quam populus Rōmānus. Nunquam ante hōc tempus exercitus populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finēs ēgressus est.

do you mean? Why do you come into my possessions? This part of Gaul is mine just as that part yonder belongs to the Roman people (or to you).

Indirect.—(Ariovistus answered) that he had come into Gaul before the Roman people had, that never before that time had the Roman army passed beyond the boundaries of the province of Gaul. What did he mean? Why did he come into his possessions? That part of Gaul (where they then were) was his, just as that part (off in the distance) belonged to the Roman people.

(5) *Direct.*—As to your threat against me, O Cæsar, that you will not overlook the wrongs done the Aedui, no one has ever contended with me without destruction to himself. Come on whenever you please.

Indirect.—(To this Ariovistus replied), that as to the threat Cæsar was making against him, to the effect that he would not overlook the wrongs done to the Aedui, no one had ever contended with him (Ariovistus) without destruction to himself; let him come on whenever he pleased.

(6) *Direct.*—There are some whose influence with the common people is very great, who, in their private capacity, have more weight than the magistrates themselves.

Quid tibi vis? Cūr in meās possēssiōnēs venīs? Prōvincia mea hæc est Gallia, sicut illa populī Rōmānī (or vestra).

(Ariovistus respondit) sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Nunquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finēs ēgressum (esse). Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possēssiōnēs veniret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam sicut illam nostram.

Quod mihi, Cæsar, dēnūntiās tē Aeduōrum injuriās nōn neglētūrum, nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contēdit. Cum volēs, congregere.

(Ad hæc Ariovistus respondit), quod sibi Cæsar dēnūntiāret sē Aeduōrum injuriās nōn neglētūrum, nēmīnem sēcum sine suā perniciē contēdisse. Cum vellet, congregerētur.

Sunt nōnnūllī quōrum auctoritās apud plēbem plurimum valet, quī privātim plūs possunt quam ipsī magistrātūs.

Indirect.—(He declares) that there are some whose influence with the common people is very great, who, in their private capacity, have more weight than the magistrates themselves.

(7) *Direct.*—Less hesitation is caused me on this account, because I remember those matters which you have mentioned, and I feel the more indignant in proportion as they happened without the desert of the Roman people; but if I am willing to forget the former insult, can I blot out the memory of recent wrongs as well? As to your boasting so insultingly about your victory, and your wondering that you have so long escaped punishment for your misdeeds, they amount to the same thing; for, in order that men may grieve the more heavily from a change of circumstances, the immortal gods are accustomed to grant greater prosperity sometimes, and a longer impunity, to those whom they wish to punish for their sins.

Indirect.—(Caesar replied) that less hesitation was caused him on this account, because he remembered those matters which they had mentioned, and that he felt the more indignant in proportion as they had happened without the desert of the Roman people, but if he were willing to forget the former insult, could he (he

(Prōpōnīt) esse nōnnullōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs.

Hōc mīhī minus dubitātiōnis datur quod eās rēs quās commemorāvistis memoriā teneō, atque hōc gravius ferō quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidērunt. Quod sī veteris contumēliae obliviscī volō, num etiam recentium injūriārum memoriā dēpōnere possum? Quod vestrā victōriā tam insolenter glōriāminī quodque tam diū vōs impūnē injūriās tulisse admirāminī, eōdem pertinet; cōnsuēvērunt enim dī immortālēs quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī volunt, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.

(Caesar respondit) eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās rēs quās illi commemorāssent memoriā tenēret atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent. Quod sī veteris contumēliae obliviscī vellet, num etiam recentium injūriārum memoriā dēpōnere

asked) blot out the memory of recent wrongs as well? As to their boasting so insultingly of their victory, and wondering that they had so long escaped punishment for their misdeeds, these matters amounted to the same thing; for—(said he), in order that men may grieve the more heavily from a change of circumstances, the immortal gods, are accustomed to grant greater prosperity sometimes, and a longer impunity, to those whom they wish to punish for their sins.

posse? Quod suā victoriā tam insolenter gloriarentur quodque tam diū se impūnē injūriās tulisse admirarentur, eōdem pertinēre; cōsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtatione rerum dolent, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitatem concēdere.

N.B.—For the forms assumed in indirect narration by the different kinds of conditional sentence, see section 87, page 145.

220. We frequently find a subjunctive in clauses dependent upon a clause containing another subjunctive or an infinitive, and occasionally in clauses not so dependent.

In many of such cases the subjunctive is due to the fact that the whole sentence is *virtual* or *informal oratio obliqua* (see section 216 above), or at any rate is felt to be such. In other cases it is due to *attraction*, that is, to the tendency to assimilate mood forms; as,

(a) *They attempted to lead part of their troops across, intending, if they were able, to storm the fort which Q. Titurius was in command of, and to destroy the bridge; and, if they were unable to do this, then, to lay waste the fields of the Remi:* Partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Q. Titurius, expūgnarent pontemque interseinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum popularentur.

Their exact words or thoughts would be, *We shall (or, Let us), if we can, storm the fort and destroy the bridge; if we cannot do this, we shall (or, let us) lay waste the fields of the Remi: Sī poterimus, castellum expūgnābimus (or, expūgnēmus) pontemque interseindēmus (or, interseindāmus); sī minus potuerimus, agrōs Rēmōrum populābimur (or, populēmur.)*

The clause, *cui praeerat Q. Titurius* is thrown in by Cæsar for the benefit of the reader,

(b) *On various pretexts which they said were valid reasons for their departure, they asked permission to go away: Alius aliā causā illātā, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse dīceret, petēbat ut discēdere licēret* (see section 185, NOTE.)

In this sentence *dīceret* is not part of the reported speech, and the subjunctive is due to mistaken analogy, the writer using the mood which would be required if the verb of saying were omitted. Regularly the clause would stand, *quae sibi ad proficiscendum necessariā esset*, which (in their view) were valid reasons for their departure.

(c) *So powerful an impression with regard to (or produced by) this war was spread among the barbarians, that envoys were sent to Cæsar by those tribes who dwelt beyond the Rhine: Tanta hūjus belli ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab iīs nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, mitterentur lēgātī ad Caesarem.*

In this example the assimilating influence of *mitterentur* is extended to *incolerent*.

EXERCISE 26.

1. To these ambassadors Cæsar replied, "I will come now if you are ready to follow." 2. They sent ambassadors to the Roman general (saying) they were ready to open the gates which they had closed. 3. "I," answered he, "have spared the citizens, you the Gauls." 4. He brought word to the consul that the enemy, after having been defeated in battle, sent envoys to Cæsar as soon as they had recovered from their panic. 5. "Leap down," he said, "fellow soldiers, unless you wish to abandon the eagle to the enemy. I, at any rate, shall do my duty to my country and my commander." 6. They replied that if these proceedings were reported to Ariovistus, they did not doubt that that prince would inflict the severest punishment on all the hostages who were in his power. 7. "What," said he, "was more trifling or shameful than, at the suggestion of the enemy, to form a resolution on the most important affairs?" 8. They answered that all things had to be done at one time by the soldiers who were in camp. 9. He told them not to forget the former valor of the Helvetii nor the wrongs done by them to the Roman people. 10. He ordered the soldiers who were in the woods to attack the enemy, who were on the march. Why had they retreated before they had seen the enemy with whom they had to fight? 11. The lieutenant complained that

he had been neglected by the general and deserted by the soldiers. 12. Ariovistus had in his consulship (said he) most eagerly sought the friendship of Rome. Why should any one imagine that he (Ariovistus) would so readily forsake his allegiance? 13. He said that the general had pursued his march for many miles through the marshes and forests that were between the enemy and the Roman army. 14. He ordered the soldier to ask who had seen the man who had been sent by the enemy to Cæsar's camp. 15. One thing they asked and prayed for, that if, in accordance with his merciful disposition, which they themselves were (constantly) hearing of from others, he should determine the Belgians were to be saved, he should not deprive them of their arms.

EXERCISE XXVII.

THE ROMAN MODE OF RECKONING TIME.

221. After the reform of the calendar by Julius Cæsar, in B.C. 46, the Roman year consisted of 365 days (in leap year, 366), the months containing the same number of days respectively as the English months.

222. The day of the month was calculated in the following manner:—Three points were taken in the month, the Calends (*Kalendæ*), the Ides (*Īdūs*), and the Nones (*Nōnæ*), which the names¹ of the months qualified adjectively, and from these three points respectively the date was calculated *backward*.

223. The Calends fell in every case on the first of the month; the Ides in March, May, July and October, were on the fifteenth and the Nones on the seventh; in the other months, the Ides came on the thirteenth, and the Nones on the fifth. Any day between the Calends and the Nones was reckoned such and such a day before the Nones; any day between the Nones and the Ides such and such a day before the Ides, and any day after the Ides such and such a day before the Calends of the following month.

224. From these three dates the other days were reckoned inclusively, that is, both days were counted in, and consequently

1. These names are Januārius, Februārius, Martius, Aprilis, Māius, Jūnius, Quintilis, (or Jūlius), Sextilis (or Augustus), September, Octōber, November and December.

we must subtract the given day from the day on which the Nones or Ides fall increased by one, and as the Calends fall within the next month, if the day be one before that date, we must add two to the last day of the month and then subtract.

225. The Romans had no *second day before* any of these three fixed points. The day before was called *prīdiē Kalendās* (or *Kalendārum*), *prīdiē Nōnās*, *prīdiē Īdūs*. The day before that was called the *third day before*, being the *second* according to our mode of reckoning.

226. The following examples will illustrate these calculations :

July 10th = $(15 + 1 - 10) = \text{VI. Id. Jul.}$

Feb. 15th = $(28 + 2 - 15) = \text{XV. Kal. Mart.}$

June 3rd = $(5 + 1 - 3) = \text{III. Non. Jun.}$

May 14th = $(15 + 1 - 14) = \text{Prīdiē Id. Mai.}$

Sept. 13th = *Idibus Septembris.*

227. The Roman dates given in the above section are somewhat contracted. For example, *VI. Id. Jul.* is strictly *diē sextō ante Īdūs Jūliās*, *diē* and *ante* being omitted, the numeral *VI.* being substituted for *sextō* and the other words abbreviated.

Sometimes we find it in the form *a.d. VI. Id. Jul.*, that is *ante diem sextum Īdus Jūliās*, where *diē sextō*, coming between the preposition and its object, is attracted into the accusative *diem sextum*. Such expressions are looked upon as single words and may be governed by other prepositions; as, *They fix their departure for the 12th of July: Profectiōnem in a.d. IV. Id. Jul. cōfirmant.*

228. The additional day in leap year was inserted after February 23rd, the 24th (*i.e.*, *VI. Kal. Mart.*) being reckoned twice and accordingly called *bis sextus*; whence the year itself was called *bisextilis*, from which we have our word *bissextile*.

229. The Romans reckoned their time from the building of the city (Rome), the date of which is fixed at 753 B.C., and to reduce the Roman date to the corresponding year before Christ, the year of the city is to be subtracted from 754, and *vice versa*; as, *Cicero delivered an oration against Catiline on November 8th, B. C. 63: Cicerō in Oratiōnem VI. Id. Nov. A. U. C. DCXCI. orātiōnem habuit.* (A. U. C. = *ab urbe conditā*, or *annō urbis conditae*). If the year specified is written out in full, the ordinal numerals agreeing with *annō* are used; as, *Annō sēscentēsīmō nōnāgēsīmō prīmō.*

Any date in our era may be calculated from the birth of Christ with or without *Annō Dominī*; as, *Queen Victoria ascended the throne June 20th, 1837: Victōria Rēgīna rēgnum excēpit XII. Kal. Jul. MDCCCXXXVII.*

EXERCISE 27.

1. George the Third, king of Britain, died on the 29th of January, 1820. 2. The general set out from Rome on the 24th of March, B.C. 59. 3. It is said that Caesar was slain by Brutus and Cassius on the 15th of March, B.C. 44. 4. Augustus was born September 23rd, B.C. 63, and died at Nola on the 29th of August, in the year of our Lord 14, at the age of seventy-six (=born *seventy-six years*). 5. Charles I., king of England, was beheaded on the 30th of January, 1649. 6. The consul fixed the elections for the fifth of March, 1891. 7. On the 6th March, B.C. 35, the consul returned to Rome. 8. He lived at Rome from the eighth of September to the 19th of November. 9. He returned home on the 7th July, and remained until October 27th. 10. The teacher asked the pupil what famous battle between the English and the French was fought on the 18th of June, 1815. 11. To this question of the teacher's (=to the teacher asking this), the pupil replied that a great naval battle had been fought on the 21st of October, 1805. 12. Mary, Queen of Scots, was executed in the reign of Elizabeth, on the 8th of February, 1587. 13. The elections of this province were fixed for the 20th of June, 1890. 14. Henry VIII., king of England, departed this life January 28th, 1547. 15. Thus died these two famous men, the former on the 6th day of June, 1891, the latter on the 17th of April in the following year.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES FOR
CONTINUOUS TRANSLATION
INTO LATIN.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

230. It is not sufficient for the student to know the rules of Latin Syntax, and to be familiar with the points wherein the structure of the Latin sentence differs from that of the English, although such knowledge is absolutely necessary before any progress in composition can be expected. There are other things to be considered, and, chief of these, perhaps, the use of figurative language, including the technical terms of war, politics, navigation and other occupations.

231. Though all language is to some extent figurative, yet the English language is essentially such. In modern English, scarcely a passage with any pretensions to style can be found that is not replete with metaphors.

Such figures (though occasionally found) are much rarer in Latin than in English, and consequently most of the figurative expressions found in our own tongue must be changed for the direct and simple statement in Latin. Even when figures are used in the latter (as in oratory), the simile is preferred to the metaphor, or the metaphor is quite different from the English one, or the figures are modified by some such expression as *ut aiunt*: *As they say, As the saying is*; or by *tanquam, quidam*, etc.

Accordingly, when dealing with metaphors, and the conventional and technical phrases of the various arts, sciences and occupations, the student should be exceedingly careful to translate the *thought* of the English into Latin, and *not the exact words*.

232. The following examples will illustrate some of the differences between the English and the Latin mode of expression:

(a) *He came off victor*: **Vicit.**

(b) *He lost the day*: **Victus est.**

(c) *I left no stone unturned to finish the business*: **Nihil praetermīsī quīn negōtium cōficerem.**

(d) *The general's voice was drowned in the shouts of the enemy*: **Vōx imperātōris prae clāmōre hostium audīrī nōn potuit.**

(e) *The enemy were within range of fire* : **Hostēs nōn longius aberant quam quō tēlum adjicī posset.**

(f) *Our ships ran before the wind* : **Nostrae nāvēs ventō sē dabant.**

(g) *For that was no mere spectacle, but a picture of your position* : **Neque enim spectāculum modo illud, sed quaedam velutī imāgō vestrae condiōnis erat.**

(h) *He ascended the throne* : **Rēgnum excēpit.**

(i) *He flung his life away* : **Mortem ūltrō oppetiit.**

(j) *He overcame the armies of Rome* : **Exercitūs Rōmānōs superāvīt.**

233. Each language has its own favorite turns of expression (*quasi-idioms*, we might call them), or its own mode of viewing an action, and these must be regarded in translating from one language to another.

(a) For example, in English we frequently use the verb *to be* for the purpose of introducing a sentence in such a manner as to emphasize some word or phrase in the predicate. In Latin, *esse* is not used, emphasis being secured by position ; as, *It was at my suggestion that he returned to Rome* : **Mē auctōre, Rōmam rediit.** *It is not without divine assistance that the Romans carry on war* : **Nōn Rōmānī sine ope dīvinā bellum gerunt.** *He was the first to reach the camp* : **Prīmus ad castra pervēnit.**

(b) In Latin there is often a tendency to look upon an action as proceeding from a certain locality, while in English it is considered as happening in that place ; as, *He fought on horseback* : **Ex equō pūgnābat.** *The enemy attack our troops on both flanks* : **Hostēs nostrōs ab utrōque latere aggrediuntur.** *Sharpened a little at the bottom* : **Paulum ab imō praeacūta.** *The letter was dated at Rome* : **Epistola data est Rōmā.**

(c) In such expressions as, *The wise Socrates, Your excellent father, Our gallant commander, The abandoned Catiline, So brave a man as you*, etc., the appositive construction with the superlative degree of the adjective is generally used ; as, **Sōcratēs, vir sapientissimus ; Pater tuus, vir optimus ; Noster imperātor, vir fortissimus ; Catilīna, homō perditissimus ; Tū, vir fortissimus.**

(d) In English very many transitive verbs may be used intransitively also, whereas in Latin, in such a case, the reflexive pronoun is used, or the verb is put in the passive, or some other verb is brought into requisition ; as *move* (transitive)=**movēre**, *move* (intransitive)=**sē movēre** or **movēri** ; *sell* (transitive)=**vendere**,

sell (intransitive) = *vēnīre*; *increase* (transitive) = *augēre*, *increase* (intransitive) = *crēscere* or *augērī*.

234. There is a tendency in English to make the noun the significant word, while in Latin the chief weight of the sentence falls on the verb. Such verbs as *make*, *have*, *take*, *hold*, *be*, etc., frequently do little more than make the statements—that is, are mere symbols of predication—the meaning being contained in the noun, whereas in Latin the verb is the significant word, containing within itself the subject or object, which, when expressed in the form of a neuter pronoun or adjective, has the force rather of an adverbial adjunct than that of a real subject or direct object. Compare the following sentences in English and in Latin :

(a) *He had great hopes* : **Māgna spērābat.**

(b) *Mention has been made of him* : **Dē illō dictum est.**

(c) *All held their peace* : **Conticuēre omnēs.**

(d) *I ordered him to take his departure* ; **Eum abire jūssī.**

(e) *He took my advice* : **Mihī pārūit.**

(f) *He gave utterance to many falsehoods* : **Multa mentītus est.**

(g) *He made reply to me* : **Mihī respondit.**

(h) *He makes haste to take his departure from the city* : **Mātūrat ab urbe proficiscī.**

(i) *You are at liberty to make this attempt* : **Haec cōnārī tibi licet.**

N.B.—This incorporation of the noun material into the verb is especially noticeable in the impersonal use of the passive voice of intransitive verbs ; as, *There was fighting* (or *Fighting took place*) : **Pūgnātum est.** *Obedience must be shown* : **Pārendum est.** *Use must be made of these things* : **Hīs rēbus ūtendum est.** *There ought to be no hesitation* : **Nōn dubitandum est.**

So the Latin adjective or participle frequently has the value of a noun ; as, **hīc** = *this man*, **haec** = *these matters*, **māgna** = *great things*, **fugientēs** = *the retreating force*, **sapientēs** = *wise men*, *philosophers*, **nostrī** = *our men*, **omnia sua** = *all their property*.

235. Owing to the scarcity of abstract nouns in Latin and to an aversion to their general use when found therein, we frequently find the main idea contained in the participle instead of in the substantive as in English ; as, *He lived before the foundation of the city* : **Ante urbem conditam vīxit.** *He took part in the outrage on the ambassadors* : **Lēgātīs violandīs interfuit.** *The news of the disaster* : **Nūntiāta clādēs.** In the same way English abstract nouns are frequently represented in Latin by adjectives and

adverbs. *I do not know the man's character*: *Nesciō quāllis sit homō*. *Cæsar asks the reason of the soldier's presence*: *Caesar rogat eūr mīles adsit*. (See also section 47.)

236. By the figurative use of language prevalent in English we frequently transfer an epithet from one word to another, while in Latin it is more correctly made to agree with the word that it really modifies; as, *His dying words*: *Ējus morientis verba*. *Tears of (those) mourning*: *Lūgentium lacrimae*.

237. Finally, the precise meaning of the English word should be clearly understood before any attempt is made to give the Latin equivalent. For example, take the word "country." In the sentence, *He left the city for the country*, the word has a quite different meaning from that which it has in the sentence, *He is willing to die for his country*. In the first sentence, *rās* would be used; in the second, *patria*.

In the same way, "pursue" has a variety of meanings according to the context, and the precise meaning of the word in any given sentence must be known before a correct translation can be given; as, *Cæsar pursues* (=follows up) *the enemy*: *Caesar hostēs sequitur*. *Labiennus pursues* (=makes or continues) *his march*: *Labiēnus iter facit*.

In like manner the various significations of many other words must be distinguished.

238. When the student comes to turn a continuous passage into Latin, it will be necessary for him to observe a very important difference between the English and the Latin. In English, as a rule, each of the main ideas going to make up the thought as a whole, is put into a sentence by itself, these sentences being sometimes loosely joined together by such words as *or*, *but*, *and*, etc., and sometimes succeeding each other without any connective.

In Latin, on the other hand, some one idea is seized as a central point and expressed in the main sentence, while the other notions are grouped about it, in more or less subordinate relations, according to the periodic construction (see footnote, page 115).

In such construction, the sentence is obviously incomplete, until it is closed by the principal verb, and consequently no loosely connected after-thoughts should be added.

However, variety is an excellent thing, and accordingly, where some such word or phrase as *proptereā* or *eō consiliō* shows that something is still to come, the clause of reason or purpose may follow the main verb. The clause of result regularly follows the principal statement.

239. The Latin is fonder than the English of showing the connection of ideas in a narrative, and as a result of this, it frequently begins a sentence, or even a new paragraph or chapter, with the

relative, where in English a demonstrative, with or without a conjunction, would be used. (See section 8, N.B.)

Where in English a sentence begins with such expressions as *and not*, *and no one*, *and never*, etc., Latin uses *neque* (or *nec*) = *nor*, *nec quisquam* = *nor any one*, *nec unquam* = *nor ever*, etc.

A few exercises for continuous prose translation are now given, expressed, to some extent, in figurative language, and involving the principles above mentioned.

EXERCISE 28.*

After a census had been taken, it was found that the total population of our province was about fifty thousand men, women and children. Of this number there were capable of bearing arms not more than five thousand men, very few of whom were regular troops. Yet such was the spirit of her sons (*civēs*) that they did not hesitate to take the field at a moment's notice, ready to lay down their lives for their native land. Within one month after the declaration of war, the enemy, to the number of six thousand, were massed in the neighborhood of the river that forms the boundary line between our territories and theirs. At daybreak on the 12th of October, the advance guard of this force effected a landing on the left bank of the river in the face of a heroic defence on the part of our men. Long and fiercely the battle raged on both sides, when night put an end to the contest. On the following morning there was a spirited renewal of the engagement. When the battle had lasted three hours, our troops, after seizing the baggage of the enemy and slaying more than two thousand of their number, drove the rest headlong into the river. Thus victory perched on our banners, and the enemy, disappointed in their hope, gave up this undertaking.

EXERCISE 29.

After being informed of the arrival of the enemy, the general made haste to take his departure from the city, and by forced marches pushed forward against Gallus, who had taken possession of the heights, and, with all his troops drawn up in battle array, was awaiting the advance of our gallant leader. While the latter

* This exercise and the five subsequent ones may be used as materials for *oratio obliqua* by placing *He said*, or some such expression, before each.

with three battalions of the tenth regiment was making a fierce attack upon the centre of the enemy's line, he received a mortal wound and was carried to the rear by two faithful soldiers. The general tried to exhort his troops not to lose heart, nor to allow their colors to fall into the hands of the enemy, but his dying words were drowned in the shouts of the combatants. Maddened by the fall of their heroic commander, our men twice attempted to force the enemy from the heights. Twice they were driven back, and finally were compelled to retire upon the nearest town and there to wait for reinforcements. Setting out about midnight with the seventh regiment, which had been sent to their assistance, our troops again attacked the enemy, who, after the loss of more than a thousand men, were compelled to surrender at discretion. And so victory once more rested upon the British arms.

EXERCISE 30.

While the general was making these preparations for his departure, the report was brought that four battalions of the tenth regiment had been cut off to a man by the enemy's cavalry. The news of this (*quī*) disaster threw the camp into a state of consternation, and struck terror into the hearts of those who had never been under fire. Many of the men who a little before had been boasting of their bravery, threw themselves at the commander's feet, and in tears besought him to allow them to take their departure. He told them that they were at liberty to go, so far as he was concerned, but they should remember the valor of their ancestors who had ever been ready to lay down their lives for their native land sooner than permit anyone to cast the reproach of cowardice in their teeth. Even old campaigners, who wished to be considered less fearful, could scarcely put on a brave face or restrain their tears, and, shutting themselves up in their tents, they set to signing their wills and bemoaning the common danger.

EXERCISE 31.

At first the commander determined to defer a general engagement, still, every day, in cavalry skirmishes, he kept testing the military prowess of the enemy and the daring of our men, until he

found that our troops were in no respect inferior to the hostile forces. Between our army and the country of the enemy flowed a river, on the right bank of which, at the distance of about half a mile, at the foot of a hill, the general gave orders to fortify the camp with a stockade twelve feet high and a trench eighteen feet wide. From each end of the hill he threw out a cross trench about three hundred yards in length, and at the extremities of these trenches he erected redoubts where he placed his artillery, so that, after he had formed his line of battle, the enemy might not outflank him during the engagement. After this was done, leaving two regiments—his latest levies—in the camp to act as reserves for the lieutenant in case of emergency, he led the rest of his forces with the greatest difficulty across a marsh of no great extent that lay between our position and the river, where the enemy a few days previously had effected a crossing by means of a bridge of boats.

EXERCISE 32.

Caractacus took up a position of his own choosing, where the means both of approach and retreat were most convenient for himself and unfavorable to the enemy. It was defended in part by a steep and lofty acclivity ; in part by stones rudely thrown together ; a stream with no frequented ford flowed before it, and chosen bands of his best armed and bravest warriors were stationed in front of its defences. To the spirit and eloquence of the chief, the Britons responded with shouts of enthusiasm ; and each tribe bound itself, by the oaths it held most sacred, to stand its ground or fall—if it must fall—fighting. Ostorius, on his part, was amazed at the ardor of men whom he supposed to be beaten, cowed, and driven hopelessly to bay. He was even disconcerted at the strength of the British position, and the swarms which defended it. It was the eagerness of the soldiers, rather than his own courage or judgment, that determined him to give the signal of attack. The stream was crossed without difficulty, for every legionary was a swimmer, and the Britons had no engines for hurling missiles from a distance, nor were they noted even for the rude artillery of bows and slings.

—*Merivale.*

EXERCISE 33.

But they defended their rampart obstinately with poles and javelins, and from behind it dealt wounds and death upon the assailants, till the Romans could form the tortoise, approach to the foot of the wall, tear down its uncemented materials, and, bursting in, challenge them to combat, hand to hand. Unequal to the shock of the Roman army, the Britons retreated up the hill; the Romans, both the light and the heavy-armed, pressed gallantly upon them, and, imperfectly as they were equipped, they could withstand neither the sword and pilum of the legionary, nor the lance and spear of the auxiliary. The victory, quickly decided, was brilliant and complete. The wife and daughter of Caractacus were taken; his brothers threw down their arms and surrendered.

The brave chief himself escaped from the slaughter, evaded the pursuit, and found an asylum for a time in the territory of the Brigantes, leaving all the south open to the invaders. He might hope to remove the contest to the northern parts of the island, a land of streams and mountains like his own long-defended Siluria; but Cartismandua, the female sovereign of this nation (for, though married, she seems herself, rather than her husband Venutius, to have been actual ruler of the Brigantes), was determined, by her own fears and interests, to betray him to the Romans. The fame of his nine years' struggle had penetrated beyond the British Isles and the Gaulish provinces; and when he was led captive through the streets of Rome, great was the curiosity of the citizens to behold the hero who had rivalled the renown of Arminius and Tacfarinas.

—*Merivale.*

PART III.

ACCIDENCE, COMPENDIUM OF SYNTAX AND
VOCABULARIES.

I. PARADIGMS OF INFLECTION.

(A) THE NOUN.¹

1. First Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nominative.</i>	mēnsa, F.	mēnsae
<i>Genitive.</i>	mēnsae	mēnsārum
<i>Dative.</i>	mēnsae	mēnsīs
<i>Accusative.</i>	mēnsam	mēnsās
<i>Vocative.</i>	mēnsa	mēnsae
<i>Ablative.</i>	mēnsā	mēnsīs

2. Second Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nominative.</i>	servus, M.	servī
<i>Genitive.</i>	servī	servōrum
<i>Dative.</i>	servō	servīs
<i>Accusative.</i>	servum	servōs
<i>Vocative.</i>	serve	servī
<i>Ablative.</i>	servō	servīs

1. The genitive dative, accusative and ablative are called the *Oblique Cases*.

3. Second Declension (*continued*).

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	puer, M.	vir, M.	ager, M.	templum, N.
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	virī	agrī	templī
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	virō	agrō	templō
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	virum	agrū	templum
<i>Voc.</i>	puer	vir	ager	templum
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	virō	agrō	templō

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	puerī	virī	agrī	templa
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	virōrum	agrōrum	templōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	virīs	agrīs	templīs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	virōs	agrōs	templa
<i>Voc.</i>	puerī	virī	agrī	templa
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	virīs	agrīs	templīs

4. Third Declension—Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	rēx, M.	cōnsul, M.	mīles, M.	pater, M.
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	cōnsulis	militis	patris
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	cōnsuli	militī	patri
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	cōnsulem	militem	patrem
<i>Voc.</i>	rēx	cōnsul	mīles	pater
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	cōnsule	mīlite	patre

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	rēgēs	cōnsulēs	militēs	patrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum	cōnsulum	militum	patrum
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus	cōnsulibus	militibus	patribus
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs	cōnsulēs	militēs	patrēs
<i>Voc.</i>	rēgēs	cōnsulēs	militēs	patrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus	cōnsulibus	militibus	patribus

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	homō, M.	hiems, F.	virtūs, F.	regiō, F.
<i>Gen.</i>	hominis	hiemis	virtūtis	regiōnis
<i>Dat.</i>	hominī	hiemī	virtūtī	regiōnī
<i>Acc.</i>	hominem	hiemem	virtūtem	regiōnem
<i>Voc.</i>	homō	hiems	virtūs	regiō
<i>Abl.</i>	homine	hieme	virtūte	regiōne

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	hominēs	hiemēs	virtūtēs	regiōnēs
<i>Gen.</i>	hominum	hiemum	virtūtum	regiōnum
<i>Dat.</i>	hominibus	hiemibus	virtūtibus	regiōnibus
<i>Acc.</i>	hominēs	hiemēs	virtūtēs	regiōnēs
<i>Voc.</i>	hominēs	hiemēs	virtūtēs	regiōnēs
<i>Abl.</i>	hominibus	hiemibus	virtūtibus	regiōnibus

5. Third Declension—Neuter Nouns.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	nōmen, N.	corpus, N.	opus, N.	iter, N.
<i>Gen.</i>	nōminis	corporis	operis	itineris
<i>Dat.</i>	nōminī	corporī	operī	itinerī
<i>Acc.</i>	nōmen	corpus	opus	iter
<i>Voc.</i>	nōmen	corpus	opus	iter
<i>Abl.</i>	nōmine	corpore	opere	itinere

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	nōminā	corpora	opera	itinerā
<i>Gen.</i>	nōminum	corporum	operum	itinerum
<i>Dat.</i>	nōminibus	corporibus	operibus	itineribus
<i>Acc.</i>	nōminā	corpora	opera	itinerā
<i>Voc.</i>	nōminā	corpora	opera	itinerā
<i>Abl.</i>	nōminibus	corporibus	operibus	itineribus

6. Third Declension—I-stems.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	urbs, F.	īgnis, M.	nūbēs, F.	mare, N.
<i>Gen.</i>	urbis	īgnis	nūbis	maris
<i>Dat.</i>	urbī	īgnī	nūbī	marī
<i>Acc.</i>	urbem	īgnem	nūbem	mare
<i>Voc.</i>	urbs	īgnis	nūbēs	mare
<i>Abl.</i>	urbe	īgnī	nūbe	marī

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	urbēs	īgnēs	nūbēs	maria
<i>Gen.</i>	urbium	īgnium	nūbium	marium
<i>Dat.</i>	urbibus	īgnibus	nūbibus	maribus
<i>Acc.</i>	urbēs ¹	īgnēs ¹	nūbēs ¹	maria
<i>Voc.</i>	urbēs	īgnēs	nūbēs	maria
<i>Abl.</i>	urbibus	īgnibus	nūbibus	maribus

7. Fourth Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	frūctus, M.	frāctūs	cornū, N.	cornua
<i>Gen.</i>	frūctūs	frūctuum	cornūs	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i>	frūctuī	frūctibus	cornū	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	frūctum	frūctūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Voc.</i>	frūctus	frūctūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	frūctū	frūctibus	cornū	cornibus

8. Fifth Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	rēs, F.	rēs	diēs, M.	diēs
<i>Gen.</i>	reī	rērum	diēī	diērum
<i>Dat.</i>	reī	rēbus	diēī	diēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	rem	rēs	diem	diēs
<i>Voc.</i>	rēs	rēs	diēs	diēs
<i>Abl.</i>	rē	rēbus	diē	diēbus

9. Nouns Irregular in Declension.

(The forms in parentheses should be avoided in writing Latin; the forms in italics are scarcely classical.)

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	vīs, F.	vīrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	(vīs)	vīrium
<i>Dat.</i>	(vī)	vīribus
<i>Acc.</i>	vīm	vīrēs
<i>Voc.</i>		vīrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	vī	vīribus

1. The accusative plural of *i*-stems is also written *urbis*, *nūbis*, *īgnis*.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	deus, M.	bōs, M. and F.
<i>Gen.</i>	deī	bovis
<i>Dat.</i>	deō	bovī
<i>Acc.</i>	deum	bovem
<i>Voc.</i>	deus	bōs
<i>Abl.</i>	deō	bove

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	dī (deī, diī)	bovēs
<i>Gen.</i>	deōrum, deūm	boum (bovum)
<i>Dat.</i>	dīs (deīs, diīs)	būbus (bōbus)
<i>Acc.</i>	deōs	bovēs
<i>Voc.</i>	dī (deī, diī)	bovēs
<i>Abl.</i>	dīs (deīs, diīs)	būbus (bōbus)

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	domus, F.	Jūppiter, M.
<i>Gen.</i>	domūs (locative domī)	Jovis
<i>Dat.</i>	domuī (domō)	Jovī
<i>Acc.</i>	domum	Jovem
<i>Voc.</i>	domus	Jūppiter
<i>Abl.</i>	domō (domū)	Jove

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	domūs
<i>Gen.</i>	domōrum (domuum)
<i>Dat.</i>	domibus
<i>Acc.</i>	domōs (domūs)
<i>Voc.</i>	domūs
<i>Abl.</i>	domibus

Rēspublica, gen. *reīpublicae*, and *jūsjūrandum*, gen. *jūrisjūrandī*, are really compound words, consisting of a noun and an adjective in agreement, both of which are declined. *Rēspublica* is often, and *jūsjūrandum* sometimes, written as two words.

Paterfamiliās or *paterfamīliae*, and *māterfamiliās* or *māterfamīliae*, (literally, the father, or mother, of a household), have only the first part, *pater* and *māter*, declined. Occasionally, *familiārum* is found in the plural. The form *familiās* is an old genitive singular.

(B) THE ADJECTIVE.

10. First and Second Declensions.

SINGULAR.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Voc.</i>	bone	bona	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Voc.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
SINGULAR.			
<i>Nom.</i>	liber	libera	liberum
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum
<i>Voc.</i>	liber	libera	liberum
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Voc.</i>	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
SINGULAR.			
<i>Nom.</i>	aeger	aegra	aegrum
<i>Gen.</i>	aegrī	aegrae	aegrī
<i>Dat.</i>	aegrō	aegrae	aegrō
<i>Acc.</i>	aegrum	aegram	aegrum
<i>Voc.</i>	aeger	aegra	aegrum
<i>Abl.</i>	aegrō	aegrā	aegrō

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	aegrī	aegrae	aegra
<i>Gen.</i>	aegrōrum	aegrārum	aegrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	aegrōs	aegrās	aegra
<i>Voc.</i>	aegrī	aegrae	aegra
<i>Abl.</i>	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs

11. Third Declension.

SINGULAR.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācrīs	ācre
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Voc.</i>	ācer	ācrīs	ācre
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrēs ¹	ācrēs ¹	ācria
<i>Voc.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

SING.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUTER.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	fortis	forte	fēlix	fēlix
<i>Gen.</i>	fortis	fortis	fēlicis	fēlicis
<i>Dat.</i>	fortī	fortī	fēlicī	fēlicī
<i>Acc.</i>	fortem	forte	fēlicem	fēlix
<i>Voc.</i>	fortis	forte	fēlix	fēlix
<i>Abl.</i>	fortī	fortī	fēlicī	fēlicī

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	fortēs	fortia	fēlicēs	fēlicia
<i>Gen.</i>	fortium	fortium	fēlicium	fēlicium
<i>Dat.</i>	fortibus	fortibus	fēlicibus	fēlicibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortēs ¹	fortia	fēlicēs ¹	fēlicia
<i>Voc.</i>	fortēs	fortia	fēlicēs	fēlicia
<i>Abl.</i>	fortibus	fortibus	fēlicibus	fēlicibus

1. The accusative plural is also written *ācrīs*, *fortīs*, etc., (compare section 6).

12. Declension of Comparatives and Superlatives.

SING.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUTER.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	fortior	fortius		plūs
<i>Gen.</i>	fortiōris	fortiōris		plūris
<i>Dat.</i>	fortiōrī	fortiōrī		
<i>Acc.</i>	fortiōrem	fortius		plūs
<i>Voc.</i>	fortior	fortius		
<i>Abl.</i>	fortiōre	fortiōre		(plūre)

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	fortiōrēs	fortiōra	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	fortiōrum	fortiōrum	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	fortiōribus	fortiōribus	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortiōrēs	fortiōra	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Voc.</i>	fortiōrēs	fortiōra	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Abl.</i>	fortiōribus	fortiōribus	plūribus	plūribus

Complūrēs, a compound of *plūrēs*, is declined like it.

All superlatives end in *us*, *a*, *um*, and are declined like *bonus* (section 10).

13. Comparison of Adjectives.

I. Adjectives are regularly compared by changing the ending (*i*, or *is*) of the genitive singular to *ior*, *ius*, for the comparative degree, and to *issimus*, *a*, *um*, for the superlative degree (see Lesson XXVIII., page 43).

II. Adjectives ending in *-er* form the superlative by adding *-rimus* to the nominative in *-er*: e.g., *ācer*, *ācerrimus*; *miser*, *miserimus*.

III. Six adjectives in *-ilis* form the superlative by changing *-ilis* to *-illimus*. These adjectives are *facilis*, *difficilis*, *similis*, *dissimilis*, *gracilis*, *humilis*.

IV. The following adjectives are quite irregular in their comparison:¹

1. See further, section 57.

bonus	melior	optimus
dīves	dīvitior, dītiōr	dīvitissimus, dītissimus
māgnus	mājor	māximus
parvus	minor	minimus
malus	pējor	pessimus
multus	plūs (neut.)	plūrimus
juvenis	jūnior	(minimus nātū)
senex	senior	(māximus nātū)
mātūrus		mātūrrimus
	citerior	citimus
	dēterior	dētērrimus
	interior	intimus
	prior	prīmus
	propior	proximus
	ūterior	ūltimus
exterus	exterior	extrēmus, extimus
īferus	īferior	īfimus, īmus
posterus	posterior	postrēmus, postumus
superus	superior	suprēmus, summus

14. Irregular Declension.

	SING.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	neuter	neutra	neutrum	
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	neutrīus	neutrīus	neutrīus	
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	neutrī	neutrī	neutrī	
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	neutrum	neutram	neutrum	
<i>Voc.</i>	ūne	ūna	ūnum				
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	neutrō	neutrā	neutrō	

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	ūnī	ūnae	ūna	neutrī	neutrae	neutra
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum	neutrōrum	neutrārum	neutrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs	neutrīs	neutrīs	neutrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna	neutrōs	neutrās	neutra
<i>Voc.</i>	ūnī	ūnae	ūna			
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs	neutrīs	neutrīs	neutrīs

The following adjectives of the first and second declensions have

their genitive singular in *-ūs*,¹ and their dative singular in *ī*, in all genders.

alius, a, ud	tōtus, a, um	alter, era, erum
nūllus, a, um	ūllus, a, um	neuter, tra, trum
sōlus, a, um	ūnus, a, um	uter, tra, trum

(N.B.—*Alius* has in the genitive singular, *alīus*; in the dative singular, *aliī*. The genitive *alīus* is, however, seldom found, *alterius*, or in the possessive sense, *aliēnus*, a, um, being used instead.)

15. List of Numerals.

CARDINALS.

ORDINALS.

1. ūnus, a, um, <i>one</i>	prīmus, <i>first</i>
2. du-o, -ae, -o, <i>two</i>	secundus, <i>second</i> (<i>also</i> alter)
3. trēs, tria, <i>three</i>	tertius, <i>third</i>
4. quattuor, <i>four</i>	quārtus, <i>fourth</i>
5. quīnque, <i>etc.</i>	quīntus, <i>etc.</i>
6. sex	sextus
7. septem	septimus
8. octo	octāvus
9. novem	nōnus
10. decem	decimus
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus
12. duodecim	duodecimus
13. tredecim	tertius decimus
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus
17. septendecim	septimus decimus
18. duodēvigintī ²	duodēvicēsimus
19. ūndēvigintī ²	ūndēvicēsimus
20. vīgintī	vicēsimus
21. { ūnus et vīgintī	prīmus et vicēsimus
{ vīgintī ūnus	vicēsimus prīmus
28. duodētrīgintā ²	duodētricēsimus
29. ūndētrīgintā ²	ūndētricēsimus

1. In poetry the genitive often occurs in *-tus*, not in *-ius*, with many of these words. With *alter* this seems to have been the rule in prose as well.

2. Literally, *two (one) from twenty (thirty)*, etc. The compound forms also occur, e.g., *decem et octo*, *octodecim*, etc.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
30. trīgintā	trīcēsīmus
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus
80. octōgintā	octōgēsīmus
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus
100. centum	centēsīmus
101. {centum ūnus	centēsīmus prīmus
{centum et ūnus	centēsīmus et prīmus
200. ducentī, ae, a	ducentēsīmus
300. trecentī, ae, a	trecentēsīmus
400. quadringentī, ae, a	quadringentēsīmus
500. quīngentī, ae, a	quīngentēsīmus
600. sescentī, ae, a	sescentēsīmus
700. septingentī, ae, a	septingentēsīmus
800. octingentī, ae, a	octingentēsīmus
900. nōngentī, ae, a	nōngentēsīmus
1000. mille	millēsīmus
2000. duo millia (mīlia)	bis millēsīmus

16. Declension of Numerals.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria	millia
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	millium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	millibus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	tria	millia
<i>Voc.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria	millia
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	millibus

For the declension of *ūnus*, see section 14.

The hundreds, from *ducentī* to *nōngentī*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*, section 10.

All the other cardinal numerals are indeclinable.

The ordinal numerals are all declined like *bonus*, section 10.

(C) THE ADVERB.

17. Formation from Adjectives, and Comparison.

I. Adverbs are regularly formed from adjectives in the following manner :

(a) In the positive, by changing the ending of the genitive singular of adjectives of the first and second declensions to *-ē*, of adjectives of the third declension to *-iter* (or, in a few cases, to *-ter*).

(b) In the comparative, by taking the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective, that is, by changing *-or* of the comparative of the adjective to *-us*.

(c) In the superlative, by changing *-us* of the superlative of the adjective to *-ē*.

For examples, see Lesson LII., page 76.

II. In many cases the accusative singular neuter, or the ablative singular, is used as an adverb ; *e.g.* :

ADJECTIVE.	ADVERB.	ADJECTIVE.	ADVERB.
multus	multum	plūrimus	plūrimum
facilis	facile	prīmus	prīmum
subitus	subitō	certus	certō
crēber	crēbrō	ūnus	ūnā

III. The following are irregular in formation or comparison :

bene	melius	optimē
parum	minus	minimē
[māgnopere]	magis	māximē
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe	saepius	saeppissimē

(D) THE PRONOUN.

18. First Person.

19. Second Person.

20. Third

SINGULAR.

Person Reflexive.

<i>Nom.</i>	ego	tū	
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	tuī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	tibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	tē	sē (sēsē)
<i>Voc.</i>		tū	
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	tē	sē (sēsē)

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	nōs	vōs	
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrūm, nostrī	vestrūm, vestrī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	nōs	vōs	sē (sēsē)
<i>Voc.</i>		vōs	
<i>Abl.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)

21. Possessive Pronouns.

meus, a, um, <i>my, mine</i>	noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our, ours</i>
tuus, a, um, <i>your, yours</i>	vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your, yours</i>
suus, a, um, <i>his, her, hers, its</i>	suus, a, um, <i>their, theirs</i>

These are all declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions, section 10, except that the vocative singular masculine of *meus* is *mī*, rarely *meus*.

22. Third Personal, and Demonstrative Pronoun.

Is, he, she, it, etc. ; that.

SINGULAR.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id
<i>Gen.</i>	ējus	ējus	ējus
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	eī, iī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

23. Demonstrative Pronouns.

Hic, *this*.Ille, *that*.

SING.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hōc	ille	illa	illud
<i>Gen.</i>	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus	illīus	illīus	illīus
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	illī	illī	illī
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hōc	illum	illam	illud
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

The pronoun *iste, a, ud, that of yours*, is declined exactly like *ille*.

Ipse, *-self*.Idem, *the same*.

SING.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	īdem	eadem	idem
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ējusdem	ējusdem	ējusdem
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	eundem	eandem	idem
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa	{ eīdem, iīdem	eaedem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	{ eīsdem, iīsdem ¹	eīsdem, iīsdem ¹	eīsdem, iīsdem ¹
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	{ eīsdem, iīsdem ¹	eīsdem, iīsdem ¹	eīsdem, iīsdem ¹

1. For *iīsdem* we often find *iīsdem*.

24. Relative Pronoun.

SINGULAR.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod
<i>Gen.</i>	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus
<i>Dat.</i>	cuī	cuī	cuī
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus

25. Interrogative Pronoun.

The Interrogative Pronoun differs from the relative pronoun in having *quis* in Nom. Sing. Masc., and *quid* in Nom. and Acc. Sing. Neut. There is also the Interrogative Pronominal Adjective *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, declined exactly like the Relative Pronoun.

26. Indefinite Pronouns.

The Indefinite Pronouns are compounds of *quis* or *quī*, and are for the most part declined like them.¹

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
aliquis, aliquī	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod

(The neuter plural, as well as the feminine singular, has *-qua* for *-quae*.)

quis, quī	qua	quid, quod
-----------	-----	------------

(The neuter plural, as well as the feminine singular, has *qua* for *quae*.)

quisque	quaeque	quicque or quidque, quodque
quisquam		quicquam or quidquam

(The plural and the feminine singular are not used.)

1. In this list where a word has both *quis* and *quī*, or both *quid* and *quod*, the forms in *quī* and *quod* are generally used adjectively, the others substantively.

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
quisquis	(quaeque)	quicquid or quidquid

(Both parts of this compound are declined.)

quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
--------	---------	------------------

(*Quīdam* changes *m* to *n* before *-dam*.)

quīcunque	quaecunque	quodcunque
quīvīs	quaevīs	quidvīs, quodvīs
quispiam	quaepiam	quidpiam or quippiam, quod- piam
quīlibet	quaelibet	quidlibet, quodlibet

also

uterque	utraque	utrumque
---------	---------	----------

Uterque has the first part declined like *uter*, section 14.

For the common uses of these pronouns see section 95.

(E) THE VERB.

27. Indicative Mood, Active Voice.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

	<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
1. amō	moneō	regō	audiō	
2. amās	monēs	regis	audīs	
3. amat	monet	regit	audit	

PLURAL.

1. amāmus	monēmus	regimus	audīmus
2. amātis	monētis	regitis	audītis
3. amant	monent	regunt	audiunt

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. amābam	monēbam	regēbam	audiēbam
2. amābās	monēbās	regēbās	audiēbās
3. amābat	monēbat	regēbat	audiēbat

PLURAL.

1. amābāmus	monēbāmus	regēbāmus	audiēbāmus
2. amābātis	monēbātis	regēbātis	audiēbātis
3. amābant	monēbant	regēbant	audiēbant

FUTURE TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. amābō	monēbō	regam	audiam
2. amābis	monēbis	regēs	audiēs
3. amābit	monēbit	reget	audiet

PLURAL.

1. amābimus	monēbimus	regēmus	audiēmus
2. amābitis	monēbitis	regētis	audiētis
3. amābunt	monēbunt	regent	audient

(E) THE VERB.

28. Indicative Mood, Passive Voice.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
1. amor	moneor	regor	audior
2. amāris ¹	monēris ¹	regeris ¹	audīris ¹
3. amātur	monētur	regitur	audītur

PLURAL.

1. amāmur	monēmur	regimur	audīmur
2. amāminī	monēminī	regiminī	audīminī
3. amantur	monentur	reguntur	audiuntur

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. amābar	monēbar	regēbar	audiēbar
2. amābāris ¹	monēbāris ¹	regēbāris ¹	audiēbāris ¹
3. amābātur	monēbātur	regēbātur	audiēbātur

PLURAL.

1. amābāmur	monēbāmur	regēbāmur	audiēbāmur
2. amābāminī	monēbāminī	regēbāminī	audiēbāminī
3. amābantur	monēbantur	regēbantur	audiēbantur

FUTURE TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. amābor	monēbor	regar	audiar
2. amāberis ¹	monēberis ¹	regēris ¹	audiēris ¹
3. amābitur	monēbitur	regētur	audiētur

PLURAL.

1. amābimur	monēbimur	regēmur	audiēmur
2. amābiminī	monēbiminī	regēminī	audiēminī
3. amābuntur	monēbuntur	regentur	audientur

1. For *-ris*, *-re* also is found, especially in the imperfect and future tenses.

27. Indicative Mood, Active Voice (*continued*).

PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
1. amāvī	monuī	rēxī	audīvī
2. amāvistī	monuistī	rēxistī	audīvistī
3. amāvit	monuit	rēxit	audīvit

PLURAL.

1. amāvimus	monuimus	rēximus	audīvimus
2. amāvistis	monuistis	rēxistis	audīvistis
3. amāvērunt ¹	monuērunt ¹	rēxērunt ¹	audīvērunt ¹

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. amāveram	monueram	rēxeram	audīveram
2. amāverās	monuerās	rēxerās	audīverās
3. amāverat	monuerat	rēxerat	audīverat

PLURAL.

1. amāverāmus	monuerāmus	rēxerāmus	audīverāmus
2. amāverātis	monuerātis	rēxerātis	audīverātis
3. amāverant	monuerant	rēxerant	audīverant

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. amāverō	monuerō	rēxerō	audīverō
2. amāveris	monueris	rēxeris	audīveris
3. amāverit	monuerit	rēxerit	audīverit

PLURAL.

1. amāverimus	monuerimus	rēxerimus	audīverimus
2. amāveritis	monueritis	rēxeritis	audīveritis
3. amāverint	monuerint	rēxerint	audīverint

1. For *-ērunt*, *-ēre* also is found, especially in poetry.

28. Indicative Mood, Passive Voice (*continued*).

PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

	<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
1.	amātus ¹ sum	monitus ¹ sum	rēctus ¹ sum	auditus ¹ sum
2.	" es	" es	" es	" es
3.	" est	" est	" est	" est

PLURAL.

1.	amātī ¹ sumus	monitī ¹ sumus	rēctī ¹ sumus	audītī ¹ sumus
2.	" estis	" estis	" estis	" estis
3.	" sunt	" sunt	" sunt	" sunt

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1.	amātus ¹ eram	monitus ¹ eram	rēctus ¹ eram	auditus ¹ eram
2.	" erās	" erās	" erās	" erās
3.	" erat	" erat	" erat	" erat

PLURAL.

1.	amātī ¹ erāmus	monitī ¹ erāmus	rēctī ¹ erāmus	audītī ¹ erāmus
2.	" erātis	" erātis	" erātis	" erātis
3.	" erant	" erant	" erant	" erant

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1.	amātus ¹ erō	monitus ¹ erō	rēctus ¹ erō	auditus ¹ erō
2.	" eris	" eris	" eris	" eris
3.	" erit	" erit	" erit	" erit

PLURAL.

1.	amātī ¹ erimus	monitī ¹ erimus	rēctī ¹ erimus	audītī ¹ erimus
2.	" eritis	" eritis	" eritis	" eritis
3.	" erunt	" erunt	" erunt	" erunt

1. Instead of *amatus* and *amati*, *amata* or *amatum* are used in the singular and *amatae* or *amata* in the plural, if the subject is feminine or neuter instead of masculine. So in all conjugations.

29. Subjunctive Mood, Active Voice.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

	<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
1.	amem	moneam	regam	audiam
2.	amēs	moneās	regās	audiās
3.	amet	moneat	regat	audiat

PLURAL.

1.	amēmus	moneāmus	regāmus	audiāmus
2.	amētis	moneātis	regātis	audiātis
3.	ament	moneant	regant	audiant

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1.	amārem	monērem	regerem	audirem
2.	amārēs	monērēs	regerēs	audirēs
3.	amāret	monēret	regeret	audiret

PLURAL.

1.	amārēmus	monērēmus	regerēmus	audirēmus
2.	amārētis	monērētis	regerētis	audirētis
3.	amārent	monērent	regerent	audirent

PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1.	amāverim	monuerim	rēxerim	audiverim
2.	amāveris	monueris	rēxeris	audiveris
3.	amāverit	monuerit	rēxerit	audiverit

PLURAL.

1.	amāverimus	monuerimus	rēxerimus	audiverimus
2.	amāveritis	monueritis	rēxeritis	audiveritis
3.	amāverint	monuerint	rēxerint	audiverint

30. Subjunctive Mood, Passive Voice.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
1. amer	monear	regar	audiar
2. amēris ¹	moneāris ¹	regāris ¹	audiāris ¹
3. amētur	moneātur	regātur	audiātur

PLURAL.

1. amēmur	moneāmur	regāmur	audiāmur
2. amēminī	moneāminī	regāminī	audiāminī
3. amentur	moneantur	regantur	audiantur

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. amārer	monērer	regerer	audīrer
2. amārēris ¹	monērēris ¹	regerēris ¹	audīrēris ¹
3. amārētur	monērētur	regerētur	audīrētur

PLURAL.

1. amārēmur	monērēmur	regerēmur	audīrēmur
2. amārēminī	monērēminī	regerēminī	audīrēminī
3. amārentur	monērentur	regerentur	audirentur

PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. amātus ² sim	monitus ² sim	rēctus ² sim	audītus ² sim
2. " sīs	" sīs	" sīs	" sīs
3. " sit	" sit	" sit	" sit

PLURAL.

1. amātī ² sīmus	monitī ² sīmus	rēctī ² sīmus	audītī ² sīmus
2. " sītis	" sītis	" sītis	" sītis
3. " sint	" sint	" sint	" sint

1. For *-ris, -re* also is found.

2. See footnote 1, page 237.

29. Subjunctive Mood, Active Voice (*continued*).

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
1. amāvīssē	monuīssē	rēxīssē	audīvissem
2. amāvīssēs	monuīssēs	rēxīssēs	audīvisssēs
3. amāvīssēt	monuīssēt	rēxīssēt	audīvisset

PLURAL.

1. amāvīssēmūs	monuīssēmūs	rēxīssēmūs	audīvisssēmūs
2. amāvīssētīs	monuīssētīs	rēxīssētīs	audīvisssētīs
3. amāvīssēt	monuīssēt	rēxīssēt	audīvisset

31. Infinitive Mood, Active Voice.

PRESENT.

amāre	monēre	regere	audire
-------	--------	--------	--------

PERFECT.

amāvīsse	monuīsse	rēxīsse	audīvisse
----------	----------	---------	-----------

FUTURE.

amātūrus esse ¹	monitūrus esse ¹	rēctūrus esse ¹	audītūrus esse ¹
----------------------------	-----------------------------	----------------------------	-----------------------------

33. Participle, Active Voice.

PRESENT.

amāns	monēns	regēns	audiēns
-------	--------	--------	---------

FUTURE.

amātūrus	monitūrus	rēctūrus	audītūrus
----------	-----------	----------	-----------

1. See footnote 2, page 81.

30. Subjunctive Mood, Passive Voice (*continued*).

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

	<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
1.	amātus ¹ essem	monitus ¹ essem	rēctus ¹ essem	auditus ¹ essem
2.	" essēs	" essēs	" essēs	" essēs
3.	" esset	" esset	" esset	" esset

PLURAL.

1.	amātī ¹ essēmus	monitī ¹ essēmus	rēctī ¹ essēmus	audītī ¹ essēmus
2.	" essētis	" essētis	" essētis	" essētis
3.	" essent	" essent	" essent	" essent

32. Infinitive Mood, Passive Voice. .

PRESENT.

amārī	monērī	regī	audirī
-------	--------	------	--------

PERFECT.

amātus esse ²	monitus esse ²	rēctus esse ²	auditus esse ²
--------------------------	---------------------------	--------------------------	---------------------------

FUTURE.

amātum irī	monitum irī	rēctum irī	auditum irī
------------	-------------	------------	-------------

34. Participles, Passive Voice.

PERFECT.

amātus	monitus	rēctus	auditus
--------	---------	--------	---------

GERUNDIVE.

amandus	monendus	regendus	audiendus
---------	----------	----------	-----------

1. See footnote 1, page 237.

2. The perfect infinitive is made up of the perfect participle passive in *-us* and the infinitive of *sum*, which is sometimes omitted. The participle will, of course, agree in gender, number and case with the person or thing it refers to, *i.e.*, the subject.

35. Gerund, Active Voice.

	<i>First Conj.</i>	<i>Second Conj.</i>	<i>Third Conj.</i>	<i>Fourth Conj.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	amandī	monendī	regendī	audiendī
<i>Dat.</i>	amandō	monendō	regendō	audiendō
<i>Acc.</i>	amandum	monendum	regendum	audiendum
<i>Abl.</i>	amandō	monendō	regendō	audiendō

36. Supine, Active Voice.

<i>Acc.</i>	amātum	monitum	rēctum	audītum
<i>Abl.</i>	amātū	monitū	rēctū	audītū

37. Imperative Mood, Active Voice.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. amā	monē	rege	audi
<i>Plur.</i> 2. amāte	monēte	regite	audite

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. amātō	monētō	regitō	audītō
3. amātō	monētō	regitō	audītō
<i>Plur.</i> 2. amātōte	monētōte	regitōte	audītōte
3. amantō	monentō	reguntō	audiuntō

38. Imperative Mood, Passive Voice.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. amāre	monēre	regere	audire
<i>Plur.</i> 2. amāmini	monēmini	regimini	audimini

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. amātor	monētor	regitor	auditor
3. amātor	monētor	regitor	auditor
<i>Plur.</i> 3. amantor	monentor	reguntor	audiuntor

39. Verbs in *iō* of Third Conjugation.¹

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

	<i>Active Voice.</i>	<i>Passive Voice.</i>	<i>Active Voice.</i>	<i>Passive Voice.</i>
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	capiō	capior	capiam	capiar
2.	capis	caperis	capiās	capiāris
3.	capit	capitur	capiat	capiatūr
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	capimus	capimur	capiamus	capiamur
2.	capitis	capimini	capiatīs	capiaminī
3.	capiunt	capiuntur	capiant	capiantur

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	capiebam	capiebar	caperem	caperer
2.	capiebās	capiebāris	caperēs	caperēris
3.	capiebat	capiebātur	caperet	caperētūr
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	capiebāmus	capiebāmur	caperēmus	caperēmur
2.	capiebātis	capiebāminī	caperētīs	caperēminī
3.	capiebant	capiebantur	caperent	caperentur

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	capiam	capiar
2.	capies	capieris
3.	capiet	capietūr
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	capiemus	capiemur
2.	capietis	capieminī
3.	capient	capientur

PERFECT TENSE.²

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	cēpī	captus sum	cēperim	captus sim
-----------------	------	------------	---------	------------

PLUPERFECT TENSE.²

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	cēperam	captus eram	cēpisset	captus essem
-----------------	---------	-------------	----------	--------------

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.²

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	cēperō	captus erō
-----------------	--------	------------

1. For a list of the verbs belonging to this class, see section 67.

2. In the perfect tenses, *capio* is inflected exactly like the verbs of the four regular conjugations.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

	<i>Active Voice.</i>	<i>Passive Voice.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	capere	capī
<i>Perf.</i>	cēpisse	captus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	captūrus esse	captum irī

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	capiēns	<i>Perf.</i>	captus
<i>Fut.</i>	captūrus	<i>Gerun.</i>	capiendus

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i>	capiendī
<i>Dat.</i>	capiendō
<i>Acc.</i>	capiendum
<i>Abl.</i>	capiendō

SUPINE.

<i>Acc.</i>	captum
<i>Abl.</i>	captū

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 2.	cape	capere
<i>Plur.</i> 2.	capite	capimini

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 2.	capitō	capitor
3.	capitō	capitor
<i>Plur.</i> 2.	capitōte	
3.	capiuntō	capiuntor

40. Synopsis of Deponent Verbs.

INDICATIVE.

	<i>First Con.</i>	<i>Second Con.</i>	<i>Third Con.</i>	<i>Fourth Con.</i>	<i>Verbs in iō.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	hortor	vereor	loquor	potior	patior
<i>Impf.</i>	hortābar	verēbar	loquēbar	potiēbar	patiēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	hortābor	verēbor	loquar	potiar	patiar
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus	veritus	locūtus	potītus	passus
	sum	sum	sum	sum	sum
<i>Plup.</i>	hortātus	veritus	locūtus	potītus	passus
	eram	eram	eram	eram	eram
<i>Fut. P.</i>	hortātus	veritus	locūtus	potītus	passus
	erō	erō	erō	erō	erō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	horter	verear	loquar	potiar	patiar
<i>Impf.</i>	hortārer	verērer	loquerer	potirer	paterer
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus	veritus	locūtus	potītus	passus
	sim	sim	sim	sim	sim
<i>Plup.</i>	hortātus	veritus	locūtus	potītus	passus
	essem	essem	essem	essem	essem

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	hortāri	verēri	loquī	potīri	patī
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus	veritus	locūtus	potītus	passus
	esse	esse	esse	esse	esse
<i>Fut.</i>	hortātūrus	veritūrus	locūtūrus	potītūrus	passūrus
	esse	esse	esse	esse	esse

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	hortāns	verēns	loquēns	potiēns	patiēns
<i>Fut.</i>	hortātūrus	veritūrus	locūtūrus	potītūrus	passūrus
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus	veritus	locūtus	potītus	passus
<i>Ger.</i>	hortandus	verendus	loquendus	potiendus	patiendus

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i>	hortandī	verendī	loquendī	potiendī	patiendī
-------------	----------	---------	----------	----------	----------

SUPINE.

	<i>First Con.</i>	<i>Second Con.</i>	<i>Third Con.</i>	<i>Fourth Con.</i>	<i>Verbs in iō.</i>
Acc.	hortātum	veritum	locūtum	potitum	passum

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	hortāre	verēre	loquere	potire	patere
<i>Fut.</i>	hortātor	verētōr	loquitōr	potitōr	patitōr

IRREGULAR VERBS.

41. Sum, esse, fuī, to be.

42. Possum, posse, potuī,
to be able, can.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE. INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. sum	sim	possum	possim
2. es	sīs	potes	possīs
3. est	sit	potest	possit
<i>Plur.</i> 1. sumus	sīmus	possumus	possīmus
2. estis	sītis	potestis	possītis
3. sunt	sint	possunt	possint

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. eram	essem	poteram	possem
2. erās	essēs	poterās	possēs
3. erat	esset	poterat	posset
<i>Plur.</i> 1. erāmus	essēmus	poterāmus	possēmus
2. erātis	essētis	poterātis	possētis
3. erant	essent	poterant	possent

FUTURE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. erō	poterō
2. eris	poteris
3. erit	poterit
<i>Plur.</i> 1. erimus	poterimus
2. eritis	poteritis
3. erunt	poterunt

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE. INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. fui	fuērim	potui	potuerim
2. fuistī	fuēris	potuistī	potueris
3. fuit	fuērit	potuit	potuerit
<i>Plur.</i> 1. fuimus	fuērimus	potuimus	potuerimus
2. fuistis	fuēritis	potuistis	potueritis
3. fuērunt	fuērint	potuērunt	potuerint

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. fueram	fuissem	potueram	potuissem
2. fuerās	fuisēs	potuerās	potuisēs
3. fuerat	fuisset	potuerat	potuisset
<i>Plur.</i> 1. fuerāmus	fuissemus	potuerāmus	potuissemus
2. fuerātis	fuissetis	potuerātis	potuissetis
3. fuerant	fuisent	potuerant	potuisent

FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. fuerō	potuerō
2. fueris	potueris
3. fuerit	potuerit
<i>Plur.</i> 1. fuerimus	potuerimus
2. fueritis	potueritis
3. fuerint	potuerint

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> esse	posse
<i>Perf.</i> fuisse	potuisse
<i>Fut.</i> futūrus esse <i>or</i> fore	

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	potēns
<i>Fut.</i> futūrus	

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. Sing.</i> 2. es
<i>Plur.</i> 2. este
<i>Fut. Sing.</i> 2. estō
3. estō
<i>Plur.</i> 2. estōte
3. suntō

43. Volō, Nōlō, Mālō.¹

Volō, velle, voluī,	<i>be willing, will, wish.</i>
Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī,	<i>be unwilling, will not.</i>
Mālō, mālīe, māluī,	<i>be more willing, prefer.</i>

INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
<i>Impf.</i>	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	volam	nōlam	mālam
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī	nōluī	māluī
<i>Plup.</i>	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
<i>Fut. P.</i>	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
<i>Impf.</i>	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
<i>Plup.</i>	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nōlle	mālīe
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

1. See footnote 3, page 94.

		PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	volēns	nōlēns
		IMPERATIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>		nōlī
		nōlīte
<i>Fut.</i>		nōlītō
		nōlītō
		nōlītōte
		nōluntō

44. Ferō.¹

Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear, carry, endure.

		INDICATIVE.		
	<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>	
<i>Pres.</i>	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris	ferimini
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
<i>Impf.</i>	ferēbam		ferēbar	
<i>Fut.</i>	feram		ferar	
<i>Perf.</i>	tulī		lātus sum	
<i>Plup.</i>	tuleram		lātus eram	
<i>Fut. P.</i>	tulerō		lātus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	feram	ferar
<i>Impf.</i>	ferrem	ferrer
<i>Perf.</i>	tulerim	lātus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	tulisse	lātus essem

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	ferre	ferri
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse	lātus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus esse	lātum iri

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns	<i>Perf.</i> lātus
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus	<i>Ger.</i> ferendus

1. See footnote 1, page 97. For the compounds of *fero*, see section 71, b.

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i>	ferendī
<i>Dat.</i>	ferendō
<i>Acc.</i>	ferendum
<i>Abl.</i>	ferendō

SUPINE.

<i>Acc.</i>	lātum
<i>Abl.</i>	lātū

IMPERATIVE.

	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
<i>Pres. Sing.</i>	2. fer	ferre
	<i>Plur.</i> 2. ferte	ferimini
<i>Fut. Sing.</i>	2. fertō	fertor
	3. fertō	fertor
	<i>Plur.</i> 2. fertōte	
	3. feruntō	feruntor

45. Eō.¹46. Fīō.¹

Eō, ire, ii, (ivī), itum, go. Fīō, fierī, factus sum, be made, become, happen.

INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	eō	īmus	fīō	fīmus
	īs	ītis	fīs	fītis
	it	eunt	fit	fīunt
<i>Impf.</i>	ībam		fīēbam	
<i>Fut.</i>	ībō		fīam	
<i>Perf.</i>	īī		factus sum	
<i>Plup.</i>	ieram		factus eram	
<i>Fut. P.</i>	ierō		factus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	eam, eās, etc.	fīam
<i>Impf.</i>	īrem	fīerem
<i>Perf.</i>	ierim	factus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	iissem	factus essem

1. See footnote 2, page 100.

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	ire	feri
<i>Perf.</i>	iisse	factus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus esse	factum iri

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	iēns, <i>Gen.</i> euntis	<i>Perf.</i> factus
<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus	<i>Ger.</i> faciendus

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i>	eundi
<i>Dat.</i>	eundō
<i>Acc.</i>	eundum
<i>Abl.</i>	eundō

SUPINE.

<i>Acc.</i>	itum
<i>Abl.</i>	itū

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. Sing. 2.</i>	i	<i>Pres. Sing. 2.</i>	fi
<i>Plur. 2.</i>	ite	<i>Plur. 2.</i>	fite
<i>Fut. Sing. 2.</i>	itō		
	3. itō		
<i>Plur. 2.</i>	itōte		
	3. euntō		

II. SYNOPSIS OF ACCIDENCE.

47. Nouns of the First Declension. (See also section 1.)

(a) The STEM ends in **a**, and is like the nominative singular.

(b) GENDER.—Nouns ending in **a** or **ē** are feminine, those ending in **ās** or **ēs** masculine.¹ EXCEPTIONS: Masculine in *a*, some nouns indicating males, e.g., *nauta*, *agricola*, *pōeta*; *Belgae*, *Celtae* (names of tribes); *Cotta*, *Galba* (a man's name); so, also, *Hadria*.

(c) IRREGULAR CASE ENDINGS.—Genitive singular in **-āī** (archaic, in poetry); genitive singular in **-ās** (in the word *familiās* in composition, see section 9); genitive plural in **ūm**, especially in words of Greek origin and (in poetry) in patronymics and compounds of **-cola** and **-gena**; dative and ablative plural in **-ābus** (in *dea* and *fīlia*, to distinguish them from the corresponding forms of *deus* and *fīlius*).²

(d) DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.—These in the singular have the following endings, but those borrowed from the Greek are, however, often replaced by the regular Latin endings:

Nom. ē,	Gen. ēs,	Dat. ae,	Acc. ēn,	Voc. ē,	Abl. ē,
" ās,	" ae,	" ae,	" ān,	" ā, a,	" ā,
" ēs,	" ae,	" ae,	" ēn,	" ē, ā, a,	" ē, ā.

In the plural, the regular Latin endings are used throughout.

48. Nouns of the Second Declension. (See also sections 2 and 3.)

(a) The STEM ends in **o**, and except in quantity is like the dative singular. Most of the nouns whose stems end in **-ro** drop *o* in forming the nominative, inserting also *e* before the final *r*, if, as is more often the case, *r* is not preceded by *e*.

(b) GENDER.—Nouns ending in **us**, **er**, **ir** or **os** are masculine, those ending in **um** or **on** are neuter.³ EXCEPTIONS: Feminine in *us*, many names of towns, plants, gems or ships; also, *humus*, *alvus*, *colus*, *carbasus*, and *vannus*, and some Greek nouns; neuter in *us*, *vulgus*, *pelagus*, *vīrus*.

1. Nouns ending in *e*, *as*, *es* are borrowed from the Greek.

2. *Duo* and *ambo* also have the feminine plural dative and ablative in *-abus*.

3. Nouns ending in *os*, *on*, are borrowed from the Greek.

(c) IRREGULAR CASE ENDINGS.—Genitive singular of nouns in *-us* or *-ium* in **-I**, contracted for **-ī**¹ (without affecting the accent); vocative singular of proper names in *-ius*, as also *filius* and *genius*, in **-I**, contracted for **-ie** (without affecting the accent); genitive plural in **-ūm** (especially in words denoting coins, weights and measures, and in some other words, chiefly in poetry). For the declension of *deus*, see section 9.

(d) DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.—These in the singular have the following endings, but those borrowed from the Greek are, however, often replaced by the regular Latin endings :

Nom. os,	Gen. ī,	Dat. ō,	Acc. on,	Voc. e,	Abl. ō,
" ōs,	ō, ī,	" ō,	" ōn, ō	" ōs,	" ō,
" eus, ²	eī, eos,	" eī,	" ea,	" eu,	" eō,
" on,	ī,	" ō,	" on,	" on,	" ō.

In the plural, the regular Latin endings are used throughout.

49. Nouns of the Third Declension. (See also sections 4-6.)

(a) The STEM ends in either a consonant (the genitive plural having *-um*) or the vowel *-i* (the genitive plural having *-ium*).³

(b) GENDER.—Nouns ending in *ō*, *or*, *ōs*, *er*, *es*, or in *ēs* (increasing in the genitive), are masculine ; nouns ending in *ās* or *as*, *ēs* (not increasing in the genitive), *is*, *ys*, *s* (preceded by a consonant) *ūs* or *x*, are feminine ; nouns ending in *men*, *us*, *a*, *e*, *ī*, *y*, *c*, *l*, *t*, *ār*, *ar*, *ūr* or *ur*, are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—The most important are as follows :

Masculine, not Feminine : Many nouns in *-is* (not increasing in the genitive), *e.g.*, *amnis*, *civis*, *collis*, *ēnsis*, *fīnis*, *fūnis*, *hostis*, *ignis*, *juvenis*, *mēnsis*, *orbis*, *testis* ; also *lapis*, *sanguis*, *pulvis*, *cinis*, *Quirīs*, *Samnīs*, which increase in the genitive ; *dux*, *grex*, *rēmex*, *rēx*, *conjūx*, *senex*, and most nouns in *-ex*, genitive *-icis* ; *dēns*, *fōns*, *mōns*, *pōns*, and most nouns in *-ps* (except *daps*, *ops*, *stirps*) ; *vas* (genitive, *radis*) ; *vātēs* ; *mūs*.

1. In many editions of Latin authors *-ii* is retained except in proper names in *-ius* and *filius*.

2. Nouns in *-eus* are declined in Latin sometimes according to the second and sometimes according to the third declension. See section 49, *d*.

3. Except in neuter nouns, and nouns whose stem ends in a liquid (*l*, *n* or *r*), the nominative is formed by adding *s* to the stem ; the final consonants of the stem in combination with *s* often undergo euphonic changes, and the vowel *i* is often (in both consonant and vowel stems) changed to *e*. Neuter nouns and liquid stems generally have the nominative like the stem (sometimes modified, however, by vowel changes or by the loss of final letters). No rule can be given for the determination of the stem, on account of the many euphonic changes and the confusion which always existed between the consonant and the *i*-declensions ; in a majority of cases, however, it may be obtained by dropping *-um* from the genitive plural.

Masculine, not Neuter: *flāmen*: *cōsul*, *exsul*, *sāl*, *sōl*; *lār*; *augur*, *fūr*; also names of animals, e.g., *lepus*, *vultur*.

Feminine, not Masculine: nouns in *-dō* (except *ōrdō* and *cardō*), *-gō*, and abstract or collective nouns in *-iō*; *carō*; *soror*, *uxor*, *arbor*; *mulier*, *māter*, *linter*; *seges*, *Cerēs*, *mercēs*, *abiēs*, *quīēs*.

Feminine, not Neuter: *Venus*, *pecus* (genitive, *pecudis*); also, *laus*, *fraus*.

Neuter, not Masculine: *cor*, *aequor*, *marmor*; *ōs* (genitive, *ōris*), also *os* (genitive, *ossis*); *vēr*, *īter*, *ūber*, *verber*; *aes*.

Neuter, not Feminine: *vās* (genitive, *vāsīs*); nouns in *-ūs* (genitive, *-ūris*), e.g., *jūs*, *rūs*, *tūs*, *crūs* (except *tellūs*).

(c) IRREGULAR CASE ENDINGS.—No exceptional endings occur, but in several cases a variation of ending is found.¹ The genitive plural is found both in *-um* and in *-ium*. The latter occurs chiefly in *i*-stems, i.e., the following cases:² nouns ending in *-is* or *-ēs*, with dissyllabic nominative and genitive; monosyllables ending in *-s* or *-x* preceded by a consonant; nouns ending in *-ns* or *-rs*; neuter nouns ending in *-e*, *-al* or *-ar*; national names in *-ās* or *-īs*; also *imber*, *linter*, *vīs*, *nox*, *nix*, *fūr*, *lār*, *mās*, *os* (*ossis*), *carō*, the plural nouns *penātēs*, *optimātēs* and *faucēs*.

The accusative plural in masculine or feminine nouns of *i*-stems has *-īs* as well as *-ēs*.

The accusative singular has *-im* for *-em* in the following cases: *vīs*, *sītis*, and names of rivers in *-is* (also *Arar*); generally *febris*, *secūris*; rarely *nāvis*.

The ablative singular has *-ī* for *-e* in the following cases: *vīs*, *sītis*, *secūris*, names of rivers in *-is* (also *Arar*), neuter nouns in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar* (genitive, *-āris*); generally *ignīs*, *nāvis*, *continēns*, *puppīs*, *avis*; also, *turris*, *imber*, *trīdēns*, *familiāris*. For the declension of *vīs*, *bōs* and *Jūppiter*, see section 9.

(d) DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.—These in the singular often have the genitive in *-os* and the accusative in *-a*; in the plural, the nominative and vocative in *-es* and the accusative in *-as*.³

The other chief irregularities are as follows: Nom. *is*, Acc. *in*; Nom. *ys*, Acc. *yn*; Nom. *ō*, Gen. *ūs*, Dat., Acc., Voc., and Abl., *ō*; Nom. *ēs*, Gen. *is* (*ī*), Dat. *ī*, Acc. *em*, *ea* (*ēn*), Voc. *ēs*, *es* (*ē*), Abl. *e*; Nom. *eus*, Gen. *eos* (*eī*, *ī*), Dat. *eī*, *ī* (*eō*), Acc. *ea* (*eum*), Voc. *eu*, Abl. (*eō*).

1. This variation is due chiefly to a confusion between the consonant and the *i*-stems. The tendency is for nouns to take the endings of the consonant stems and for adjectives to take those of the *i*-stems.

2. Exceptions are: *juvenis*, *canis*, *vates*, *ambages*, and often *mensis*, *volucris*, *apis*, *sedes*; *opīs*; *parens*.

3. In Cæsar the names of Gallic tribes have often *es* in the nominative and *as* in the accusative, the declension of Greek nouns being transferred to other foreign names.

50. Nouns of the Fourth Declension. (See also section 7.)

(a) The STEM ends in **u**, and except in quantity is like the ablative singular.

(b) GENDER.—Nouns ending in **us** are masculine, those ending in **ū** are neuter. EXCEPTIONS: Feminine in *us*, names of plants and trees, also *domus*, *mannus*, *tribus*, *Īdūs* (plural only).

(c) IRREGULAR CASE ENDINGS.—Dative singular in **-ū**, contracted for **-uī**; dative and ablative plural in **-ubus**, found in dissyllabic words in *-cus* (e.g., *lacus*, *arcus*), also in *artus*, *partus*, *tribus*, and generally *portus* and *veru*. For the declension of *domus*, see section 9. The names of plants or trees belonging to the fourth declension have generally most of the forms of the second declension also.

51. Nouns of the Fifth Declension. (See also section 8.)

(a) The STEM ends in **ē**, and is like the ablative singular.

(b) GENDER.—All nouns end in **ēs** and are regularly feminine. EXCEPTIONS: Masculine, *diēs*,¹ with its compound *meridiēs*.

(c) IRREGULAR CASE ENDINGS.—Genitive singular **ī** or **ē** for **eī**. In the fifth declension only *diēs* and *rēs* are declined throughout. *Acīēs*, *effigiēs*, *faciēs*, *glaciēs*, *seriēs*, *speciēs* and *spēs*, have, in the plural, only the nominative and accusative; other words occur in the singular only.

52. General Rules for Gender.

(a) Names of *males*, and of *rivers*, *winds*, *months* and *mountains*, are masculine.

(b) Names of *females*, and of *cities*, *towns*, *islands*, *plants*, *trees* and *abstract qualities*, are feminine.

(c) Indeclinable nouns, and infinitives, phrases or clauses used as substantives, are neuter.

(d) Other nouns, and some even of the classes (a) and (b) above, follow the rules for gender (according to the ending of the nominative singular) given under each declension.

53. General Rules of Declension.

The declension to which a word belongs is indicated in all vocabularies and dictionaries by giving the ending of the genitive singular, which is different for each declension.

1. *Diēs* is sometimes feminine in the singular, chiefly in the sense of *a day or time agreed on or fixed*.

SYNOPSIS OF CASE ENDINGS.

SINGULAR.

	1st Decl.	2nd Decl.	3rd Decl.		4th Decl.	5th Decl.
Nom.	a	us (—) um	—	—	us ū	ēs
Gen.	ae	ī ī	is	is	ūs ūs	eī
Dat.	ae	ō ō	ī	ī	uī ū	eī*
Acc.	am	um um	em	—	um ū	em
Voc.	a	e (—) um	—	—	us ū	ēs
Abl.	ā	ō ō	e (ī)	e (ī)	ū ū	ē

PLURAL.

Nom.	ae	ī	a	ēs	a (ia)	ūs	ua	ēs
Gen.	ārum	ōrum	ōrum	um (ium)	um (ium)	uum	uum	ērum
Dat.	īs	īs	īs	ibus	ibus	ibus	ibus	ēbus
Acc.	ās	ōs	a	ēs (īs)	a (ia)	ūs	ua	ēs
Voc.	ae	ī	a	ēs	a (ia)	ūs	ua	ēs
Abl.	īs	īs	īs	ibus	ibus	ibus	ibus	ēbus

The following general statements should be noticed :

Neuter nouns have the nominative, accusative and vocative, in each number, alike, and in the plural these cases always end in *a* (*ia*).

All nouns of the third, fourth and fifth declensions have the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural alike.

All nouns have the nominative and vocative plural alike, and (except in nouns in *-us* of the second declension) these cases are always alike in the singular also.

In masculine or feminine nouns, the accusative singular always ends in *m*, preceded by a short vowel; the accusative plural in *s*, preceded by a long vowel.

The dative and ablative plural are always alike.

The genitive plural always ends in *um*.

54. Nouns Irregular in Declension or Peculiar in Usage.

(a) DEFECTIVE NOUNS.—The *singular only* of the following is ordinarily found:¹ Proper names of places or persons, single natural objects, names of things weighed or measured (not counted), collective nouns, names of abstract qualities; *e.g.*, *Rōma*, *Jūppiter*; *tellūs*, *humus*; *aurum*, *aes*; *equitātus*, *vulgus*; *ira*, *sic-citās*.

The *plural only* of the following is ordinarily found: Names of

1. These are occasionally found in the plural also, with special meanings (see section 54, e). Some names of cities occur in the plural only, *e.g.*, *Athenae*, *Dēlphī*.

days and festivals, names of classes or groups, names of certain parts of the body; e.g., *Calendae, Nōnae, Idūs, Bacchanālia; l berī, mājōrēs, inferī, superī, mājōrēs, penātēs; artūs, cervicēs, exta, viscera, faucēs, ūlia, praecordia*; and also of the following words: *ambāgēs, angustiae, arma, armāmenta, bigae, cassēs, castra, dīliciae, dīritiae, epulae, excubiae, exsequiae, exuviae, fastī, grātēs, indūtiae, inferiae, inimicitiae, insidiae, minae, moenia, nūptiae, phalerae, quadrāgae, reliquiae, sata, sentēs, sarta, tenebrae, virgulta.*

The following words are defective in certain cases :

Found in but one case: *Māne, noctū, jūssū, injūssū, nātū, rogātū, promptū.*

Found in but two cases: *Fors, forte; spontis, sponte; forās, forīs.*

Found in but three cases: *Nēmō, nēmīnī, nēmīnem; luēs, luem, lue; grātēs (nom. and acc.), grātibus.*

Defective in singular, regular in plural: *Vīs* (see section 9); *fidēs* (lyre), *fidem, fide; frūgēs* (rare in sing.); *opēs* (nom. and dat. sing. lacking); *precēs* (nom. and gen. sing. lacking).

Defective in plural, regular in singular: *Rūs, jūs, aes, far*, in nom. and acc. only; *calx, cor, fax, lūx, nex, ōs, pāx, rōs, sāl, sōl, tūs*, lack the gen.; most nouns of the fifth declension (see section 51, c.).

Defective in both singular and plural: *Dapis* (nom. and dat. sing., and gen. plur. lacking); *diciōnis* (nom. sing. and all the plural lacking); *vicis* (nom. and dat. sing., and gen. plur. lacking).

(b) HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS (with the same stem, but of varying gender):

Sing. <i>Carbasus, ī, F.,</i>	Plur. <i>Carbasa, ōrum, N.</i>
" <i>Epulum, ī, N.,</i>	" <i>Epulae, ārum, F.</i>
" <i>Frēnum, ī, N.,</i>	" <i>Frēnī, ōrum, M.,</i> and (poetical) <i>frēna, ōrum, N.</i>
" <i>Jocus, ī, M.,</i>	" <i>Joca, ōrum, N.,</i> also <i>jocī, ōrum, M.</i>
" <i>Locus, ī, M.,</i>	" <i>Loca, ōrum, N.,</i> also <i>locī, ōrum, M.</i> (generally in transferred sense).
" <i>Rastrum, ī, N.,</i>	" <i>Rastrī, ōrum, M.,</i> also <i>rastra, ōrum, N.</i>
" <i>Tartarus, ī, M.,</i>	" <i>Tartara, ōrum, N.</i>

(c) HETEROCLITE NOUNS (different stems with the same nominative¹).—*Colus, cupressus, laurus, myrtus, pīnus*, generally of the second declension, have also forms (in most cases, the abl. sing. and nom. and acc. plur.) of the fourth.

Domus has forms of both the second and the fourth declension. (See section 9.)

Famēs, is, has also abl. *famē*, of the fifth declension.

1. Under Heteroclites are generally classed the nouns of the first declension which have also a form of the fifth declension, e.g., *materia, materies.*

Femur, gen. *femoris*, or *feminis*.

Jecur, gen. *jecoris*, *jecinoris*, or *jocinoris*.

Jūgerum, *ī*, has, in the plural, generally *jugera*, *um*, of the third declension.

Pecus, *pecoris*, n., or *pecudis*, f., also, in the plural, *pecua*, of the fourth declension.

Plēbs, *plēbis*, and *plēbēs*, *plēbis*, or *plēbēī*.

Praesaepe, *is*, n., and *praesaepēs*, *is*, f., also *praesaepium*, *ī*.

Pūbes, *pūbis*, or *pūberis*.

Requies, *requiētis*, has also *requiem* and *requiē* of the fifth declension.

Vās, *vāsīs*, has, in the plural, *vāsa*, *ōrum*, of the second declension.

Vesper, *vesperis*, or *vesperī*.

(d) INDECLINABLE NOUNS.—(Most of these are used in the nominative and accusative only). *Fūs*, *nefūs*, *īnstar*, *māne* (in poetry), *nesse*, *nihil*, *opus*, *secus*.

(e) NOUNS WITH A SPECIAL MEANING IN THE PLURAL.—Many nouns found ordinarily in the singular only (section 54, a) are used in a special sense in the plural. Names of persons are used to denote the family or individuals of the same character, e.g., *Lūcullī*; names of materials to denote objects made of them, e.g., *uera*, bronze vessels; names of single natural objects in a transferred sense, e.g., *sōlēs*, days; abstract nouns to denote various manifestations of the quality, e.g., *irae*, bursts of passion; *siccitātēs*, droughts (in different places).¹

The following also have a different meaning in the singular and plural: *aedēs*, S. temple, PL. house, palace; *auxilium*, S. aid, PL. auxiliaries; *bonum*, S. a blessing, advantage, PL. property; *castrum*, S. (rare, except as proper name), fort, PL. camp; *carcer*, S. prison, PL. barriers (of a race-course); *comitium*, S. voting-place, PL. election; *cōpia*, S. abundance, PL. troops, stores; *fīnis*, S. end, PL. territory; *fortūna*, S. lot, fortune, PL. possessions; *impedimentum*, S. hindrance, PL. baggage; *littera*, S. letter (of alphabet), PL. letter (despatch, document, literature); *mōs*, S. custom, PL. character; *rōstrum*, S. beak of ship, PL. a speaker's platform at Rome.

55. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. (See also section 10.)

Most adjectives of this declension are declined like *bonus*; of those ending in *-er*, the majority are declined like *aeger*, the

1. Sometimes the singular of a concrete noun is used as a collective, i.e., as equivalent to the plural, e.g., *miles*, the soldiery. Again, the poets often use the plural for the singular as though to heighten the effect.

exceptions being *asper*, *liber*, *lacer*, *miser*, *tener*, compounds in *-fer* and *-ger*, and sometimes *dexter*.

Satur, *satūra*, *saturum* is declined like *liber*, except for the difference of vowel.

For adjectives with the genitive in *-ius* and dative in *-ī*, see section 14.

Adjectives in *-ius* do not contract the genitive and vocative as do the nouns.

56. Adjectives of the Third Declension. (See also section 11.)

(a) These are commonly divided into adjectives of *one*, *two*, or *three* terminations, according to the number of varying forms found for the different genders in the nominative singular. Adjectives of three terminations are those with stems in *-ri*; those of two terminations with stems in *-i* (except most of those in *-ri*) and comparatives; those of one termination with stems in consonants (except comparatives). See also footnote 1, page 28.

(b) As a rule all adjectives (except comparatives) have *-i* in the ablative singular, *-ium* in the genitive plural, and *-ia* in the nominative, accusative and vocative plural neuter.¹ The following exceptions occur:

With abl. sing. in *-e*: *pauper*, *pūbes*, *prīnceps*, *caelebs*, *compos*, *impos*, and adjectives in *-es*, gen. *-itis* or *-idis*, e.g., *dīves*, *superstes*.

With gen. plur. in *-um*: adjectives with the penult of the genitive short, e.g., those with the abl. sing. in *-e*, those in *-ceps*, those with genitives in *-eris*, *-oris*, *-uris*.

With neut. plur. in *-a*: *vetus*, *ūber*.

Participles have regularly *-ia* and *-ium*: when used as adjectives they have *-ī*, as participles *-e*,² in the ablative singular.

56a. Defective and Indeclinable Adjectives.

Paucī and (generally) *plērīque* are used in the plural only.

Cētera, *īnfera*, *supera*, *postera*, *lūdīcra*, lack the nominative singular masculine.

Sontis and *sēminecis* lack the nominative singular.

Many adjectives of one termination in the third declension lack the neuter plural, e.g., *memor*, *pauper*, *supplex*, *trux*, *compos*, *ūber*.

Frūgī and *nēquam* are indeclinable, and so often *potis*.

1. Adjectives of one termination occasionally have *-e* as well as *-ī*, and comparatives (rarely) *-i* as well as *-e*.

2. Virgil has *venientum* for *venientium*. Notice, too, that occasionally adjectives used as substantives (section 88, a) have the endings *e* and *um*.

57. Comparison of Adjectives. (See also sections 12, 13, 56, b.)

In addition to the instances of irregular comparison given in section 13, the following irregularities occur:

Compounds in *-dicus*, *-ficus* and *-volus*, and also *prōvidus*, change *-us* to *-entior*, *-entissimus*.

<i>egēnus</i>	<i>egentior</i>	<i>egentissimus</i>
<i>frūgī</i>	<i>frūgālior</i>	<i>frūgālissimus</i>
<i>nēquam</i>	<i>nēquior</i>	<i>nēquissimus</i>
<i>dexter</i>	<i>dexterior</i>	<i>dextimus</i>
<i>potis</i>	<i>potior</i>	<i>potissimus</i>
<i>senex</i>	<i>senior</i> (<i>mājor nātū</i>) ¹	<i>māximus nātū</i> ¹
<i>juvenis</i>	<i>jūnior</i> (<i>minor nātū</i>) ¹	<i>minimus nātū</i> ¹
	<i>ōcior</i>	<i>ōcissimus</i>
	<i>dēterior</i>	<i>dēterrimus</i>

The comparative is lacking in: *diversus*, *falsus*, *fīdus* (and its compounds), *inclutus*, *invictus*, *invitus*, *novus*, *sacer*, *vetus*.

The superlative is lacking in: *alacer*, *caecus*, *diūturnus*, *ingēns*, *longīnquus*, *opīmus*, *prōclivis*, *propīnquus*, *salūtāris*, *sēgnis*; also in most verbals in *-ilis* (except *amābilis*, *fertilis*, *mōbilis*, *nōbilis*, *ūtilis*).

Many adjectives are incapable of comparison, especially those whose meaning does not admit of degrees; also most adjectives in *-us* preceded by a vowel (except those in *-quus* and *-gnus*), compound adjectives, and *albus*, *claudus*, *ferus*, *lassus*, *mīrus*. If in these cases comparison is to be expressed, the adverbs **magis** (*more*) and **māximē** (*most*) are used with the positive.

Many present and perfect participles, used as adjectives, are compared.

58. Numerals. (See also sections 15, 16.)

(a) *Ūnus* in the plural is used in the sense of *alone*, or with nouns plural in form but singular in meaning in the sense of *one*, e.g., *ūnī Suēbī*, *ūna castra*. The singular also may mean *alone*.

(b) In combining numerals up to 100, either the ten without *et*, or the unit with *et*, precedes.² But the forms expressing subtraction, e.g., *duodēvīgintī*, *ūndētrīgintū*, are more common than those expressing union. In combining numerals above 100, the order

1. *Natu* (literally *by birth*) is often omitted.

2. Compare English *twenty-one*, or *one and twenty*, but notice that the latter is unusual in ordinary prose English, while *unus et viginti* is good prose Latin.

is thousands (if present), hundreds, tens, units; *et* may or may not be inserted after the highest number.

(c) The distributive numerals are: 1. *singulī*, 2. *bīnī*, 3. *ternī*, 4. *quaternī*, 5. *quīnī*, 6. *sēnī*, 7. *septēnī*, 8. *octōnī*, 9. *novēnī*, 10. *dēnī*, 20. *vīcēnī*, 100. *centēnī*, etc. They are declined like the plural of *bonus* (see section 10), but often have *-ūm* for *-ōrum* in the genitive.

The distributives are numeral adjectives used (1) to signify (*so many*) each, or a piece, (2) in multiplication (*bis septēnī*, *twice seven*, not *bis septem*, except in poetry), (3) with nouns used in the plural only, in place of the cardinals (except that *ūnī* is used for *one*, and *trīnī*, not *ternī*, for *three*), (4) to express pairs of objects, (5) in poetry often for the cardinal.

(d) The numeral adverbs are: 1. *semel*, *once*, 2. *bīs*, *twice*, 3. *ter*, 4. *quater*, 5. *quīnquiēs*, 6. *sexlēs*, 7. *septiēs*, 8. *octiēs*, 9. *noviēs*, 10. *deciēs*, 20. *vīciēs*, 100. *centiēs*, 1000. *milliēs*. For the forms in *-ēs*, *-ēns* is also found.

(e) Fractions are often expressed as in English: *Tertia*, or *tertia pars*, $\frac{1}{3}$; *septem nōnae*, $\frac{7}{9}$; but where the numerator is one less than the denominator, by the cardinal and *partēs* alone, e.g., *duae partēs*, $\frac{2}{3}$. One-half is *dīmidium*, or *dīmidia pars*. Another method commonly adopted for many fractions is to use the names of the fractional parts of the *ās* (a Roman standard unit for coins, weights and measures). *Sesqui-* is used in compounds, meaning $1\frac{1}{2}$.

(f) **Mille** in the singular is regularly an indeclinable adjective in agreement with its substantive; rarely (generally in the nominative or accusative) a neuter noun, followed by the genitive.

Millia (or **Millia**), the plural, is a neuter noun, followed by the genitive.¹ If *millia* be the subject of a verb, whose form indicates gender, the masculine is often found in place of the neuter, by a sense construction. If to *millia* is added some smaller number, a noun preceding the combination is in the genitive, but a noun following the combination is in the same case as *millia*.²

59. Adverbs. (See also section 17).

Adverbs are formed from nouns and pronouns as well as from adjectives,³ though the derivation is often disguised by euphonic changes.

1. In the common phrase *millia passuum*, when the sentence requires the genitive *millium*, Latin writers regularly omit *passuum*.

2. That is, in both cases the noun is taken with the nearer numeral and understood with the other. For the predicate after *millia*, see section 79, b, ii.

3. Only those formed from adjectives can be compared (with the exception of *saepe* and *dū*).

Accusative Case—(Nouns) *partim, diū, fūrtim*; (Pronouns) *tum, tam, quum, quam, tunc, nunc*; (Adjectives) *aliās, nōn, singulātīm*.

Ablative Case—(Nouns) *vulgō*; (Pronouns) *quā, hāc, quī*; (Adjectives) *frūstrā, intrā, contrā*.

Locative Case—(Nouns) *hodiē, herī*; (Pronouns) *ibi, ubi, hīc, hīnc, inde, utī, ut, sic, olim, utrimque*.

Dative Case—(Pronouns) *quō, hōc, eō, adeō*; (Adjectives) *ūltrō*.

Fossilized Phrases—*quārē, cūr, quamobrem, quotannīs, proptereā, antea, postea, extemplō, obviam, interdum, admodum*.

Miscellaneous—Adverbs in *-tus*, e.g., *antiquitus, intus, penitus, funditus, divinitus*; *quidem, quondam, quandō, jam, etiam, dum, ita*.

60. Personal, Possessive and Reflexive Pronouns. (See also sections 18-21.)

(a) In the first and second persons, the personal pronouns serve also as the reflexive pronouns.

(b) In the partitive sense, the genitives *nostrū* and *vestrū* are used; in the objective sense, the genitives *meī, tuī, suī, nostrī* and *vestrī*; in the possessive and subjective senses, the adjectives *meus, tuus, suus, noster* and *vester*.

(c) For *mihi*, the contracted form *mī* also occurs. These pronouns are emphasized by the addition of certain particles, especially *-met* (added to all forms of *ego, tū* and *suī*, except *tū* and the genitive plural) and *-pte* (added to the ablative singular of the possessives). Reduplicated forms of the accusative singular of the personal and reflexive pronouns also occur, especially *sēsē*, which, in usage, is interchangeable with *sē*.

(d) With *ego, tū, suī*, the preposition *cum* is always suffixed to the ablative it governs, the accent being on the syllable preceding *-cum*.

(e) The reflexive pronouns with *inter* are equivalent to the reciprocal *each other* or *one another* (including often the English preposition governing these words), e.g., *inter sē amant, inter nōs colloquimur*.

61. Demonstrative Pronouns. (See also sections 22, 23.)

Hīc is often emphasized by the addition of *-ce* to the cases ending in *-s* (and sometimes in *-m*, which is then changed to *-n*).¹

1. The *-c* of *hīc, hūnc, hōc, haec*, is a remnant of this same suffix *-ce*. In the same way *ille* and *iste* have (in colloquial use) more emphatic forms, in the nominative, accusative and ablative ending in *-c*, in the other cases (except the genitive plural) in *-ce*.

For the feminine plural nominative *hae*, **haec** also occurs.

For the dative singular of *ille*, **ollī** is found (from an archaic *ollus*).

In the genitive singular of *ille* and *iste*, the poets often use *illius* and *istius*, not *illius* and *istius*.

Of the alternative forms given for the nominative, dative and ablative plural of *is* and *īdem*, those in *eī* are the rarer. Those in *ī* are often written *ī* (and probably with greater correctness).

62. Relative, Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns. (See also sections 24-26.)

(a) An ablative singular form **quī** occurs, chiefly with *cum*. It is also used as an adverb meaning *how*. **Quis** occurs for the dative and ablative plural.

In the interrogative and indefinite pronouns, the distinction between adjective and substantive forms (sections 25 and 26) is less carefully observed in the masculine than in the neuter.

Quis indefinite has sometimes *quae* in feminine singular and neuter plural.

The two parts of *quicumque* are sometimes divided by another word.

(b) With the relative and interrogative pronouns, the preposition *cum* is (except very rarely) suffixed to the ablative it governs, the accent being on the syllable preceding *-cum*. Occasionally other prepositions (especially *contrā*) follow the relative, without, however, forming one word with it.

63. Correlatives.

INTERROGATIVE.	DEMONSTRATIVE.	RELATIVE.	INDEFINITE.	INDEFINITE RELATIVE.
<i>who?</i>	is (hīc, ille, iste)	quī	quis, aliquis, quisquam, quīdam	quisquis
<i>of what sort?</i>	tālis	quālis		
<i>how great?</i>	tantus	quantus	aliquantus	quantusvis
<i>how many?</i>	tot	quot	aliquot	quotquot
<i>which of two?</i>	uterque, neuter, alter	(quī)	uter, alteruter,	uter
<i>where?</i>	ibi	ubi	usquam	ubicumque
<i>whence?</i>	inde, hinc	unde	alicunde	
<i>whither?</i>	eō, eōdem, hīc	quō	aliquō, quō	quōquō
<i>by what way?</i>	eā, eādem, hāc	quā	aliquā	
<i>when?</i>	tum, tunc, nunc	cum, quandō	aliquandō, quandō, unquam	quandocumque
<i>how often?</i>	totiēs	quotiēs		quotiēscumque
<i>how? (manner)</i>	quōmodō, ut ita, sic,	ut, utī		utcumque
<i>how? (degree)</i>	tam	quam		quamquam, quamvis.

64. Verb Inflection.

(a) The PRINCIPAL PARTS of a verb give the main stems from which, as starting points, all parts of a verb are formed according to a fixed system.

From the *present indicative* (in *-ō*, or with deponents, *-or*) are formed:

the present, imperfect and future indicative, active and passive;

the present and imperfect subjunctive, active and passive;

the present and future imperative, active and passive;

the present infinitive, active and passive;

the present participle active, the gerundive and the gerund.

From the *perfect indicative active* (in *-ī*) are formed:

the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect indicative active;

the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive active;

the perfect infinitive active.

From the *supine* (in *-um*) or with deponents from the perfect indicative (in *-us sum*) are formed:

the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect indicative passive;

the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive passive;

the perfect and future infinitive passive;

the perfect participle passive;

the future participle and future infinitive active, and the supine.

The stems of any active verb may be found by omitting *-re*, *-ī* and *-um* in the present infinitive, perfect and supine in the principal parts.¹

These stems are called respectively, the present, perfect and supine stems.

The parts of the verb derived from the perfect and supine stems are formed in the same manner in all conjugations (and also in irregular verbs); the formation of the parts derived from the present stem differs with each conjugation, for which reason the present infinitive (active or deponent) is always included among the principal parts, to indicate the conjugation.

1. The stems of a deponent verb may be got by omitting *-ri* of the present infinitive (in the third conjugation by changing *-i* to *-e*) for the present stem, and by omitting *-us sum* of the perfect indicative for the supine stem. The perfect stem does not occur.

(b) The PERSONAL ENDINGS in Latin are as follows :

1. Indicative and Subjunctive.	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.	
[N.B.—The active endings are used in the perfect or compound tenses of the passive.]	m (or ō)	or	I.
	s	ris (or re)	you.
	t	tur	he, she, it.
	mus	mur	we.
	tis	mini	you.
	nt	ntur	they.
2. Perfect Indicative Active.	I, istI, it, imus, istis, ěrunt.		
3. Imperative.	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.	
Pres. Sing. 2.	(the present stem)	re	
Plur. 2.	te	mini	
Fut. Sing. 2.	tō	tor	
	3. tō	tor	
Plur. 2.	tōte	(wanting)	
	3. ntō	ntor	

(c) The various tenses and moods have the following formation :

1. INDICATIVE.—The *present* has no sign, but is the present stem + the personal endings. The *imperfect* has always **ba**, preceded by a long vowel. The *future* has, in the first and second conjugations, **bi** (*b, bu, be*), in the third and fourth conjugations, **e** (*a*). The *perfect active* is made up of the perfect stem + the personal endings of the perfect active. The *pluperfect* has always **era**. The *future perfect* has **eri** (*er, eru*). The *perfect, pluperfect and future perfect passive* are composed of the perfect participle passive with the present, imperfect and future indicative respectively of the verb **sum**.

2. SUBJUNCTIVE.—The *present* may be formed by changing **o** of the present indicative in the first conjugation to **e**, in the second, third and fourth to **a**, and adding the personal endings. The *imperfect* has always **re**, and may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present infinitive active. The *perfect active* has always **eri**. The *pluperfect active* has always **isse**. The *perfect and pluperfect passive* are composed of the perfect participle passive with the present and imperfect subjunctive respectively of the verb **sum**.

3. INFINITIVE.—The *present active* is the present stem + **re**. The *perfect active* is the perfect stem + **isse**. The *future active* is the future participle with **esse**. The *present passive* is the present stem + **ri**, except in the third conjugation, where it is formed by changing **o** of the present stem to **i**. The *perfect passive*

is the perfect participle passive with *esse*. The *future passive* is the supine with *irī* (the present infinitive passive of *eō*, I go).

4. PARTICIPLES.—The *present active* is the present stem + *ns* (in the fourth conjugation, *ens*). The *future active* is the supine stem + *urus*.¹ The *perfect passive* is the supine stem + *us*. The *gerundive* is the present stem + *ndus* (in the fourth conjugation, *endus*).

5. GERUND.—The *gerund* is the present stem + *ndī* (in the fourth conjugation, *endī*).

65. Formation of the Tense Stems.

The PRESENT STEM in the first, second and fourth conjugations is identical with the verb stem, e.g., *amā-* (*amō*), *complē-* (*complēō*), *audī-* (*audiō*). But sometimes, and especially in the second conjugation, *ā*, *ē*, or *ī* is added to the verb stem, e.g., *vetā-* (*vetō*), *vidē-* (*videō*), *venī-* (*veniō*). (This is practically a mixture of conjugations.)

In the third conjugation a short vowel (*e*, *i*) is added to the verb stem, which may remain unchanged, e.g., *rege-* (*regō*), or may be changed or extended in one of the following ways :

Lengthening the vowel, e.g., *dūce-* (*dūcō*);

Adding, or inserting a nasal (*n*, *m*) e.g., *temne-* (*temnō*), *vince-* (*vincō*);

Adding *t*, e.g., *pecte-* (*pectō*);

Adding *sc*, or (after consonants) *isc*, e.g., *cōgnōsce-* (*cōgnōscō*), *proficisce-* (*proficiscor*).

Adding *i* (which, after *l* or *r*, is assimilated), e.g., *capi-* (*capiō*²), *pelle-* (*pellō*), *curre-* (*currō*);

Reduplication, e.g., *siste-* (*sistō*).

The PERFECT STEM is formed from verb stems :

(a) Ending in a vowel, by adding *v* (in the second conjugation changed generally to *u*, with *ē* of the verb stem dropped), e.g., *amāv-* (*amāvī*), *complēv-* (*complēvī*), *habu-* (*habuī*), *audīv-* (*audīvī*).

(b) Ending in a consonant, in most cases, by adding *s*, e.g., *carps-* (*carpsī*). But if a single consonant be preceded by a short vowel, this vowel is lengthened, and *s* is not added, e.g., *ēg-* (*ēgī*) from *ag-* (*agō*).

(c) In a few cases, chiefly after liquids by adding *u*, e.g., *alu-* (*aluī*).

(d) Sometimes reduplicating the verb stem, e.g., *popul-* (*populī*), from *pel-* (*pellō*).

1. In a few verbs the future participle active is formed from the present stem, e.g., *juvo*, *lavo*, *seco*, *sono*; *morior*, *orior*, *parior*, *nascor*.

2. Verbs in *-io* do not retain *i* before all endings. (See section 67.)

The SUPINE STEM is formed by adding *t* to the verb stem, but if this ends in *d*, *t*, *l*, or *r*, *t* is regularly changed to *s*; e.g., *amāt-* (*amātum*), *vent-* (*ventum*), *puls-* (*pulsum*). In the second conjugation those verbs which have *uī* in the perfect have *i*, not *ē*, before *t*.

The following EUPHONIC CHANGES occur in adding *s* of the perfect and *t* or *s* of the supine to consonant verb stems:

- c, g, qu** with **s**, become **x**;
- g, qu**, before **t**, become **c**;
- b**, before **s** or **t**, becomes **p**;
- t, d**, before **s**, are dropped, or become **s**.

66. Irregular Forms in the Conjugation of the Regular Verb.

Perfects in *-āvī*, *-ēvī*, and also *mōvī* and *nōvī* (from *moveō* and *nōscō*) often, before *s* or *r*, drop *v* and contract the two vowels thus brought together to *ā*, *ē*, *ō* respectively.

Perfects in *-īvī* may drop *v* in any of their forms,¹ but the vowels thus brought together are contracted (to *i*) only before *s*.

For *-ērunt* of the perfect indicative *-ēre* is found, chiefly in poetry.

For *-ris* of the second singular passive *-re* is found, but rarely in the present indicative.

The gerund and gerundive of the third and fourth conjugations have sometimes, especially after *i*, **-undī** and **-undus** for *-endī* and *endus*.

The archaic **-ier** for *-ī* of the present infinitive passive is used by the poets.

Sometimes in poetry *is*, *iss*, or *sis*, is dropped in forms from perfects in *-sī* or *-xī*

The imperative, second singular present active, of *dīcō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, *ferō*, is **dīc**, **dūc**, **fac**, **fer**. These forms are retained in compounds, except in those compounds of *faciō*, which change to *-ficiō*.

An archaic future perfect indicative in **-sō** and perfect subjunctive in **-sim** are found in poetry. (*Faxō* is for *facō*.)

In the compound tenses of the regular verb, *esse* is very often omitted, especially in the future infinitive active; so also *est* and *sunt*, but chiefly in poetry.

1. Except in the compounds of *eo*, in *peto* and *desino*, perfects in *-ivi* do not drop *v* except before *s* or *r*.

67. Verbs in -iō of the Third Conjugation.

These drop **i** before **i**, **ī** or **er**, but otherwise are formed precisely after the model of *regō*, replacing *reg-* by *capī-*, *facī-*, *fugī-*, etc.

The verbs so conjugated are : **capīō, cupīō, faciō, fodiō, fugīō, jaciō, pariō, quatiō, rapiō, sapiō**; **moriō, patior**; and compounds (of obsolete verbs) ending in **-liciō, -spiciō, -gredior**.

68. Deponent Verbs.

A synopsis of the conjugation of deponent verbs (which may be defined as verbs which no longer retain the active forms, but use the passive forms with an active meaning), is given in section 40.

(a) The **PRINCIPAL PARTS** of deponents necessarily differ from those of the regular active verb. The present indicative and infinitive are given in the passive forms, there is no perfect (active) stem, and the supine stem is indicated by giving the perfect indicative (passive). (See footnote 1, page 265.)

(b) **SEMI-DEPONENTS** are certain verbs which are deponent in the perfect tenses only, viz., **audeō, ēre, ausus sum; gaudeō, ēre, gavīsus sum; fidō, ere, fīsus sum** (and compounds); **soleō, ēre, solitus sum**.

Fīō, fierī, factus sum (section 46) is practically a semi-deponent, and several verbs otherwise active are deponent in the perfect participle, e.g., *cēnō, cēnātus; prandeō, prānsus; jūrō* (so *conjūrō*), *jūratus; suēscō, suētus; adulēscō, adultus*. Certain also of the impersonal verbs have in the perfect both active and deponent forms, e.g., *placet* has *placuit* and *placitum est*; so *libet* and *licet*.

(c) The forms of the ordinary deponent are not all passive, nor is the meaning of all its parts active. The deponent verb has regularly the *present* and *future participles*, the *future infinitive*, the *gerund* and the *supine* of the active voice, and the *gerundive* is regularly passive in meaning.

In some cases the use of the active forms survived in other parts, but there are very few verbs in which both active and deponent forms were in common use. Such are *revertō* (*revertor*) and *mereō* (*mereor*); also *populō* (*populor*), *fabricō* (*fabricor*), *augurō* (*auguror*). In a larger number of verbs the perfect participle alone is passive in meaning, e.g., *partior, dīmētor, paciscor, tueor*.

69. The Periphrastic Conjugations.

All compound forms of the verb might strictly be called periphrastic, but the term is usually limited to two sets of forms :

(a) The *active* periphrastic conjugation, viz., the future participle active, in *-ūrus*, with the various parts of the verb *sum*.

(b) The *passive* periphrastic conjugation, viz., the gerundive, in *-ndus*, with the various parts of the verb *sum*.

For the uses of these compound forms, see, respectively, sections 102, *b*, and 104, *a*.

70. The Verb SUM and its Compounds. (See also sections 41 and 42.)

For the imperfect subjunctive, *essem*, etc., there occur also the forms *forem*, *forēs*, *foret* and *forent*.¹

Sum is compounded with many of the prepositions, in most cases with no irregularity: *absūm* (perf. *āfuī*) I am absent, distant; *adsum*, I am present; *dēsum*, I am wanting; *īnsum*, I am in; *intersum*, I am between, differ, am present at (*interest*, impersonal, it concerns); *obsum*, I am against; *praesum*, I am over; *prōsum*, I am for, benefit; *subsum*, I am under, near, (*no perf.*); *supersum*, I am over, survive.

Possum is a compound of *potis*, able, and *sum*, *t* of *potī* being changed to *s* before another *s*.

A present participle occurs in the compounds *absūm* and *praesūm* (*absēns*, *praesēns*). *Possum* has *potēns* used adjectively.

Prōsum has *prōd*, not *prō*, before all forms of *sum* beginning with *e*.

71. (a) The Verb EŌ and its Compounds.² (See also section 45.)

Some of the compounds of *eō* are transitive (*e.g.*, *adeō*, *circumeō*, *ineō*, *trānseō*, *praetereō*) and have passive forms, formed in the usual way from the active endings, *e.g.*, the present indicative of *adeō* is *adeor*, *adīris*, *adītur*, *adīmur*, *adīminī*, *adeuntur*. *Eō* also has passive forms in the third person used intransitively, *e.g.*, *ītur*, *īvī*.

In the perfect tenses *īī* is commoner than *īvī*, and in the compounds is the usual form.

(b) **The Verb FERŌ and its Compounds.** (See also section 44.)

The prepositions with which *ferō* is compounded often undergo changes to harmonize their final sound with the letters *f*, *t* and *l*, of the three stems of *ferō*.

1. For the present subjunctive *fuam*, *fuas*, *fuat*, *fuant*, and *siem*, *sies*, *siet*, *sient*, are rarely found.

2. *Queo* and *nequeo* are conjugated like *eo*.

ab	au-ferō,	au-ferre	abs-tulī	ab-lātum
ad	af-ferō,	af-ferre	at-tulī	al-lātum
con	cōn-ferō	cōn-ferre	con-tulī	col-lātum
dis	dif-ferō	dif-ferre	dis-tulī	dī-lātum
ex	ef-ferō	ef-ferre	ex-tulī	ē-lātum
in	īn-ferō	īn-ferre	in-tulī	il-lātum
ob	of-ferō	of-ferre	ob-tulī	ob-lātum
sub	suf-ferō	suf-ferre	sus-tulī	sub-lātum. ¹

(c) **The Verb FĪŌ and its Compounds.** (See also section 46.)

Fīō is compounded with verbal stems or with adverbs, e.g., *patefierī* (*patefaciō*); *satisfierī* (*satisfaciō*); very rarely with prepositions, as *cōnferī*, *dēfit*, *īnfit*. The passive of compounds of *faciō* with prepositions is formed regularly from the active, e.g., *interficior*, *interfici*; *cōnficior*, *cōnfici*.

72. Defective and Impersonal Verbs.

(a) **COEPĪ**, I began, is used in the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses only. (The other tenses are supplied by *incipiō*). A passive form, *coeptus sum*, is used with the same force as *coepī*, when a passive infinitive follows.

(b) **MEMINĪ**, I remember, and **ŌDĪ**, I hate, are used in the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses only, with the meaning of the present, imperfect and future, respectively. *Meminī* has the imperative second singular *mementō*, plural *mementōte*. *Ōdī* has a perfect participle *ōsus*, and a future participle *ōsūrus*.

(c) **ĀIŌ**, I say, is scarcely found except in the forms, present indicative, *āiō*, *ais*, *ait*, *aiunt*; imperfect indicative *aiēbam*, etc.

(d) **INQUAM**, I say, is scarcely found except in the forms, first person *inquam*, third person *inquit*.

(e) **FĀRĪ**, to speak, a deponent of the first conjugation, has in use the present indicative *fatur*, the future indicative *fābitur*, the perfect and pluperfect indicative and subjunctive, the infinitive *fārī*, the imperative *fāre*, the gerund *fandī*, etc., the participles *fātus*, *fandus* and (*fāns*) *fantis*.

(f) **QUAESŌ**, I beg, is used in the first person singular *quaesō*, and plural *quaesumus*.

(g) Many verbs having no definite subject, and hence called **IMPERSONAL**, are found in the third personal singular only. Of these, some refer to the weather (e.g., *pluit*, *it rains*), and some

1. *Sustuli*, *sublatum*, on the score of meaning, are assigned to *tollo*, not to *suffero* in the vocabularies.

express the existence of certain feelings (e.g., *miseret, paenitet, pudet, piget, taedet*).

(h) The passive of many intransitive verbs is used in the third singular *impersonally*, the subject being contained in the verb itself; e.g., *pūgnātur, there is fighting going on; nōn dubitandum est, there must not be hesitation.* (II. 234, N.B.)

(i) Many other verbs are said to be used *impersonally* in the third singular when a clause furnishes a subject, e.g., *licet haec facere, it is permissible to do this.* So *licet, oportet, necesse est, accidit* (and other verbs of *happening*), *cōstat, praestat, restat, superest, interest, rēfert, iuvat*, and phrases like *certum est*.

N.B.—In all compound tenses of impersonal verbs and all phrases used impersonally, a participle or adjective in the predicate will be in the neuter singular, e.g., *pūgnātum est, nōn dubium est*.

73. Prepositions. (See more fully section 87.)

The following are always used with the ACCUSATIVE :

Ad; adversus (adversum); ante; apud; circā; circiter; circum; eis, eītrā; contrā; ergā; extrā; infrā; inter; intrā; juxtā; ob; penes; per; pōne; post; praeter; prope; propter; secundum; trāns; ūltrā; versus.

The following are always used with the ABLATIVE :

Ā, ab (abs); absque; cōram; eum; dē; ē, ex; prae; prō; sine; tenu.

The following are used with both the ACCUSATIVE and ABLATIVE :

In; sub; subter; super.

74. Conjunctions.

I. CO-ORDINATE, connecting sentences or phrases of equal grammatical value.

(a) *Copulative* particles : **et, -que, atque (āc), and; etiam, quoque, also; neque (nec), nor, and not.**

(b) *Adversative* particles : **autem, sed, vērū, vērō, but; at, atquē, but yet; tamen, still; cēterum, as for the rest, but.**

(c) *Disjunctive* particles : **aut, vel, -ve, sive, or.**

(d) *Illative* particles : **itaque, igitur, ergō, ideō, ideircō, proinde, therefore.**

(e) *Causal* particles : **nam, enim, namque, etenim, for.**

II. SUBORDINATE, introducing dependent clauses.

(a) *Final* particles : **ut** (**utī**), **quō**, *that, in order that* ; **nē**, **nēve** (**neu**), *lest, in order that not* ; **quōminus**, *that not*.

(b) *Consecutive* particles : **ut** (**utī**), *so that* ; **quīn**, *so that not*.

(c) *Temporal* particles : **cūm**,¹ *when* ; **ut**, *as* ; **ubi**, **quandō**, *when* ; **postquam** (**posteāquam**), *after* ; **simul atque** (**āc**), *as soon as* ; **antequam**, **priusquam**, *before* ; **dūm**, **dōnce**, *while, until* ; **quoad**, *as long as, until* ; **quamdiū**, *as long as*.

(d) *Causal* particles : **quia**, **quod**, *because* ; **quoniam**, **quandō**, *since* ; **cūm**,¹ *since, as*.

(e) *Conditional* particles : **sī**, *if* ; **nisi** (**nī**), *if not* ; **sīn**, *but if* ; **modo**, **dūm**, **dummodo**, *if only, provided*.

(f) *Concessive* particles : **quamquam**, **licet**, **cūm**,¹ *although* ; **etsī**, **etiāmsī**, **tametsī**, *even if, although* ; **quamvīs**, *however much, although* ; **ut**, **nē**, *granted that or that not*.

(g) *Comparative* particles : **ut** (**utī**), **sicut**, *as* ; **velut**, **ecce**, *like as* ; **quam**, **atque**, *as, than* ; **tanquam**, **quasi**, **utsī**, **āc sī**, **velut sī**, *as if*.

(h) *Interrogative* particles : **num**, **-ne**, **utrum**, *whether* ; **nōne**, *whether not* ; **an**, *or whether*.

75. Derivative Suffixes.

I. Suffixes used in NOUN formation.

-tor (fem. **-trix**), denoting the *agent*, chiefly from verb stems.

-or, **-us**, **-ēs**, denoting a *state* or *action*, chiefly from verb stems.

-tiō, **-iō**, **-tus**, **-tūra**, denoting an *action*, or often the *concrete result* of an act, chiefly from roots or verb stems.

-men, **-mentum**, denoting the *subject, means* or *result* of an action, chiefly from roots or verb stems.

-tia, **-ia**, **-tās**, **-tūdō**, **-tūs**, denoting *abstract qualities*, chiefly from adjective stems.

-ium, denoting *abstract ideas* or often *conditions* or *offices*, chiefly from noun stems or roots.

-bulum, **-culum**, **-brum**, **-crum**, denoting *instrument*, chiefly from verb stems or roots.

-ulus (**a**, **um**), **-culus** (**a**, **um**), *diminutives*, from noun stems, of the same gender as the simple word.

-adēs, **-ās** ; **-idēs**, **-is** ; **-idēs** ; **-ēus**, **-ēis** ; *patronymics*, from proper nouns (Greek).

1. *Cum* is often, but less correctly, written *quum*.

II. Suffixes used in ADJECTIVE Formation.

- ālis, -āris, -ilis, -ārius, denoting *belonging* or *pertaining to*, from noun stems.
- ānus, -īnus, -ās, -ēnsis, -ieus, denoting *belonging* or *pertaining to*, from noun stems, especially from proper names of persons, places or countries.
- ōsus, -(o)lēns, -(o)lentus, -ātus, -ītus, denoting *full of*, *supplied with*, from noun stems.
- āx, denoting *inclined to*; -ilis, -bilis, denoting *capable of*; -idus, -bundus, -cundus, denoting *characterized by*, from verb stems.

III. Suffixes used in VERB Formation.

- ā, -ē, -ī, forming *denominatives* of the first, second and fourth conjugations,² denoting the *doing*, *being* or *making* of something, from noun or adjective stems.
- scō, forming *inceptives* or *inchoatives* (of the third conjugation) denoting the *beginning* of an action, from the present stems of verbs, and used only in the present stem.
- tō, -itō, forming *frequentatives*, *iteratives* or *intensives* (of the first conjugation), denoting *repeated* or *vigorous action*, generally from the supine stems of verbs.
- ūriō, forming *desideratives* (of the fourth conjugation), denoting a *desire* to do something, from verb stems.
- iliō, forming *diminutives* (of the first conjugation), denoting a *feeble* or *petty action*.

76. Composition of Words.

Compound NOUNS consist of two parts, of which the first, in most cases, modifies the second. The second part is a noun, or from a noun stem not actually occurring in Latin, but connected with some verb stem. The first part is usually the stem (sometimes an inflected form) of a noun or adjective.

Compound ADJECTIVES have the same formation as nouns.

Compound VERBS have a verb stem for the second part, and for the first usually a preposition, rarely a substantive, adverb or verb (the latter only with *faciō*).

2. Those ending in *-eo* are commonly intransitive.

The **prepositions** commonly used in composition have the following meanings, and assume (by assimilation) the following forms:

ā, ab, away; **ā, ab, abs, as, au. ad, to, towards, besides**; ad, ac, ag, al, ap, ar, as, at, a. **ante, before**; ante (rarely anti). **circum, around**; circum (rarely circu). **cum, together, completely, earnestly**; com, con, col, cor, cō, co. **dē, down, very**; dē. **ē, ex, out, forth, thoroughly**; ē, ex, ef. **in, in, into, on, against**; in, im, il, ir. **inter, between**; inter (rarely intel). **ob, against, towards, to meet**; ob, oc, of, op, o. **per, through, thoroughly**; per (rarely pel). **post, after, behind**; post. **prō, forward, forth, for**; prō, prōd. **sub, under, from beneath, secretly, slightly**; sub, suc, suf, sug, sum, sup, sur, sus, su. **super, over**; super. **trāns, across, through**; trāns, trān, trā.

The following (called **inseparable prepositions**) are particles used only in composition, having never been developed into separate prepositions:

ambi, around; amb, am, an. **dis, apart**: dis, dī, dif, dir. **in, not, un-**; in, im, il, ir, ī. **por, forth, forward**; por, pol, pos. **re, back, again**; re, red. **sē, apart**; sē, sēd.

III. COMPENDIUM OF SYNTAX.

77. Apposition.

A word placed in apposition with another agrees with it in case, and as far as it can in gender and number. (II. 9, *a, c.*)

i. The appositive word may agree with the unexpressed subject of a verb.

ii. A possessive pronoun takes an appositive in the genitive case. (II. 184, *o.*)

iii. A common noun (e.g., *urbs, oppidum, insula*) in apposition with the name of a place without a preposition, in the locative (II. 125 *a, 1*), accusative of motion towards (II. 93, *a*), or ablative of motion from (II. 123, *b*), generally has the preposition expressed, always so if it precedes.

iv. In place of a partitive genitive depending on a noun, the nouns are sometimes placed in apposition (*partitive* or *distributive apposition*).

v. An appositive sometimes is used in a predicate or adverbial sense (II. 144); for adjectives so used, see section 88, *d.*

vi. In apposition with a whole clause, a word is used in the accusative (and, if an adjective or pronoun, in the neuter singular).

vii. A defining genitive is rarely used in place of a noun in apposition. (II. 116.)

viii. The dative is common instead of a noun in apposition with phrases like *nōmen est*. (II. 103.)

78. Attributive Words.

An adjective (including numerals), pronoun or participle agrees in gender, number and case with the word to which it refers. If it refers to more than one word it regularly agrees with the nearest. (II. 9, *c, 1.*)

79. The Predicate.

(*a*) The verb agrees with its subject in number and person. Where compound forms of the verb are used, the participle follows the rules for predicate adjectives (*b*).

i. Collective nouns (chiefly those of *multitude*, not *organized bodies*) often take a plural verb. (II. 11.)

ii. Where there is more than one subject, the verb may be plural or agree with the nearest (II. 9, *e*); where the subjects are of different persons, the first person takes precedence, then the second. (II. 10.)

iii. *Esse* is repeatedly omitted, especially in the compound or periphrastic forms of the verb; *es'* and *sunt* are often omitted in poetry, and sometimes, for compactness' sake, in prose.

(b) A predicate adjective agrees with the subject of the verb in gender, number and case.

i. Where there is more than one subject the adjective will be of the same number as the verb (see *a*, ii., above); if singular, it will agree in gender with the nearest subject; if plural, it will agree in gender if the subjects are of the same gender, but if they are of different genders, it will be masculine referring to *living beings*, neuter referring to *things*. (II. 9, c, 2, 3.)

ii. Where the subject, though referring to persons, is neuter (e.g., *millia*), the predicate is often masculine.

iii. An adjective in the predicate may be used (substantively) in the neuter, though referring to a masculine or feminine subject; see section 88, *a*.

iv. A predicate adjective with *esse* may be in the nominative (II. 14, 20), the accusative (II. 12, 13, 22), or the dative (II. 163, *a*).

v. With verbs of *making, calling, showing, etc.*, adjectives may be used in the same way as predicate nouns (see *c*, i., below).

(c) A predicate noun agrees in case with the word of which it is predicated.

i. Predicate nouns are used with the verb *sum* and verbs of *seeming, becoming, making, thinking, calling, appointing, etc.*; for the predicate nominative or accusative with such verbs, see II. 70.

ii. For the dative of purpose replacing a predicate noun, see section 82, *c*.

80. The Nominative.

The nominative is used as the subject of the finite moods (*i.e.*, indicative, subjunctive and imperative) of the verb, as the subject of the historical infinitive (section 101, *d*), in apposition with a nominative or with the unexpressed subject of a finite verb (section 77), or as a predicate nominative (section 79).

81. The Genitive.

The genitive case is used for the more exact limiting of nouns, and has thus an adjectival force. A special use is to

limit certain adjectives and to fix the application of certain verbs in a more essential way than the accusative (see section 83, below). The genitive may regularly be translated by the English possessive case, by means of the preposition *of*, or by means of the phrase *as regards*, or some equivalent preposition. The various uses are :

(a) POSSESSIVE, denoting the owner, the person to whom something belongs. Occasionally the noun which the genitive limits is omitted (II. 119).

i. The possessive genitive may be in the predicate, chiefly with *sum*, denoting the person whose property, business or custom the subject is. The subject is most frequently an infinitive or a clause. (II. 118.)

ii. This predicative genitive of possession is regularly used in place of an adjective of the third declension in the predicate nominative (or accusative) with *sum*.

(b) PARTITIVE, denoting the whole to which a specified part belongs. (II. 113, 114.)

i. The partitive genitive often depends on neuter adjectives or pronouns (in the nominative, or accusative without a preposition), used substantively; e.g., *nihil, tantum, quantum, plūs, minus, satis, quid, quod, id, hōc*. The genitive may itself be a neuter adjective of the second (not the third) declension used substantively (II. 114, a.).

ii. The partitive genitive is regularly used with *millia*, sometimes with *mille, ūnus*, and other numerals (section 58, f, and II. 114, d).

iii. The partitive genitive is used with some adverbs of quantity, place, extent.

iv. The partitive genitive is sometimes used with nouns of weight or measure.

(c) SUBJECTIVE, with nouns of action, feeling, existence, denoting the person who acts, feels, exists. (II. 111.)

(d) OBJECTIVE, with nouns of action or feeling, denoting that to which the act or feeling is directed. (II. 112.)

i. The objective genitive is more frequently than any other to be translated not by *of*, but by *as regards*, or some equivalent expression.

ii. The verb with which the noun of action or feeling is, in sense, connected may be one which governs some other than the accusative case. (II. 120, N.B.)

(e) CHARACTERISTIC,¹ denoting some quality or characteristic chiefly essential. (II. 124, b, 3.) There must be some modifying adjective or its equivalent. (II. 115.)

i. Except in stereotyped phrases, such as *hūjusmodī, ējusmodī*, the best prose writers do not use the genitive of characteristic with a pronoun or with *pār, similis, dissimilis, æquus*, as modifier.

ii. The genitive of characteristic may be used as a predicate. (II. 118.)

(f) WITH SPECIAL ADJECTIVES AND VERBS, the genitive is regularly an extension of the *objective* genitive.

i. The adjectives so used are chiefly those of *desire, knowledge, power* and *fulness*, with their opposites, so also verbals in *-āx* and present participles used as adjectives. (II. 117, a, c.)

ii. In poetry the number of adjectives with which the genitive (denoting *as regards*) is used is largely extended. For *animī*, with an adjective, see section 86, ii.

iii. The verbs so used are chiefly those of *memory* (II. 62, 67), *feeling* (II. 62, 68), *judicial action* (II. 67), the verbs *interest* and *rēfert* (II. 63), also some verbs of *plenty* (including *potior*) and *want* (II. 66). For the genitive with verbs of *estimating, buying*, etc., see (g) below.

iv. In poetry the genitive, as in Greek, may denote separation.

(g) PRICE, denoting the value, but only in general, not definite, terms.

i. With verbs of *estimating* are found *tantī, quantī, māgnī, parvī, plūris, minōris, nihilī*, and a few other words.

ii. With verbs of *buying* and *selling* are found only *tantī, quantī, plūris, minōris*.

(h) OF DEFINITION, explaining the meaning of a noun, as a word in apposition might do. (II. 116.) This usage is chiefly poetical.

i. The genitive of definition is sometimes used with nouns of weight or measure.

(i) The genitive is used with *causā, grātiā, īnstar, postrīdiē* and *prīdiē*.²

82. The Dative.

The dative case is used to express the indirect or remote connection of a person or thing with the action or feeling expressed by a verb or adjective. From a fusion with the loca-

1. This is also called the *genitive of quality, or description*. Compare the ablative of characteristic, section 85, c.

2. The genitive with *causa* may be regarded as a genitive of definition, with *gratia* as an objective genitive, with *instar* as possessive, and with *pridie* and *postridie* probably as partitive.

tive, it also serves to indicate a purpose or (in poetry) a place attained. The dative may generally be translated by means of the prepositions *to* or *for*. The various uses are :

(a) INDIRECT OBJECT, denoting the person (or thing) indirectly affected by the action of the verb. The verb may be either intransitive or passive, or transitive with the direct object in the accusative. (II. 100.)

i. In the poets the dative of indirect object is extended to include the idea of motion towards (II. 61), and is also used with verbs of *nearness, union, separation* and *contention*.

(b) INTEREST, denoting the persons (or things) concerned in (*e.g.*, benefited or injured by) some act or condition of things (II. 101, 102). This is really one variety of the indirect object.

i. With verbs of *taking away*, the dative of interest is to be rendered by means of the preposition *from*. (II. 69.)

(c) PURPOSE OR SERVICE, denoting the purpose served or the end attained. It is regularly in the predicate with such verbs as *sum, fiō, mittō, veniō, relinquiō, dō, habeō*, and is a semi-abstract noun always in the singular. (II. 75.) There is usually another dative of the person interested.

(d) AGENT, OR APPARENT AGENT, with passive verbs, really denoting the person interested, hence, presumably, the agent.

i. This is the regular way of expressing the agent with the gerundive, unless there would be danger of ambiguity. (II. 105.)

ii. The dative at times expresses (inferentially) the agent with perfect passives, and in poetry almost any part of the passive.

iii. *Videor, I seem*, regularly has the dative of agent.

(e) WITH SPECIAL VERBS OR ADJECTIVES. This is really one variety of the dative of the indirect object or of interest. (II. 55-60, 102.)

i. The dative is used with many verbs intransitive in Latin, but generally rendered by an English transitive verb. (II. 55, 60.)

ii. The dative is used with many compounds of intransitive verbs with prepositions. (II. 56, 104.)

iii. Intransitive verbs taking a dative cannot be used in the passive voice, except impersonally with the dative retained (II. 57). See also section 96. b.

iv. For the dative with *dōnō* and *circumdō*, see II. 74; for verbs taking both a direct and an indirect object, see II. 69.

v. Most adjectives denoting *likeless, fitness, nearness, friendliness*, and their opposites, take the dative of the person or thing affected. (II. 102.)

(f) REFERENCE, denoting some person indirectly concerned with some statement made (but not affected by the action expressed in any one word). (II. 106.)

i. This dative often has much the force of a possessive genitive. (II. 106.)

ii. The dative of reference is very common with participles, to express the point of view.

iii. The ethical dative is confined to personal pronouns and indicates a weaker connection than other datives of reference. (II. 107.)

(g) POSSESSOR, denoting the person interested as owner, in the existence of something. The emphasis is on the fact of possession, not on the person of the possessor. (II. 103.)

83. The Accusative.

The accusative case is used to determine the application of a verb, most frequently to state the external object to which the action of a verb is directed. The various uses are :

(a) DIRECT OBJECT, denoting the external object of the action of transitive verbs. (II. 90, a.)

i. The larger number of prepositions govern the accusative case ; see section 87.

(b) THE SUBJECT OF AN INFINITIVE is put in the accusative, whether in the purely substantival use or in the more common use with verbs of *saying, thinking, etc.* (II. 91.)

(c) DURATION OF TIME and EXTENT OF SPACE, stating *how long* or *how far*. (II. 92.)

i. The accusative of the duration of time is used with verbs, including the participle *nātus*, and with *abhinc*.

ii. The accusative of extent of space is used with verbs and with the adjectives *longus, altus* and *lātus*.

(d) COGNATE ACCUSATIVE, expressed by some noun of kindred meaning with the verb, or some word more fully defining its application. (II. 96.)

i. The cognate accusative may be a substantive (generally modified) or much oftener a neuter adjective or pronoun used substantively.

(e) ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE, defining the extent, degree or cause of the action of a verb. This is an extension of the *cognate* accusative.

i. This adverbial construction is commonly limited to certain neuter pronouns or adjectives and a few phrases. (II. 97.)

ii. In poetry it is extended to denote the part affected; this is sometimes called the Greek accusative.

(f) WITH SPECIAL WORDS, in all cases mere varieties of the uses already given.

i. For the double accusative with verbs of *asking, teaching, and concealing*, see II. 71; with verbs of *making, choosing, calling*, etc., see II. 70; with compounds of *trāns*, see II. 72.

ii. The verbs *induor, exuor* and *cingor*, being really reflexives, take an accusative; so other verbs are used in poetry.

iii. Certain adverbs (*propius, proximē, pridē, postridē*) and certain adjectives (*propior, proximus*) are found taking the accusative on the analogy of prepositions.

(g) LIMIT OF MOTION, with names of towns and islands. (II. 93, a.) In poetry the preposition is omitted more freely.

(h) EXCLAMATIONS, with or without an interjection, are often in the accusative. (II. 98.)

84. The Vocative.

The vocative case denotes the person directly addressed. It is often preceded by *O* to heighten the effect of an appeal.

85. The Ablative.

The ablative case is an adverbial case, and is used to determine more accurately the circumstances attending upon some action expressed by the predicate. It is in most cases to be rendered by means of some English preposition, especially *with, by, from, in*.

The Latin ablative represents three main ideas: the true ablative, = *from* (see *f, h, l, m*, pages 284, 285); the instrumental (or comitative), = *with* (see *a, c, d, e, g, i*, pages 282, 283, 284); the locative, = *in* or *at* (see *b, k, o*, pages 283, 284, 285). These shade into one another so closely that it is uncertain to which of the three we ought to assign some of the various uses of the ablative, but in most cases there is general agreement. The various uses are:

(a) MEANS OR INSTRUMENT, telling that by means of which something is effected. (II. 124, a.)

i. Occasionally persons are regarded as the means by which, rather than the agents by or through whom, something is done.

ii. The ablative of means includes the ablative (*a*) telling the route by which one goes, or the means of conveyance; (*b*) with verbs of *filling* and *abounding* (II. 65, 73); (*c*) with adjectives of *plenty* (II. 126); (*d*) with the verbs *ūtor*, *fruor*, *potior*¹ (II. 65); (*e*) with *opus est* and *ūsus est*;¹ (*f*) with *assuēfaciō*, *assuēscō*, and *afficiō*; (*g*) and with verbs of *confining* or *receiving within*.²

(*b*) TIME, denoting the time when or within (in the course of) which something occurs. (II. 125, *b*.)

i. With negatives, the ablative of the time within which is translated by *for*.

ii. The ablative of the time within which may include the whole period, and be emphasized by *tōtus*.

iii. Such phrases as *hīs tribus diēbus* (*in the last three days*), *illīs tribus diēbus* (*in the three days previous*), *paucīs diēbus quibus* (*a few days after*, literally, *within the few days within which*), are cases of the time within which.

iv. Occasionally, by inference, the ablative of the time within which is equivalent to the accusative of the time how long. (II. 125, *b*.)

(*c*) CHARACTERISTIC,³ denoting some quality or characteristic, chiefly external. There must be some modifying adjective or its equivalent. (II. 124, *b*, and 2, and 3.)

i. This is the only adnominal (or adjectival) use of the ablative. The ablative of characteristic may also be used in the predicate with *esse*.

(*d*) SPECIFICATION, specifying in what respect a statement or term is to be applied. (II. 124, *e*.)⁴

i. The ablative of specification includes (*a*) the ablative supine (II. 138), (*b*) phrases like *meū sententiā*, *jūre*, and (*c*) perhaps the ablative with *dignus* and *indignus*.⁵

(*e*) MANNER and ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCES, telling the manner in which, or that in accordance with which, something is done. (II. 124, *b*.)

i. Literal accompaniment is regularly expressed by the ablative with *cum*. The chief exception is in some military phrases, especially those telling the troops with which a march is made. There is always a modifying word, when *cum* is omitted.

1. The ablative with *fungor* seems to be *separative*, that with *vescor* is probably *means*. The ablative with *opus* and *usus est* came to be looked on as *separative*.

2. The ablative in such phrases as *castris se tenere*, *finibus eum recipere*, may also be taken as *locative*, the place in which. (See page 285, *k*, iii.)

3. This is also called the *ablative of quality or description*. Compare the genitive of characteristic, section 81, *e*.

4. This is generally considered *instrumental* in origin, but some regard it as the ablative telling *from what point of view*.

5. The ablative with *dignus* is, by some, explained as the ablative of price.

ii. Manner is often denoted by the ablative with *cum*, always so when there is no modifying word. An apparent exception is in the case of some nouns whose ablative cases have come to be used virtually as adverbs, e.g., *modō*, *vī*, *pedibus*.

(f) COMPARISON, telling that with which something is compared. (II. 123, c.)

i. It is commonly restricted to cases where the word it is compared with is in the nominative or accusative. It is rarer in prose after adverbs than after adjectives.

ii. For the adverbial use of *plūs*, *minus*, *amplius* and *longius*, with numerals, see II. 123, c, 2.

iii. A special idiom is the ablative of abstract words, such as *opīniō* and *spēs*, in the ablative of comparison after adverbs, where English would use a verbal clause.

(g) MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE, telling the extent to which two things compared differ. (II. 124, d.)

i. The ablative of the measure of difference is used (a) with comparatives or with words implying comparison, e.g., *post* and *ante*, (b) with words implying distance, e.g., *absum*, *distō* (where also the accusative may be used).

ii. To this usage belong *quō* . . . *eō* (or *quantō* . . . *tantō*), with comparatives; *quō* and *quōminus* with the final subjunctive, and *eō* or *hōc* with a comparative anticipating a *quod* clause.¹

(h) SEPARATION, telling the place *whence* (literally or metaphorically) something is removed or excluded. (II. 123, a.)

i. Separation is most frequently expressed by the ablative with *ā* (*ab*), *ex* or *dē*. The use of the ablative without a preposition is chiefly with (a) names of cities and islands, *domus* and *rūs*, (b) with verbs of *relieving*, *depriving*, *wanting* and *removing*, (c) adjectives of *freedom* and *want*.

ii. But with classes *b* and *c* the preposition is frequently found, regularly so with the names of persons. Many verbs admit either construction.

(i) PRICE, stating the definite price or value of something. (II. 124, c.)

i. This ablative is sometimes used to state the *penalty*.

ii. The ablative with *mūtō* states either that given or that taken in exchange. For the genitive of price, see section 81, g.

(k) PLACE, stating the place *where* something is or happens. (II. 125, a.)

1. *Eo* and *hoc* are found anticipating a *quod* clause, even when there is no comparative present. In this case it seems to be an ablative of cause, though it may have arisen from the use with comparatives.

i. In prose the place where is commonly expressed by the ablative with *in*, except with names of cities, etc., and words which possess a locative (section 86). The ablative alone is more freely used in poetry.

ii. With *tōtus*, and occasionally other adjectives, e.g., *medius*, as a modifier, the simple ablative is used to denote the place where.

iii. The ablative of place includes the ablative with *fīdō*, *cōnfīdō*, *stō* and *nītor*, with *frētus*, and perhaps the ablative in such phrases as *castrīs sē tenēre* and *fīnibus eum accipere*.

(l) SOURCE, telling that from which something is derived. (II. 123, a.)

i. This is chiefly found with participial adjectives denoting origin or ancestry, e.g., *nātus*. In other cases the preposition *ex*, *dē*, or *ā* (*ab*) is used.

ii. Under this head belongs the ablative denoting the material of which something is made, but in prose this ablative is commonly joined with *ex*.

(m) CAUSE, telling the motive from which some act proceeds, or rarely the cause of something. (II. 123, a.)

i. This ablative is chiefly used with verbs denoting emotion. The moving cause is regularly expressed by the ablative with a participle such as *adductus*, *permōtus*.¹

ii. Under this head belong the ablatives *causā*, *grātīā*, *jūssū*, *rogātū*, and perhaps phrases like *meā sententiā*.

(n) With SPECIAL VERBS AND ADJECTIVES, really belonging to other classes already given. (II. 65, 126.)

i. With *ūtor*, *frūor*, *funḡor*, *potior*, *rescor* (see *a*), *glōrior* (see *m*), verbs of *plenty* (see *a*), and *want* (see *h*), *nītor*, *fīdo* (see *k*).

ii. With *frētus*, *contentus* and *laetus* (see *k*), *dīgnus* and *indīgnus* (see *d*), adjectives of *plenty* (see *a*), and *freedom* (see *h*).

(o) The ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE, defining the attendant circumstances of an action. (II. 48-54, 125, c.)

i. This consists regularly of two parts, a *quasi-subject* and a *quasi-predicate*. The former is a noun or pronoun (very seldom a clause), the latter most frequently a perfect participle, less frequently a present participle, or a noun or adjective used predicatively (without the verb of predication being expressed).²

ii. The ablative absolute clause expresses the same idea as many kinds of subordinate clauses, and is also frequent where English would use a co-ordinate clause to carry on the narration.

1. The ablative with these participles may be regarded as the ablative of means.

2. It will be remembered that *sum* has no present participle equivalent to the English *being*.

iii. For the restrictions to the use of the ablative absolute, see II. 52, c.

iv. Many phrases which appear like ablatives of accompanying circumstances are better explained as ablatives absolute, e.g., *lēnī rentō*.

v. With a negative the ablative is often to be rendered by *without*. (II. 49, f.)

86. The Locative.

The locative was at one time a separate case, denoting the *place where*, from which was developed the idea of the *time when*. Its forms became merged into other cases, being in the singular of the first and second declensions the same as the genitive, elsewhere the same as the ablative.¹

i. The few surviving forms to be classed as locatives include, *domī*, *humī*, *militiæ*, *bellī*, *rūrī*, and forms like *Carthāginī*, *Rōmæ*, *Corinthī*. Many adverbs are strictly locative in origin.

ii. The locative *animī* is used with verbs of *feeling*.

iii. For the ablative denoting the place where, see section 85, k.

87. The Prepositions.

The following are the commonest uses of the prepositions :

Ā, **AB**, **ABS** (*ā* before consonants, *ab* before vowels or consonants, *abs* rarely found before *q* and *t*); *from*; *at a distance of*; *at*, *on*, *in*, with words denoting the point of view; *by* of the personal agent.

ABSQUE; *without*.

AD; *to*, *towards*; *up to*, of time and numbers; *with a view to*, *for*, *for the purpose of*; *near*; *according to*.

ADVERSUS (**ADVERSUM**); *towards*, *against*.

ANTE; *before*, *in front of* (generally of time rather than place, rarely of preference).

APUD; *at*, *near*; *among*, *with*; (more often of persons than places).

CIRCĀ; **CIRCUM**; **CIRCITER**; *circā*, *around*, *round about*, *about*, *with regard to*; *circum*, *around*, *round about*, of place only; *circiter*, *about*, rare as a preposition in phrases of time.

CIS, **CITRĀ**; *on this side of*.

CONTRĀ; *against*, *in opposition to*; *over against*, *opposite*.

1. There are some reasons for regarding the dative rather than the ablative or genitive as the form which finally replaced the locative.

CŌRAM ; *in the presence of.*

CUM ; *with, along with, of accompaniment, union or simultaneous acts.*

DĒ ; *from, down from ; of, after numerals or of material ; about, concerning.*

Ē, EX (*ē* occasionally before consonants, *ex* before vowels or consonants) ; *out of, from ; of, after numerals ; in, on, at, with words denoting the point of view ; in accordance with, in consequence of ; after.*

ERGĀ ; *towards (of direction or attitude).*

EXTRĀ ; *without, beyond, except (of place or transferred).*

IN, with the accusative, *into, to ; against ; with a view to, for.*
with the ablative, *in, on ; among ; in the case of ; in view of.*

ĪNFRĀ ; *below (rare, of place and transferred).*

INTER ; *between ; within ; among (local or reciprocal).*

INTRĀ ; *within (of place, more rarely of time and transferred).*

JUXTĀ ; *near (very rare as preposition).*

OB ; *before (of place, and rare) ; on account of.*

PENES ; *in the power of (of the possession not the gaining of power).*

PER ; *through ; by means of, by.*

PŌNE ; *behind.*

POST ; *after, behind (generally of time rather than place).*

PRAE ; *in front of (rare) ; in comparison with ; because of (chiefly in negative clauses).*

PRAETER ; *beyond, besides.*

PRŌ ; *before (in order to protect) ; in place of, for, as ; in proportion to, in accordance with.*

PROPE ; *near (of place, very rarely of time).*

PROPTER ; *near (rare) ; on account of.*

SECUNDUM ; *along ; after ; next to ; according to.*

SINE ; *without.*

SUB, with the accusative, *under ; towards ; close to.*
with the ablative, *under ; near.*

SUBTER, with the accusative or ablative, *beneath, under.*

SUPER, with the accusative, *above ; over ; beyond.*
with the ablative, *upon ; except ; about.*

TENUS ; *as far as.*

TRĀNS ; *across ; beyond.*

ŪLTRĀ ; *on the other side of ; beyond.*

VERSUS ; *towards.*

88. The Adjective.

(a) The adjective is often used as a substantive, in the masculine and feminine referring to persons, and in the neuter to things. The neuter plural is often used where the English would use the singular, e.g., *multa, much*.

i. The neuter is used as a substantive chiefly in the nominative and accusative cases ; in the other cases *rēs* is commonly found.

ii. Adjectives of the third declension are not used as neuter substantives in the partitive genitive. (See section 81, b, i.)

(b) The superlative degree does not necessarily imply comparison with others, but may indicate a high degree of the quality referred to (to be translated by *very* or *exceedingly*, or often by the English positive). The superlative with *quam* or with *quam potest* (*potuit*, etc.), is used to mean *as (many, large, etc.), as possible*.

The comparative degree has often the standard of comparison omitted, where the context will suggest it. The omission is commonly of the ideas, *than is natural, than is proper, than that just mentioned* or *implied*. The first two of these may be represented by *unusually* or *too* with the positive degree.

(c) In many phrases an adjective denoting the *part* or *order*, is used in agreement with a noun, but in a partitive sense. (See II. 114, b.)

(d) In many phrases the adjective is used in Latin where an adverb or adverbial clause would be found in English. Such cases are *primus, prior, medius, ultimus, invitus, imprudens, totus*, etc. In all these cases the condition of what is expressed by the noun, not the manner of the action expressed by the verb, is looked to.

(e) For the agreement, etc., of adjectives used attributively or predicatively, see sections 78 and 79.

89. The Personal Pronouns.

i. The personal pronouns are not used in the nominative, except for special emphasis, the personal ending of the verb being a sufficient indication. (II. 176.)

ii. *Is*, which is strictly a demonstrative, serves as the third personal pronoun, but where emphasis is desired, *ille* is preferred. Often the relative pronoun *quī* replaces *is*.

iii. For the difference between *nostrūm* and *nostrī, vestrūm* and *vestrī*, see section 60, b.

iv. *Tū* and *vōs* both mean *you*, the former when addressing one person, the latter more than one. *Tū* also corresponds to the English *thou*.

v. In the first person the plural *nōs* is often used for *ego*, chiefly in dignified language.

90. The Possessive Pronouns.

These agree in gender, number and case with the noun with which they are grammatically connected, not with the word denoting the possessor.

i. The possessive pronouns are used (*a*) for clearness' sake, (*b*) for emphasis' sake. When not required for either of these reasons they are regularly omitted. (See footnote 2, page 13.) When emphatic they may often be translated by means of *own*, and sometimes they express what is peculiar to or characteristic of a person.

ii. *Tuus* is used when *you*, the possessor, is one person, *vester* when *you*, the possessors, are more than one. *Suus* is the possessive of *sē* and is used in the same cases (see section 91, i). Elsewhere, *his*, *her* and *their* are represented by *ējus* and *eōrum*.

iii. The possessive pronouns are often used substantively (compare section 88, *a*), the commonest being *nostrī*, *suī* and *sua*, (see footnote 2, page 64), also in poetry *tuī* and *vestrī*.

iv. For the possessive pronoun with a virtual appositive in the genitive, see section 77, ii.

v. The possessive pronouns are frequently used in place of a subjective genitive, more rarely in place of an objective genitive.

vi. *Aliēnus* serves as a possessive of *alius*.

91. The Reflexive Pronouns.

These refer back to the subject of the verb and are translated either by the English personal pronouns or by the compounds in *-self*, *-selves*. They must be carefully distinguished (*a*) from the use of *-self*, *-selves*, purely for emphasis' sake, and (*b*) from the personal pronouns referring to others than the subject of the sentence.

i. For the reflexives of the first and second persons, see section 60, *a*.

ii. The rules for the reference of *sē* may be stated generally as follows:

In an independent sentence *sē* refers to the subject of the verb. Where there are several coordinate sentences with a change of subject, each sentence must be considered by itself.

In a dependent sentence the use is twofold:

(*a*) With the accusative and infinitive construction, the complementary infinitive, substantival clauses of purpose, the indirect question or the subjunctive of virtual indirect narration, *sē* refers to the personal subject of the verb upon which the infinitive or subjunctive *immediately* depends (even if this verb is itself a dependent verb).

(b) In other cases (e.g., in ordinary relative or *quod* clauses, or in clauses of result) *sē* refers to the subject of the verb in its own clause.

iii. And generally it may be said that in clauses expressing a thought, statement or wish, *sē* refers to the person who thinks, states or wishes. Exceptions occur chiefly in stereotyped reflexive formulae (e.g., *sē recipere, inter sē*), or where in the cases given in (a) above, the verb upon which the infinitive or subjunctive depends has not for its subject someone of the third person, or where in indirect discourse a number of pronouns occur closely together, in which case *sē* tends to refer to the same person.

92. Demonstrative Pronouns.

(a) *HĪC, this*, refers to what is near the speaker in place, time or thought. Hence it is used of something just mentioned or of something just to be mentioned (= *as follows*). In contrast with *ille*, it means *the latter* (rarely *the former*). (II. 177.)

i. *Hīc*, like other demonstrative pronouns, is often attracted to the case of a predicate noun to which it refers. (II. 183, N.B.)

(b) *ISTE, that of yours, that near you*, refers to something near or belonging to the person spoken to. It has also at times a contemptuous force. (II. 178.)

(c) *ILLE, that*, refers to something remote from the speaker in place, time or thought. In contrast with *hīc*, it means *the former* (rarely *the latter*). It is often used to indicate clearly a change of subject, and also to point out a person as specially noteworthy or well known. (II. 179.)

i. *Ille* is also used as an emphatic third personal pronoun.

(d) *IS, that*, is less emphatic than *ille*, and is preferred to *ille* as an antecedent for a relative pronoun. (II. 180-182.)

i. *Is* is used as the ordinary third personal pronoun. As such it is often omitted before a relative pronoun, chiefly where it would have the same case as the relative, or would be in the nominative.

ii. *Et is* is used in the sense of *and that too*; *neque is, and that too not*. In this case *is* agrees with the word which is emphasized.

(e) *ĪDEM, the same*.

i. *As* after *īdem* is either the relative pronoun *quī*, or the particle *ac*.

ii. *Īdem* added for emphasis' sake has often the force of *also, yet*.

(f) *IPSE, -self*, is used to emphasize, not as a reflexive pronoun. It is used with all three persons. (II. 184.)

i. When used to emphasize a reflexive pronoun, it is generally in the nominative rather than in agreement with the reflexive.

ii. When used to emphasize possessive pronouns it is in the genitive. (II. 184, a.)

iii. Occasionally in indirect narration *ipse* is used as a reflexive where *sē* would have been less clear in its reference.

iv. *Ipse* is sometimes used to distinguish persons from things belonging or related to them.

93. The Relative Pronoun.

The relative agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*; its *case* is decided by its relation to the rest of the clause which it introduces. (II. 193-197.)

i. Where there are more antecedents than one, the relative follows the rules for predicate adjectives (section 79, b, i.).

ii. The relative often agrees with a predicate noun in its own clause. (II. 197, e.)

iii. The relative may be used at the beginning of a sentence, not to introduce a subordinate clause, but to carry on the narration, where English would use a demonstrative or personal pronoun, sometimes with a co-ordinating conjunction. This is called the *co-ordinating* relative. (II. 195.)

iv. The relative is used to introduce final clauses (II. 25), consecutive clauses (II. 34), or clauses of condition, concession or cause (II. 196) with the subjunctive.

v. The antecedent (referring to persons or things) is often omitted. (II. 197, a.)

vi. The antecedent is often repeated with the relative, chiefly in the case of *pars, rēs, locus, diēs*. (II. 197, c.)

vii. The relative clause often, for emphasis' sake, precedes the clause on which it depends, and contains the noun which logically is the antecedent. Generally this noun is represented in the main clause by *is* or *hic*. (II. 197, d.)

viii. Adjectives are often incorporated predicatively in the relative clause. (II. 197, h.)

ix. For the relative pronoun (and other relative words) = *as*, see II. 197, f.

x. The relative is not omitted in Latin; but in the case of two successive and co-ordinate relative clauses, the second relative may be omitted if a nominative or accusative. (II. 197, i, g.)

xi. The antecedent of the relative may be implied in a possessive pronoun; so also in the substance of a clause (II. 197, b).

94. The Interrogative Pronoun.

i. In poetry or elevated prose, the interrogative pronoun is found connected with a participle, not with a finite form of the verb, and is even found with a participle in the ablative absolute.

ii. Occasionally two interrogatives are found in the same clause.

95. The Indefinite Pronouns.

i. ALIQUIS, *some one or other, some*, is indefinite. It may be used after *sī* for emphasis, = *if some* rather than *if any*. (II. 187.)

ii. QUIPIAM, *some one*, has the force of *aliquis*, but is rarer.

iii. QUĪDAM, *a certain one, one*, is unspecified, though not necessarily indefinite to the speaker. (II. 191.)

iv. NESCIŌ QUIS, *some one*, is unknown to the speaker. It often, through an affectation of ignorance, implies contempt. (II. 188, c.)

v. NŌNNŪLLUS, *some*, NŌNNĒMŌ, *some one*, are definite, but unspecified. They suggest the idea *some but not many*. (II. 188, b.)

vi. QUIS, *any one, any*, is used chiefly after *sī* and *nē*; also after *nisi*, *quō*, *num*, *cum*, *quantō*, and in relative sentences. (II. 189, N.B.)

vii. QUISQUAM, *any one* (substantival), ŪLLUS, *any* (adjectival), mean *any, even one*, suggesting the idea of *no one* or *none*. They are used in negative, or practically negative sentences. Their negative correlatives are *nēmō*, *nihil* and *nūllus*, but Latin prefers *neque* (*nec*) with *quisquam*, *ūllus*, to *et* (*atque*) with *nēmō*, *nūllus*. (II. 189.)

viii. QUĪVĪS, QUĪLIBET, *any one, any*, mean *any at all, any you please*, suggesting the idea of *every one, all*. (II. 190.)

ix. QUISQUE, *each*, of a larger number than two. With superlatives and ordinal numerals, it is equivalent to *every*. It is often used with the reflexive, being regularly placed after it. (II. 192.)

x. UTERQUE, *each* (of two), and hence, *both*, but *both* regarded separately, not together, which is *ambo*. (II. 192.)

xi. The indefinite relatives (*quisquis*, *quicumque*, etc.) take the indicative mood, not the subjunctive, except in indirect narration.

96. The Active and Passive Voices.

(a) For DEPONENT VERBS, see section 68. They arise out of the reflexive use of the passive voice.

(b) Intransitive verbs (*i.e.*, verbs which do not take a direct object in the accusative) are often found in Latin in the passive voice, used impersonally. This IMPERSONAL PASSIVE construction is used in the indicative, subjunctive or infinitive, the verb being always third singular and (if gender is expressed) neuter. Such verbs merely express or refer to the taking place of the action described by the verb, and may often be translated by the English introductory adverb *there*, by the introductory *it*, or most frequently by the active voice, the subject being understood from the context.

i. Occasionally a quasi-subject is found, either a neuter adjective or pronoun used substantively. This corresponds closely to the cognate or adverbial accusative.

ii. For the impersonal passive construction with verbs governing the dative or the ablative, see II. 57, 142.

(c) With many verbs the passive is used as a REFLEXIVE or middle verb, but only when the reflexive idea is not emphatic.

(d) With a few verbs, most frequently *coep̄i*, the passive form is used when the dependent infinitive is passive. (II. 21.)

97. The Indicative in Principal Clauses.

Ordinary statements and questions are expressed by the Indicative. The various tenses are used as follows :

(a) The PRESENT tense is used i. for the English present progressive (II. 198), ii. as a universal present (II. 198, *b*), iii. as a historical present (II. 198, *a*), iv. to express an action attempted or intended in present time, v. to express actions continued from the past into the present, chiefly with *jam* (II. 198, *c*).

(b) The IMPERFECT tense is used i. for the English past progressive (II. 199), ii. to express an action attempted or intended in past time (II. 199, *b*), [called the *conative imperfect*], iii. to express repeated or habitual actions in past time (II. 199, *a*), iv. to express actions continued from a prior time into the past time spoken of, chiefly with *jam* (II. 199, *e*), v. to describe and give details, as compared with the perfect tense, *d*, *B*, below (II. 199, *d*).

(c) The FUTURE tense is used to express what will happen or what will be happening at some future time. (II. 200.)

(d) The PERFECT tense has two main uses :

A. The true perfect is used i. to express what has been completed by the time of the speaker (II. 201, 1), ii. to express what has ceased to exist, iii. to express the present result of past actions (hence the use of Latin perfects with the force of the English present in certain verbs, see II. 203, N.B.).

B. The aoristic perfect (equivalent to our simple past tense) is used to narrate what happened in past time (II. 201, 2). It is the regular tense for narration as opposed to description (see *b*, v. above).

(e) The PLUPERFECT tense is used to express something as completed or attained by some point in past time. (II. 204.)

i. 'The pluperfect indicative is sometimes used for vividness' sake in place of the pluperfect subjunctive in the apodosis of unreal conditional sentences.

(f) The FUTURE PERFECT tense expresses something as completed or attained at some future time. (II. 205.)

(g) The following peculiarities occur :

i. A sort of perfect is formed by *habeō* with the perfect participle, which emphasizes the continuance of the result of a past act (II. 203). In the same way *habēbam* and the perfect participle are like the pluperfect (II. 204, b).

ii. For the *epistolary* use of the imperfect and pluperfect, see II. 204, c.

iii. *Amātus fuī* generally differs from the far commoner *amātus sum* in implying that the condition spoken of has ceased to exist. This difference does not seem to hold in the case of *amātus fueram* and *fuerō*, as contrasted with *amātus eram* and *erō*.

iv. With indefinite relatives the indicative is used, not the subjunctive. So with other expressions (see II. 153 and 85), especially with the modal verbs *possum* and *dēbeō* (II. 85, N.B.).

98. The Subjunctive in Principal Clauses.

(a) HORTATORY and OPTATIVE (expressing a command or a wish). The negative is *nē*. (II. 151, a.)

1. The subjunctive is used in the first and third persons to urge something upon a person. In the second person, the subjunctive is used to express a command (chiefly negative) in the perfect tense, or if addressed to no definite person, in the present tense.

2. The subjunctive is used in the present, imperfect and pluperfect tenses to express a wish or desire, often in combination with *utinam*. The present tense is used of wishes that may be fulfilled; the imperfect and pluperfect, of a longing for impossibilities (II. 151, a). With the present, *velim* and *nōlim* are found; with the imperfect and pluperfect, *vellem* and *nōllem* (see c below).

(b) DELIBERATIVE or RHETORICAL QUESTIONS. Questions expressing doubt (to which the answer would be an imperative), and questions which are practically equivalent to a statement in the subjunctive (see c below), are expressed by the subjunctive. (II. 151, c.)

(c) SOFTENED ASSERTIONS, put forward as mere ideas or views, are in the subjunctive. This is often called the *potential* subjunctive. (II. 151, b.) To this usage belong *velim*, *vellem*, etc., with the subjunctive expressing a wish, and also the so-called ideal second person.

99. The Indicative and Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses.

(a) FINAL CLAUSES.

Clauses expressing PURPOSE are in the subjunctive; the present tense being used after primary tenses, the imperfect after secondary. (II. 25-32.)

1. The subjunctive of purpose is used in adverbial clauses after *ut*, *nē*, *quō* (II. 26), *nēve*, or *neu* (II. 30), and in adjectival clauses after *quī* (II. 25).

i. After verbs of *preventing*, *quōminus* and the final subjunctive are used. (II. 156-158.)

ii. After verbs of *fearing*, *nē* and *ut* (*nē nōn*) and the final subjunctive are used. (II. 154.)

2. The subjunctive of purpose is used in substantival clauses after *ut* and *nē*, with verbs of *urging*, *asking*, *commanding*, *advising*, *persuading*, etc. (II. 27, 208.)

i. With verbs of *asking* and *commanding*, the subjunctive is found without *ut* in the same sense.

(b) CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

Clauses expressing RESULT are in the subjunctive with *ut* (II. 33 and 37-39). For the use of the various tenses, see II. 38, 39.

i. After many negative phrases *quīn* and the subjunctive of result are found. (II. 156-158.)

ii. Except with verbs of *happening*, the subjunctive of result with *ut* is generally anticipated by some word meaning *so* or *such*.

iii. The subjunctive of result is used with *fore ut* (*futūrum esse ut*) as a substitute for the future infinitive (especially in the passive); and with *futūrum fuisse ut* to represent in indirect narration the pluperfect subjunctive of the apodosis. (II. 33, N.B.)

iv. A consecutive clause is often used elliptically in exclamations.

(c) RELATIVE CLAUSE OF CHARACTERISTIC.

The consecutive subjunctive is used in relative clauses which describe the antecedent as belonging to a class¹ (II. 34-36). The tenses are used as in ordinary consecutive clauses. (II. 38, 39.)

(d) INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

All dependent clauses beginning with an interrogative pronoun or adverb are put in the subjunctive, whether they depend on verbs of *asking* or on verbs of *learning*, *finding out*, *knowing*, *telling*, *pointing out*, *seeing*, *deciding*, etc. (II. 43-47). For the use of the tenses, see II. 46.

(e) RELATIVE CLAUSES.

Ordinary attributive relative clauses are in the indicative, but they are put in the subjunctive if they are dependent on a verb or phrase of *saying*, *thinking*, *knowing*, etc., *i.e.*, where the relative clause represents the words or thoughts of some other than the writer. (II. 214, a, 2; 215, e.)

1. The relative may generally be replaced by the phrase *such as* or *such that*.

i. In many cases the subjunctive is used where, without expressly saying so, the writer is practically giving the words or thoughts of some other person. This is called *virtual indirect narration*. (II. 216.)

ii. A clause introduced by the co-ordinating relative may be in the infinitive in indirect narration. (II. 215, *f*.)

iii. Relative clauses of comparison, after *ut*, *quam*, follow the rules for ordinary relative clauses.

iv. Relative clauses may be *final* (99, *a*, *i*), *consecutive* (characteristic) (99, *c*), *causal* (99, *g*, *iii*), *concessive* (99, *i*, *iv*).

v. For the use of the perfect and pluperfect indicative in frequentative clauses, see II. 202, 204, *a*.

(*f*) TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

i. *Postquam*, *ubi*, *simul atque* (*ac*), *ut*, *ut primum*, *cum primum*, take the indicative, except when forming a part of indirect narration, when the subjunctive is used.

ii. *Dum*, *dōnec*, *quamdiū*, *quoad*, meaning *so long as*, *while*, take the indicative, except when forming a part of indirect narration, when the subjunctive is used. (II. 172.)

iii. *Dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, meaning *until*, take the indicative of the actual lapse of time, the subjunctive where the purpose or end in view is indicated (II. 174), or in indirect narration.

iv. *Antequam*, *priusquam* (often written as two words), take the indicative of the actual lapse of time, the subjunctive where the end in view (something to be achieved or prevented) is indicated (II. 175), or in indirect narration.

v. *Cum*, with primary tenses, or with secondary tenses when used as a mere relative adverb, and in frequentative clauses, takes the indicative (except in indirect narration); in other cases with secondary tenses the subjunctive is used. (II. 168, 169, 170.)

vi. For the present indicative of past time with *dum*, see II. 173. For the perfect and pluperfect indicative in frequentative clause, see II. 168, 170, *b*. For the future perfect, where English less exactly uses the present (or perfect), see II. 205, *b*.

(*g*) CAUSAL CLAUSES.

i. *Quod*, *quia*, *quoniam* take the indicative except when expressing (actually or virtually) a reason given by some other than the writer. This includes *quod* clauses after verbs of emotion. (II. 165, 166.)

ii. *Cum*, meaning *since*, takes the subjunctive. (II. 167.)

iii. Relative clauses with the subjunctive are often used to express a reason. (II. 196.)

iv. An imaginary reason which is mentioned only to be rejected is in the subjunctive. (II. 165, *b*. N.B.)

(h) CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

i. These are found after *sī*, *if*; *nisi*, *sī nōn*, *if not*, *unless*; *sīn* but *if*. The conditional clause is called the *protasis*; the result, the *apodosis* (II. 78, 79). As a rule the same mood is found in both *protasis* and *apodosis*. (For exceptions, see II. 85.)

ii. The usual division of conditional clauses is as follows :¹

Present or Past time.	{	1. Unreal conditions. Past tenses of subjunctive. (II. 82.)
		2. Where nothing is said of the reality or unreality. Indicative. (II. 81.)
Future time.	{	3. More vivid. Indicative. (II. 83, 1, and 84.)
		4. Less vivid. Present subjunctive. (II. 83, 2.)

iii. In indirect narration, all conditional clauses are in the subjunctive, the apodosis being in the infinitive. (II. 87.)

iv. Conditional clauses of comparison are used after *ut sī*, *velut sī*, *tanquam sī*, *quasi*, followed by the subjunctive. The present subjunctive is used after primary tenses, the imperfect after secondary. (For relative clauses of comparison, see section 99, e, iii.)

v. *Dum*, *modo*, *dummodo* meaning *provided that*, take the subjunctive. (II. 171.)

(i) CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

i. *Quamquam* regularly takes the indicative (II. 88, b), *quamvis* and *licet* the subjunctive (II. 88, c), *etsi* and other compounds of *sī* the indicative or subjunctive (on the same principles as *sī*). (II. 88, a.)

ii. *Ut* and *nē* may introduce concessive clauses with the subjunctive. (II. 88. c.)

iii. *Cum* = *although*, takes the subjunctive. (II. 88, c, 167.)

iv. *Quī* is found with the subjunctive in a concessive sense. (II. 196.)

(k) SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION.

When dependent on a clause in the subjunctive or infinitive, clauses which ordinarily would have the indicative (especially relative clauses), are put in the subjunctive, if the two clauses are closely connected in sense, and the dependent clause is necessary to the clause in the subjunctive or infinitive.² (II. 220.)

100. The Imperative.

(a) The present imperative, used in the second person only, is the tense usually employed. With a negative it is found chiefly in poetry. (II. 149, 150.)

1. These are sometimes called *Unreal* (1), *Ideal* (4) *Logical* (2 and 3).

2. It is often hard to decide whether a subjunctive is such by attraction or through being in a clause of virtual indirect narration.

(b) The future imperative, used in the second and rarely the third person, expresses rather a contingent command than one to be immediately obeyed. Hence it is common in laws and precepts and in distinct reference to some future time.

i. *Sciō* and *meminī* regularly use the future imperative for the present.

101. The Infinitive.

(a) COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE. The present infinitive (active or passive) is used to complete the meaning of many verbs whose reference would otherwise be incomplete, e.g., *possum*, *jubeō*, *coepī*, *cōsuecō*, *volō*, *cōnor*, *audeō*, *cōgō*, *dēbeō*, *prohibeō*, and similar verbs. (II. 19, 20, 21.)

i. This corresponds closely to the use of the infinitive with *to* in English, but the usage is more restricted in Latin than in English. (II. 24, 27.)

ii. Verbs of *hoping* and *promising* rarely take the present infinitive, but do so regularly in the case of *posse* and *velle*. (II. 13.)

iii. This use of the infinitive is greatly extended in poetry (and in certain prose writers), approaching more nearly English usage; e.g., the infinitive is used to express purpose, to define the application of adjectives and nouns, and with verbs which are not usually followed by the infinitive, to complete their meaning.

(b) ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE. After verbs *sentīendī et declār-andī* (i.e., of *saying, thinking, perceiving*, etc.), the infinitive with a subject accusative is used where English has a noun clause introduced by *that*. (II. 12-17.)

i. The subject accusative is sometimes omitted when easily understood from the context.

ii. When the verb of *saying*, etc., is in the passive, the infinitive is used without any subject accusative. (II. 14.) In such a case a predicative noun or adjective is in the nominative.

iii. The accusative with the future infinitive is usual after verbs of *hoping, promising*, etc. (II. 13.)

iv. Verbs of *wishing* often take the accusative and infinitive construction, regularly so if the two verbs refer to different subjects. (II. 22.)

v. In place of the future infinitive passive (and occasionally of the future infinitive active), *fore ut* with a consecutive subjunctive is used. (II. 33, N.B.)

vi. *Esse* is often omitted in compound or periphrastic infinitives.

vii. The accusative and infinitive is used in exclamations, after some suppressed idea of *thinking*. (The idea of—, to think that—.)

(c) AS A SUBSTANTIVE, the infinitive is used as a neuter noun in the nominative or accusative (but never as an accusative governed by a preposition). (II. 130, 132.)

i. The other cases are furnished by the *gerund* or *supine*.

ii. The complementary infinitive, and the accusative and infinitive construction, are closely connected with this usage, and it is impossible in some cases to say to which class a particular infinitive belongs.

(d) HISTORICAL INFINITIVE. The present infinitive is often used as a finite independent verb in lively descriptions. In this usage the subject is in the nominative. (II. 131.)

(e) TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE. The present tense is used in all the usages described in *a*, *b*, *c* and *d*; the perfect in *b* and rarely *c*; the future in *b*. For the difference in the force of the tenses as used in the accusative and infinitive construction (*i.e.*, to represent an indicative), see II. 16.

102. The Participles.

(a) The PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE expresses *continuance* at the time of the verb of the clause to which it belongs. (II. 144.)

i. The present participle, like the present indicative, occasionally expresses an attempt.

ii. The present participle is often used as an adjective or as a noun. (II. 148, *b*, *c*.)

iii. For the present participle in the ablative absolute, see II. 48, 49, 148, *a*.

iv. For the participles of deponent verbs, see section 68, *c*.

(b) The FUTURE PARTICIPLE ACTIVE is generally used with the verb *sum* to indicate *intention*, *likelihood* or *imminence*. (II. 147.)

i. In poetry and late prose writers the future participle is used without *sum*, to express *intention*, *likelihood*, or *probability*.

(c) The PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE expresses *completion* or *attainment* by the time of the verb of the clause to which it belongs. (II. 145.)

i. The perfect participle is often translated by the English present participle in *-ing*, or by subordinate clauses, or even by a co-ordinate clause. (II. 49, *f*. N.B., 146, 148, *a*.)

ii. For the perfect participle used to suggest an abstract idea, see II. 235.

iii. For the perfect participle in the ablative absolute, see II. 49, 148, *a*.

iv. The perfect participle is often used as an adjective or as a noun. (II. 148, *b*, *c*.)

v. For the participles of deponent verbs, see section 68, *c*.

vi. With certain deponent verbs the perfect participle is found with the force of the present participle, e.g., *ratus*, *solitus*, *veritus*. (See also II. 146.)

103. The Gerund.

The gerund is used as a verbal noun, in the genitive, dative, accusative and ablative cases of the singular. It is generally either an intransitive verb or a transitive without its accusative object expressed (see section 104, *b*). (II. 133.)

(*a*) The genitive is used chiefly as an objective genitive, and with *causā*.

i. For the gerund with *meī*, *suī*, etc., see II. 134.

(*b*) The dative is used chiefly with adjectives (rarely nouns) denoting *fitness* or *capacity*, and in a few official phrases.

(*c*) The accusative is used with *ad*, *inter*, and rarely other prepositions. The commonest use is with *ad* to express *purpose*.

(*d*) The ablative is used as an ablative of *means* or *cause*, and with *in*, *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, and rarely other prepositions.

104. The Gerundive.

The gerundive (sometimes called the future participle passive) is always passive, and expresses that which is *due* or *proper*.

(*a*) With the verb *sum*, the gerundive is used to express *duty*, *obligation* or *necessity*. The form of expression is always passive. (II. 142.)

i. The agent is generally in the dative.

ii. The neuter nominative is used with the third singular of *sum*, impersonally, in the case of intransitive verbs.

(*b*) The gerundive construction is used in place of the gerund with a direct object in the accusative, regularly so with prepositions (II. 140, 141). In the genitive both modes of expression are common, and sometimes occur in the same sentence. By this construction, instead of some case of the gerund governing an object in the accusative, the gerundive is used in agreement with the

object, but both words are in the case the gerund would have been in.

i. The various cases are used in the same way as the cases of the gerund (see section 103).

ii. As a rule, the gerundive construction is possible only with transitive verbs, but *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vescor*, are exceptions. (II. 141, b.)

iii. The genitive is used predicatively with verbs, especially *sum*, to express purpose.

ix. For the so called gerundive in *-ī* with *meī*, *suī*, etc., see II. 134.

(c) The gerundive is used in agreement with the object of certain verbs, e.g., *dō*, *cūrō* (or with the passive in the predicative nominative) to express purpose. (II. 143.)

105. The Supine.

(a) The supine is *-um* in used after verbs of motion to express purpose. An object is rarely found with the accusative supine. (II. 136, 137.)

(b) The supine in *-ū* is used with certain adjectives and a few nouns, e.g., *fās*, *nefās*, to specify in what respect a statement is to be applied.¹ An object is never found with the ablative supine. (II. 138, 139.)

106. General Rules of Indirect Narration (*Ōrātiō Obliqua*).

(See more fully II. 212-219.)

(a) MOOD OF VERB.

	DIRECT NARRATION.	INDIRECT NARRATION.
Principal Clauses.	{ Statements Rhetorical Questions }	are put in the Infinitive.
	{ Commands Entreaties Questions }	" " " Subjunctive.
Subordinate Clauses (whether in the Indicative or the Subjunctive)	{	" " " Subjunctive.

1. There are many reasons for thinking the supine in *-u* a dative of purpose (*-ū* contracted for *ui*) rather than an ablative of specification.

(b) TENSE OF VERB.

Clauses put in the infinitive have,

The present infinitive for time contemporaneous with the speaker.

" perfect " " " prior to that of the speaker.

" future " " " subsequent to that of the speaker.

Clauses put in the subjunctive follow the rules for the sequence of tenses (see section 107).

(c) CASE OF NOUNS OR PRONOUNS. The subject of a clause whose verb is put in the infinitive is in the accusative, not the nominative.

(d) PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS. Pronouns of the first or second person are changed to pronouns of the third person, generally *sē* and *ille* respectively.

All demonstrative pronouns, adverbs or adjectives which are relative to the time of the speaker, are as a rule adapted to the time of the reporter.

107. Sequence of Tenses.

(a) In most dependent clauses in the subjunctive (*e.g.*, clause of Purpose, Indirect Questions, Subordinate clauses put in Indirect Narration), the rule is that after the primary tenses¹ the Present and Perfect Subjunctives are used, after secondary tenses the Imperfect and Pluperfect.

The present and imperfect represent continuous actions; the perfect and pluperfect completed actions.

i. The future is represented by the present and imperfect; the future perfect by the perfect and pluperfect.

ii. Often for vividness' sake the primary sequence (the tenses of the speaker) is used in place of the secondary sequence (the tenses of the reporter).

iii. After the historical present, either primary or secondary sequence may be used.

iv. Often there is found a shifting from the secondary to the primary sequence, especially in long passages.

v. Consecutive clauses are not affected by the tense of the verb on which they depend.

1. The primary tenses are the present, future, and true perfect (whether indicative, subjunctive or imperative); the secondary tenses are the imperfect, aorist perfect, and pluperfect (whether indicative or subjunctive).

vi. When the subjunctive clause depends on a participle or infinitive, its tense is determined by the leading verb of the sentence to which the participle or infinitive belongs.

(b) The following will show the application of the sequence of tenses to clauses put in the subjunctive in indirect narration.

DIRECT NARRATION.		INDIRECT NARRATION.		
		<i>Primary Sequence.</i>	<i>Secondary Sequence.</i>	
Present Indic.	becomes	Present Subj.	Imperfect Subj.	
Imperfect "	"	Imperfect "	"	"
Future "	"	Present "	"	"
Perfect "	"	Perfect "	Pluperfect "	
Pluperfect "	"	Pluperfect "	"	"
Future Perfect Indic.	"	Perfect "	"	"

108. The Adverb.

Adverbs, as in English, modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.

i. Rarely an adverb is used to modify a verbal noun.

ii. A few adverbs, e.g., *propius*, *proximē*, *pridiē*, are found governing cases as though they were prepositions.

iii. *Yes* and *no* are expressed in Latin by some emphatic adverb, or more frequently by repeating the verb of the question.

109. The Conjunction. (See also section 74).

The following points are of importance in regard to the usage of some of the conjunctions :

(a) *ET*, *-QUE*, *ATQUE*, *ĀC* : *Et* simply combines ; *-que* adds a second member which belongs closely to the first and completes its meaning ; *atque* adds something of importance, something to be emphasized ; *āc* is in force between *et* and *atque*, and is never used before vowels.

(b) *ET . . . ET* = *both . . . and* ; *NEQUE . . . NEQUE*, or *NEC . . . NEC* = *neither . . . nor*. Other combinations are *-que . . . et*, *-que . . . -que*, *neque . . . et*, *et . . . neque*.

(c) *AUT*, *VEL* : *Aut* denotes an essential difference between two things ; *vel* implies that there is no difference of importance. *Ve* and *sive* have much the force of *vel*, but are rarer.

(d) *AUT . . . AUT* ; or *VEL . . . VEL* = *either . . . or*. *SĪVE . . . SĪVE* = *whether . . . or*.

(e) Often for vividness' sake (e.g. in rapid narrative) or to give point to a contrast, the usual connective is omitted. This omis-

sion is called *asyndeton*. The use of needless connectives, to give more force to an enumeration by dwelling on it, is called *polysyndeton*.

(f) *UT* is used as a final (section 99, a), consecutive (99, b), temporal (99, f) or concessive (99, i) conjunction. *NĒ* is used as a final (99, a) or concessive (99, i) conjunction. Both *ut* and *nē* may introduce either adverbial or substantival clauses.

(g) *CUM* is used as a temporal (section 99, f), causal (99, g) or concessive (99, i) conjunction.

(h) *DUM* is used as a temporal (section 99, f) or conditional (99, h) conjunction.

(i) *QUOD* is used as a causal conjunction (section 99, g). It may introduce either adverbial clauses or (in the sense of *inasmuch as*, or *as for the fact that*) substantival clauses. *Quod* is often to be translated *that* or *the fact that* rather than *because*.

(k) *QUANDŌ* is used as a temporal (section 99, f) or causal (99, g) conjunction.

110. The Order of Words.

In addition to the more general treatment in Part II. 1-8, 238, 239, the following details should be noted.

(a) The order of words or of clauses commonly follows the natural order in which the ideas would present themselves, being changed chiefly for the expression of emotion. But though the ideas may be presented in the same order as in English, the syntactical relation of the various parts may be totally different.

(b) An adjective or other modifier generally follows its noun unless it is to be emphasized. Numerals, adjectives of size and quantity, and demonstrative pronouns commonly precede, being generally emphatic. Additional emphasis is often given by separating two words in agreement.

(c) Personal pronouns are apt to be placed in emphatic positions, and where two personal or possessive pronouns occur in the same clause they are generally placed close together.

(d) Relative and interrogative pronouns are placed as near as possible to the beginning of the clause they introduce.

(e) Adverbs precede the words they modify, though sometimes for emphasis' sake they may follow a verb.

(f) Prepositions (except *tenuis*, *versus*, in certain cases *cum*, and occasionally other prepositions) precede the word governed. An adjective or genitive modifying a noun governed by a preposition

is often placed between the preposition and noun, or even before the preposition (if it is monosyllabic).

(g) A negative is regularly placed before the word modified. If it applies equally to the whole sentence, it is placed before the verb.

(h) The verb is regularly at the end of its sentence.

i. The copula is generally followed by some important word or words. When *sum* begins a sentence it is no longer a mere copula, but a substantive verb, or an emphasized copula (= *exists, really is*).

ii. A dependent infinitive precedes the verb on which it depends.

iii. When the verb is not placed at the end of the sentence, it is either that it may itself be emphasized (by being placed at the beginning of its clause), or that some other word may be emphasized by being placed at the close of the sentence.

(i) A word is often made more emphatic by placing immediately after it some unimportant word.

(k) Antithesis may be expressed by repeating in the second clause the order of the first (*Anaphora*) or, more frequently, by reversing it (*Chiasmus*).

(l) The Romans paid special attention to the succession of long and short vowels at the close of a sentence or period. The closing cadence of a verse was particularly avoided in prose.

(m) Noun, adjective and adverbial clauses are as a rule in the position a noun, adjective and adverb respectively would have. *Consecutive* and often *final* clauses follow that on which they depend. *Temporal, conditional* and *concessive* clauses often precede the principal clause. But, except with *consecutive* clauses, subordinate clauses are most frequently embraced within the principal clause.

(n) In narrative passages the periodic structure is commoner in Latin than in English.

(o) In translating, the words should be considered in the order in which they occur, not pieced together by selecting a word here and another there.

IV. METRE.

THE DACTYLIC HEXAMETER.

111. As in English, so in Latin, poetry is written in lines or verses, and the verses are divided into feet. The main distinction between the two languages is, that in English poetry the verse consists of a regular succession and combination of *accented* and *unaccented* (or rather *more strongly* and *less strongly* accented) syllables, while in Latin it consists of the regular succession and combination of *long*¹ and *short* syllables.

112. The smallest combination within which such *long* and *short*, or *accented* and *unaccented* syllables, occur, is called a foot.

In each foot there is a certain syllable on which there falls a special stress of voice called the *ictus* (or *stroke*), while on the other syllable or syllables no such stress is placed. The part of the foot on which the *ictus* falls is called the *arsis*, and the rest of the foot is called the *thesis*.

In English poetry the *ictus* coincides with the ordinary *accent* of the word, while in Latin it does not at all depend upon the word-accent, though frequently coincident therewith.

113. The dactylic hexameter (or heroic verse of the Latins) consists of six feet, of which the sixth is invariably a spondee — — (or what may here be counted as such, — ∪), the fifth nearly always a dactyl — ∪ ∪. Each of the first four may be a dactyl or a spondee, generally a judicious combination of the two being preferred, except where the poet for certain reasons uses a preponderance of one or the other. The *ictus* falls on the first syllable of these feet.

1. For the purposes of metre, a syllable is considered long, not only when the vowel is long by *nature*, but generally also when (even though naturally short) it comes before two consonants, when it is said to be long by *position*. However, at least one of the consonants must belong to the same word as the vowel in question. With a vowel naturally long, the syllable is long by nature as well as by position. The letters *j*, *x* and *z* have the same effect as two consonants. The letter *h* in combination with a consonant does not lengthen a preceding syllable, and a word or syllable beginning with that letter is considered, metrically, as beginning with a vowel. A syllable is considered common, that is, sometimes long and sometimes short, if its vowel, when short by nature, is followed by a mute (*b*, *g*, *p*, *t*, etc.) and a liquid (*l* or *r*).

The metrical scale may be represented thus, the acute accent marking the syllable on which the *ictus* falls :

$\frac{1}{1} \cup \cup \mid \frac{1}{1} \cup \cup \mid \frac{1}{1} \cup \cup \mid \frac{1}{1} \cup \cup \mid \frac{1}{1} \cup \cup \mid \frac{1}{1} \cup$
 $\frac{1}{1} _ \mid \frac{1}{1} _ \mid \frac{1}{1} _ \mid \frac{1}{1} _ \mid \left[\frac{1}{1} _ \right] \frac{1}{1} _$

114. In all poetry, especially where (as in Latin) there is no rhyme, a great deal of the beauty and melody of the rhythm depends upon the *caesura*,¹ or pause, in the verse, occurring where a word ends within a foot, and usually, but not always, accompanied by a corresponding pause in the sense.

The favorite caesural pause in the dactylic hexameter is after the arsis or in the thesis of the third foot. From occurring after the *fifth half* foot of the verse, it is termed the *penthemimeral caesura*. However, the position of the pause varies, and sometimes more than one *caesura* are found in the same line.

115. A few verses of the *Æneid* are here scanned (that is, divided into their appropriate measures) according to the rules above given, double lines being used to mark the position of the principal *caesura* in each verse :²

(a) $\acute{A}rma \ vī \mid rŭmquē \ cā \mid nō \parallel Trō \mid jaē \ quī \mid primŭs \ āb \mid \acute{O}rīs$

(b) $Vī \ sŭpē \mid rŭm \ saē \mid vaē \parallel mēmō \mid rēm \ Jū \mid nōnīs \ ōb \mid \acute{I}rām$

(c) $\acute{I}nfēr \mid rētquē \ dē \mid \acute{O}s \ Lātī \mid \acute{O}, \parallel gēnŭs \mid \acute{U}ndē \ Lā \mid tīnŭm$

(d) $Quīdvē \ dō \mid lēns, \parallel rē \mid gīnā \ dē \mid ūm \ tōt \mid vōlvērē \mid cāsŭs$

1. Whenever a word ends within a foot, a *caesura* is produced. Accordingly a verse may have several caesuras, but generally only one of them the chief caesura, or the caesura of the verse—is marked by any perceptible pause in the sense. Occasionally we find two well defined caesural pauses in the same line, one in the fourth foot and the other in the second. When the pause occurs at the end of a foot (which very seldom happens), it is sometimes called *diæresis*; as,

His lacri | mis vi | tam damus || — et mise | rescimus | ultro.

The pupil may note the prosaic character of such verses as the following, in which there is no caesura or pause of any description :—

Romae | moenia | terruit | impiger | Hannibal | armis.
 Sparsis | hastis | longis | campus | splendet et | horret.

2. The mark of the long quantity used in the scansion of the verses in this and the following sections indicates that the *syllable* is long metrically, not necessarily that the *vowel* over which it is placed is long by nature, although in some cases the syllable is long metrically (that is by position) and at the same time the vowel is naturally long. For example, in (d) *Quīdvē* has the first syllable long by position, though the vowel *i* in *quīd* is naturally short; the last syllable of *dolens* is long by position, and at the same time the *e* is long by nature; so with the last syllable of *deum*; *tōt* (naturally short) is here long by position only, and if it were followed by a vowel or *h* it would be short both naturally and metrically. So the first syllable of *volvère* is long by position only, the vowel *o* in this word being short by nature.

(e) SÍ quā | fātā sī | nūnt, || jān | tūm tēn | dītqūe fō | vētqūe

(f) Ēxcēdē | rānt ānī | mō ; || mānēt | āltā | mēntē rē | pōstūm

(g) Lūstrā | būnt cōn | vēxā, || pō | lūs dūm | sīdērā | pāscēt

The pause coming between the two short syllables of the foot, as in the last example, is called the *trochaic, weak* or *feminine caesura*, that after the arsis, as in the other examples, being termed *syllabic, strong* or *masculine*.

With these lines may be compared the following English hexameters from Longfellow :

This is the forest primeval. || The murmuring pines and the hemlocks,
Bearded with moss, || and in garments green, || indistinct in the twilight,

Stand like Druids of eǵd, || with voices sad and prophetic,
Stand like harpers hoar, || with beards that rest on their bosoms.
Loud from its rocky caverns, || the deep-voiced neighbouring ocean
Speaks, || and in accents disconsolate answers the wail of the forest.

116. (a) There is an *elision*¹ (*synaloepha*) or slurring of the last syllable of a word ending with a vowel, diphthong, or letter *m* preceded by a vowel, when the following word begins with a vowel, diphthong, or the letter *h*. The elision of *m* with the preceding vowel is sometimes termed *ecthlipsis*.

EXAMPLES:—

Lītōrā | mūlt(um) īl | l(e) ēt tēr | rīs || jāc | tātūs ēt | āltō.

Nēcd(um) ētī | ām cāu | s(ae) írā | rūm || sāe | víquē dō | lórēs.

Cōrrīpī | ūnt, || ōnē | rāntq(ue) aū | ró : || dūx | fēmīnā | fāctī.

Ūnd(e) hōmī | nūm gēnūs, | ēt pēcū | dēs ; || ūn | d(e) ímbēr
ēt | ígnēs

COMPARE:—

Impress'd th(e) effulgence of his glor(y) abides.

May I express th(ee) unblamed, since God is light?

T(o) inveigle and invite th(e) unwary sense.

1. Certain monosyllables such as do, dem, spe, spem, sim, etc., do not suffer elision.

(b) A *hiatus* (i.e., the retention of the final vowel in scansion before a word beginning with a vowel, a diphthong or an *h*), is rarely found, usually in the case of proper names, interjections and long vowels or diphthongs, especially in the arsis of the foot. In the thesis, a long vowel is sometimes shortened instead of being elided.

EXAMPLES:—

Pósthǎbĭ | tā cǒlŭ | íssě Sá | mǒ. || Hĭc | íllŭs | ármǎ

Tŭn(e) ĭl | l(e) Áenē | ás, || quēm | Dárdǎnĭ | ō An | chísaē

(This last verse is an example of those rare [*spondaic*] lines, which have a spondee in the fifth foot.)

Víctǒr ǎ | pŭd rǎpĭ | dŭm || Sĭmǒ | éntǎ sŭb | Ílĭǒ | áltō,

Ét vē | r(a) íncēs | sŭ pǎtŭ | ít děǎ. || Íll(e) ŭbĭ | mátrēm

The division in this verse is the so-called *bucolic* caesura, which is found after the fourth foot when that is a dactyl.

(c) When the *elision* occurs at the end of the verse (which is extremely seldom), it is called *synapheia*, the line being read or scanned in close connection with the one following, which, of course, must begin with a vowel or an *h*; as,

Jáctē | mŭr, dǒcě | ás: || ĭg | nár(i) hǒmĭ | nŭmqŭe lǒ | cǒrŭmqŭ(e)

Érrā | mŭs, || vĕn | t(o) hŭc ēt | vástĭs | flŭctĭbŭs | áctĭ:

117. (a) To denote a rapid or lively movement, a succession of dactyls may be used; as,

Rádĭt ĭ | tĕr ĭquĭ | dŭm || cĕlē | rĕs něquĕ | cǒmnǒvĕt | álās

Compare with this,

Leaped like the roe, when he hears in the woodland the voice of the huntsman.

Myriads of rivulets hurrying through the lawn.

It will be observed that the metre of the last example is different from that of the preceding one, but, as in the hexameter, the numerous unaccented syllables are used to denote rapidly repeated action.

(b) On the other hand a succession of spondees may be used to

represent a slow or labored movement, or a stately or majestic gait or appearance; as,

Áppā | rént rā | rī || nān | tēs īn | gūrgītē | vāstō

Īnfē | líx sā | xīs || īn | prōcūr | réntībūs | haēsīt

Cért(e) hīnc | Rómā | nōs || ō | lím vōl | vēntībūs | ānnīs

Ást ěgō | quaē || dī | v(um) íncē | dō rē | gīnā Jō | vīsquē

With these verses compare the following:—

Stand like harpers hoar, with beards that rest on their bosoms.

Thousands of aching brains, where theirs no longer are busy,
Thousands of toiling hands, where theirs have ceased from their
labors.

118. Closely connected with the use of dactyls or spondees for the purposes mentioned in the last section, is what may be called the *imitative harmony* of language, that is, the arrangement in proper rhythmical order, of words containing certain vowel or consonantal sounds, to represent the sounds made by the animate or inanimate objects described in the verse; as,

Quádrupē | dāntē pū | trēm || sōnī | tú quātīt | ūngŭlā | cāmpŭm
(of the galloping of horses)

Īll(i) īn | dígnān | tēs || māg | nō cūm | mŭrmŭrē | mōntīs
(of the roaring of the pent-up winds)

Áfrictūs, | ét vās | tōs || vōl | vŭnt ād | lítōrā | flŭctūs
(of billows dashing upon the shore)

With these verses the following English examples may be compared :

Loud from its rocky caverns, the deep-voiced neighbouring ocean
Speaks, and in accents disconsolate answers the wail of the forest.

By the long wash of Australasian seas.

The league-long roller thundering on the reef.

The moan of doves in immemorial elms,
And murmuring of innumerable bees.

Now soft on the sand, now loud on the ledge,
Is heard the tramp of his steed as he rides.

Half a league, half a league, half a league onward.

I galloped, Dirck galloped, we galloped all three.

119. It may be stated in conclusion that the poets, owing to the demands of metre, take frequent liberties with the quantities¹ of the vowels and with the number of the syllables in the words. For example, the word *deinde* (usually of three syllables) is often treated as if it were of two syllables, *dēinde*. This is called *synaeresis*, or *synizēsis*.

Again, two syllables usually contracted into one in prose often remain distinct in poetry, as, *Orpheüs* (three syllables), for the usual *Orphēus* (two syllables). This is termed *diaeresis*.

Ūnius, *illius*, etc., are frequently found pronounced *ūnius*, *illius*, etc., and especially with proper names is the quantity of the vowels varied to suit the requirements of the verse, as *Sŷchæus* and *Sychæus*, *Lāvīnia* and *Larīnia*, *Sidōnius* and *Sidonius*.

1. As the ictus falls naturally on a long syllable—on the first syllable of the dactyl or its equivalent spondee—it sometimes happens that a syllable regularly short is lengthened simply because it occupies the part of the foot on which the voice-stress falls. For example, in the verse,

Litora jactetur, odiis Junonis iniquae,

the last syllable of *jactetur*, naturally short, is lengthened on account of its position in the arsis of the foot. It is probable that in most cases where this happens, it is merely the retention of an originally long quantity.

EXPLANATORY NOTES TO THE VOCABULARY.

Hyphens are used to distinguish the constant from the variable part of Latin words.

Words of the same or similar form, but differently translated, are numbered 1, 2, 3, etc.

References are made to the sections of Parts II. and III. In the Latin-English Vocabulary all references are to Part III.

w. stands for *with*. The other abbreviations are common, and do not need explanation.

The quantity of all vowels long by nature has been marked. Vowels not marked are to be considered short by nature.

VOCABULARY.

I. LATIN-ENGLISH.

A

- ā, ab**, *prep. w. abl.*, from, away from; *with passives*, by.
- ab-dō**, *ere, -didī, -ditum*, conceal, hide.
- ab-jiciō**, *ere, -jēcī, -jectum*, throw away.
- absum**, *abesse, āfuī*, be distant.
- ac-cēdō**, *ere, -cēssī, -cēssum*, come, draw near.
- ac-cidō**, *ere, -cidī*, happen.
- ac-cipiō**, *ere, -cēpī, -ceptum*, receive.
- ac-currō**, *ere, -currī or -cucurrī*, run up.
- acēs, ēl**, *F.*, line of battle, line.
- ācriter**, (*ācrius, ācerrimē*), *adv.*, fiercely, desperately.
- ad**, *prep. w. acc.*, to, towards; near, on, at, by; *with gerund and gerundive*, with a view to, for.
- ad-dūcō**, *ere, -dūxī, -ductum*, bring; influence, induce.
- adeuptus**, *from adimō*.
- ad-eō**, *Ire, -iī (-ivī), itum*, go to, visit.
- adequitō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*, ride up.
- ad-imō**, *ere, -ēmī, -emptum*, take away, destroy.
- administrō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*, attend to.
- ador-ior**, *Irī, -tus sum*, attack.
- adulēsc-ēns, -entis**, *M.*, a young man.
- adventus, ūs**, *M.*, approach, arrival.
- adversus, a, um**, unsuccessful; *prælitum adversum*, defeat, repulse.
- aedificium, ī**, *N.*, building.
- aedificō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*, build.
- Aeduis, ī**, *M.*, an Aeduan; *in plur.*, the Aedui (*a tribe in Gaul*).
- aegrē** (*aegrīus, aegerrimē*), *adv.*, with difficulty; *in superlative*, with the greatest difficulty.
- aequus, a, um**, level, favorable.
- aestimō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*, reckon, regard.
- aestus, ūs**, *M.*, tide.
- afferō**, *afferre, attulī, allātum*, bring, cause.
- af-fligō**, *ere, -flīxī, -flīctum*, shatter, damage, wreck.
1. **ager, agrī**, *M.*, land, field, territory.
2. **ag-ger, -geris**, *M.*, mound.
- ag-gredior, ī, -gressus sum**, attack.
- ag-men, -minis**, *N.*, line of march, army (*on the march*), column.
- agō**, *ere, ēgī, āctum*, do; treat, confer.
- agricultūra, ae**, *F.*, agriculture, farming.
- ali-quis, -qua, -quid or -quod** [26], some, some one, something.
- alius, a, ud** [14], other, another; *repeated, in plur.*, some . . . others.
- Allobrog-es, -um**, *M. plur.*, the Allobroges (*a tribe in Gaul*).
- Alp-ēs, -ium**, *M. plur.*, the Alps.
- alter, era, erum** [14], the other (*of two*); *repeated, in sing.*, the one . . . the other.
- altitū-dō, -dinis**, *F.*, height, depth.
- altum, ī**, *N.*, deep water.
- altus, a, um**, high, deep.
- amicitia, ae**, *F.*, friendship.
1. **amicus, a, um**, friendly.
2. **amicus, ī**, *M.*, friend.
- ā-mittō**, *ere, -mīsī, -missum*, lose.
- amplius, adv.**, more, further.
- amplus, a, um**, large.
- ancōra, ae**, *F.*, anchor.
- angustus, a, um**, narrow, small, contracted.
- animadver-tō**, *ere, -tī, -sum*, notice, observe.
- anim-al, -ālis**, *N.*, animal.
- animus, ī**, *M.*, spirit, mind, heart, courage.
- annus, ī**, *M.*, year.
1. **ante**, *adv.*, before, previously.
2. **ante**, *prep. w. acc.*, before.
- ante-cēdō**, *ere, -cēssī, -cēssum*, surpass, excel.
- antiquus, a, um**, old, ancient.
- apertus, a, um**, exposed, unprotected (*i. e., by the shield*).
- appet-ō**, *ere, -ivī, -itum*, strive after, seek.
- appropinquō**, *āre, āvī*, come near, be near (*with dat.*).

aquila, ae, f., eagle (*the standard of the Roman legion*).

Aquitania, ae, f., Aquitania (*the southwestern part of Gaul*).

arbiter, trī, m., arbitrator.

arbitror, ārī, ātus sum, think, believe.

ardnus, a, um, steep, difficult.

āridum, ī, n., dry land.

arma, ōrum, n. plur., arms.

armō, āre, āvī, ātum, arm; *perf. part. pass.*, armed, in arms.

ascendō, ere, ascēdī, ascēsum, mount, climb, ascend.

ascēnsus, ūs, m., ascent.

asper, era, erum, rugged, rough.

atque, and, and further.

at-tingō, ere, -tigī, -tactum, touch, reach.

attribuō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, assign.

au-tor, -toris, m., leader, adviser.

auctōri-tās, -tātis, f., influence, prestige, weight.

audācter, adv., boldly.

audeō, ēre, ausus sum [68, b], venture, dare.

audiō, īre, īvī, ītum, hear.

augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum, increase.

aut, or; *repeated*, either . . . or.

autem, whereas, while; moreover.

auxilium, ī, n., aid; *in plur.*, auxiliaries, reinforcements.

Avaricum, ī, n., Avaricum (*a town in Gaul*).

āver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, turn aside.

Axona, ae, f., the Axona (*a river in Gaul*).

B

1. **barbarus, ī, m.**, barbarian.

2. **barbarus, a, um**, uncivilized.

Belgae, ārum, m., *plur.*, the Belgae (*a nation in the north of Gaul*).

Belgium, ī, n., the country of the Belgae.

Bellovacī, ōrum, m. plur., the Bellovacī (*a tribe in Gaul*).

bellum, ī, n., war.

Bōī, ōrum, m. plur., the Boii (*name of a tribe*).

brevis, e, short; **brevī, used as adv.**, quickly.

Britannia, ae, f., Britain.

Britannus, ī, m., a Briton.

caeruleus, a, um, dark blue.

Caesar, -aris, m., Caesar.

C

Cantium, ī, n., Kent.

capiō, ere, cepī, captum, take, take up, select.

captivus, ī, m., captive, prisoner.

carō, carnis, f., meat.

cārus, a, um, dear.

castellum, ī, n., fort, stronghold.

castra, ōrum, n. plur., camp.

causa, ae, f., cause, reason; *in the abl.*, with a *gen. preceding*, for the sake of, for the purpose of.

cēdō, ere, cēssi, cēssum, retreat.

celer, era, erum, speedy.

celeritās, -tātis, f., swiftness, rapidity, activity.

centum [16], a hundred.

centur-iō, -iōnis, m., centurion (*an officer in the Roman army*).

certus, a, um, certain, fixed, specified.

cēteri, ae, a, adj. plur., the rest, the others.

cibus, ī, m., food.

Cicer-ō, -ōnis, m., Cicero (*a Roman's name*).

cingō, ere, cinxī, cinctum, surround.

circiter, adv., about; *also as prep. v. acc.*, about.

circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, surround.

circum-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead around.

circum-veniō, īre, -vénī, ventum, surround, outflank.

citer-ior, -ius, adj. compar., hither, nearer (*of the one of two provinces which lay nearer to Rome*).

citō (citius, citissimē), adv., swiftly, rapidly.

civ-is, -is, m., citizen.

civi-tās, -tātis, f., state.

clam, adv., secretly.

clām-or, ōris, m., shout, shouting.

clāss-is, -is, f., fleet.

cliēns, clientis, m., vassal, retainer.

coepī [72], began.

coerceō, ēre, uī, itum, restrain, check.

cōgitō, āre, āvī, ātum, consider.

cognāt-iō, -iōnis, f., relationship, connections.

cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, learn, find out.

cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum, collect; compel.

cohortor, ārī, ātus sum, encourage.

cohor-s, -tis, f., cohort, company (*one-tenth of a legion*).

coll-is, -is, m., hill.

collocō, āre, āvī, ātum, station, place.

colō, ere, coluī, cultum, till, cultivate.

col-or, -ōris, m., color.

commēātus, ūs, m., supplies (*generally used in the sing.*).

com-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, entrust; *with proelium*, join, begin.

Commius, ī, m., Commius (*a Gaul's name*).

commoror, ārī, ātus sum, wait, stay.

com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, disturb, alarm, agitate.

communiō, īre, īvī, ītum, fortify.

commūnis, e, common, general.
comparō, āre, āvi, ātum, make ready, procure, raise, collect.
compellō, ere, -puli, -pulsum, drive.
comperiō, Ire, -peri, -pertum, find out.
compleō, ēre, -plēvi, plētum, fill up, fill.
complūrēs, ia, *adj. plur.* [12], several, very many.
comportō, āre, āvi, ātum, bring in.
comprehendō, ere, -hendī, -hensum, seize.
cōnātum, I, n., attempt.
concedō, ere, cēssi, cēssum, grant.
concidō, ere, -cidi, -ctisum, cut down, kill.
conciliō, āre, āvi, ātum, win over, gain.
concilium, I, n., meeting, assembly, council.
concurrō, ere, -curri or -cucurri, -cursum, hurry, flock.
concursum, ūs, m., charge, attack.
condic-iō, -iōnis, f., terms, proposal.
condonō, āre, āvi, ātum, overlook.
conferō, conferre, contuli, collatum, collect; *with sē*, betake.
conficiō, ere, -feci, -fectum, accomplish, finish; exhaust.
confidō, ere, -fisu sum [63, b], trust, have confidence in (*with dat.*).
confirmō, āre, āvi, ātum, encourage, establish, arouse.
confugiō, ere, -fugi, flee, flee for refuge.
conjiciō, ere, -jeci, -jectum, hurl, cast; *with in fugam*, put.
conor, āri, ātus sum, try, attempt.
conscribō, ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, enlist.
consensus, ūs, m., consent.
consequor, I, -secutus sum, follow; overtake.
considō, ere, -sedi, -sessum, encamp.
consilium, I, n., plan, design; prudence.
constituto, ere, -stiti, halt, take up position.
conspicere, ūs, m., sight, view.
conspiciō, ere, -spexi, -spectum, see, catch sight of, behold.
conspicor, āri, ātus sum, see, observe.
constituo, ere, -ui, -utum, decide; determine, resolve; station.
consuetudo, -dinis, f., custom.
consumō, ere, -sumpsi, -sumptum, spend.
contemno, ere, -tempsi, -temptum, despise.
contendō, ere, -di, -tum, hasten; contend.
contestor, āri, ātus sum, invoke, call upon.

continēns, -entis, r., continent, mainland.
contineō, ere, -tinuei, -tentum, restrain, keep, hem in.
continuus, a, um, successive.
contrā, *prep. w. acc.*, opposite.
contrahō, ere, -traxi, -tractum, reduce, contract.
convenio, Ire, -veni, -ventum, come together, assemble.
convertō, ere, -ti, -sum, change.
Convictolitavis, -is, m., Convictolitavis (*a Gaul's name*).
convocō, āre, āvi, ātum, call together, summon.
co-orior, Irī, -ortus sum, arise.
cōpia, ae, f., *in sing.*, supply, abundance, plenty; *in plur.*, forces, troops.
cornū, ūs, n., wing (*of an army*).
corp-us, -oris, n., body.
Cotta, ae, m., Cotta (*a Roman's name*).
Cotus, I, m., Cotus (*a Gaul's name*).
creber, bra, brum, numerous, frequent.
cremō, āre, āvi, ātum, burn.
creō, āre, āvi, ātum, elect.
cruciatus, ūs, m., torture, cruelty.
cul-men, -minis, n., summit.
cultus, ūs, m., civilization.
1. cum, *prep. w. abl.*, with, together with.
2. cum, *conj.*, when, after; as, since.
cunctor, āri, ātus sum, hesitate.
cupidē, *adv.*, eagerly.
cūr, why.
currus, ūs, m., chariot.
cursus, ūs, m., course.

D

dē, *prep. w. abl.*, about, concerning, of; *with causa*, for.
decem [19], ten.
dēcernō, ere, -crevi, -cretum, decide.
decimus, a, um, tenth.
dēclivis, e, sloping.
dēcurrō, ere, -curri or -cucurri, -cursum, run down.
dedit-iō, -iōnis, f., surrender.
dēdō, ere, -didi, -ditum, surrender, give up.
dēducō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead off, withdraw.
dēfendō, ere, -fendi, -fensum, defend.
dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, report.
dēfetiscor, I, -fessus sum, become exhausted; *perf. part.*, exhausted.
dēficiō, ere, -feci, -fectum, fail, revolt.
deinde, *adv.*, then.
dēficiō, ere, -jeci, -jectum, carry down, drive ashore.
dēligō, ere, -lēgi, -lēctum, choose.
dēmonstrō, āre, -āvi, -atum, point out.
dēnsus, a, um, thick, dense.

- dē-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, lay aside.
- dē-sillō, Ire, -siluī, -sultum, leap down.
- dēspērō, āre, āvī, ātum, despair, give up hope.
- dēsurn, deesse, dēsūī, be lacking.
- dētr'mentōsus, a, um, hurtful.
- dēterreō, ēre, uī, itum, deter, prevent.
- dē-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, detain.
- deus, I, M. [9], God.
- dē-veniō, Ire, -vēnī, -ventum, come, come down.
- dexter, tra, trum, right.
- dī, from deus.
- dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum, say.
- diēs, ēī, M., day.
- differō, differre, distulī, dilātum, differ, be different.
- difficilis, e, difficult.
- difficul-tās, -tātis, F., difficulty.
- diligentia, ae, F., care, watchfulness.
- dīmīcō, āre, āvī, ātum, fight.
- dī-mittō, ere, -mīsi, -missum, send out; dismiss; let slip, lose.
- dis-cēdō, ere, -cēssi, -cēssum, depart, withdraw: *discēdere ab*=leave.
- discēssus, ūs, M., departure.
- discō, ere, didici, learn.
- dis-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, break, scatter.
- disper-gō, ere, -si -sum, scatter.
- dis-tineō, ēre, -tinaī, -tentum, keep apart, keep at a distance.
- dīu (dīūtius, dīūtissimē), adv., long, for a long time.
- dī-vidō, ere, -vīsi, -vīsum, separate, divide.
- dō, dare, dedi, datum, give, grant; *with in furam*, put.
- doc-eō, ēre, -ui, -tum, inform.
- dolus, I, M., deceit, craft, cunning.
- domī, adv., at home.
- domicilium, I, N., home.
- donō, āre, āvī, ātum, present.
- Druides, una, M. plur., the Druids (*the priests of the Gauls*).
- dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum, hesitate; have doubts.
- ducentī, ae, a [19], two hundred.
- ducō, ere, duxī, ductum, lead.
- dum, conj., while.
- Dumnorix, -igis, M., Dumnorix (*a Gaul's name*).
- duo, ae, o [19], two.
- duodecim [19], twelve.
- du-plex, -plicis, double.
- E
- Ē, see ex.
- ē-ducō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead out.
- ef-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, accomplish; produce.
- ego [18], I.
- ē-gredior, I, -gressus sum, go out; land, disembark.
- ēgregius, a, um, remarkable.
- ē-jeciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, fling out; *sē ejicere*=rush out.
- ēnūtiō, āre, āvī, ātum, disclose.
1. eō, Ire, II (Ivī), itum [45], go, march.
2. eō, adv., to that place, there.
- eques, equitis, M., horse soldier; *in plur.*, cavalry.
- equester, tris, tre, of cavalry, cavalry.
- equitātus, ūs, M., cavalry.
- equus, I, M., horse.
- ē-rumpō, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, make a sally.
- ērupt-iō, -iōnis, F., sally, sortie, et, and.
- etiam, adv., also, even.
- etsī, although.
- ē-veniō, Ire, -vēnī, -ventum, turn out, result.
- ēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum, challenge.
- ēvolō, āre, āvī, ātum, rush out.
- ex, prep. v. abl., from, out of; *with nume:als*, of, out of, from; *with pars*, on.
- excitō, āre, āvī, ātum, stimulate.
- exemplum, I, N., example.
- ex-eō, -Ire, -II (Ivī), -itum [45], go out; *ex* . . . *exeo*, leave.
- exercitāt-iō, -iōnis, F., practice.
- exercitus, ūs, M., army.
- exigui-tās, -tātis, F., shortness.
- existimō, āre, āvī, ātum, think.
- expeditus, a, um, easy.
- expellō, ere, -puli, -pulsum, drive out, banish.
- explōrā-tor, -tōris, M., scout.
- explōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, examine, reconnoitre.
- ex-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, display, array; disembark, land.
- expugnō, āre, āvī, ātum, take by storm.
- ex-sequor, I, -secutus sum, enforce.
- expectō, āre, āvī, ātum, await.
- ex-struō, ere, -struxī, -structum, raise, build.
- extrēmus, a, um, *superl. adj.* [13], farthest, last.
- ex-ūrō, ere, -ūssi, -ūstum, burn up.
- F
- faber, brī, M., workman.
- facile, adv., easily.
- faciēs, e, easy.
- faciō, ere, fēcī, factum, do, make; *proelium facio*, fight a battle.
- fact-iō, -iōnis, F., party.
- facul-tās, -tātis, F., opportunity.
- familia, ae, F., household, family.
- faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautum, favor (*with dat.*).
- fēliciter, adv., successfully, luckily.
- ferē, adv., almost, about.

ferō, ferre, tull, lātum [44], bear, carry; bring; endure.
fertilis, e, fertile.
fidēlis, e, faithful, loyal.
fidēs, eī, F., honor, word, fidelity.
figura, ae, F., shape.
filia, ae, F., daughter.
fillus, I, M., son.
fin-is, -is, M., end; *in plur.*, territory, territories, country, land.
finitimus, a, um, neighboring, adjacent.
fiō, fierī, factus sum [46], be made, be done; *in 3rd sing.*, happen, come about.
firmō, āre, āvi, ātum, strengthen.
firmus, a, um, powerful, strong.
fleō, ēre, flēvi, flētum, weep.
flōrens, entis, flourishing, influential.
fluctus, ūs, M., wave.
flū-men, -inis, N., river.
flūō, ere, flūxi, fluxum, flow.
fore, *the future infinitive of sum*.
fortis, e, brave.
fortiter, adv., bravely.
fortūna, ae, F., fortune, lot.
fossa, ae, F., trench, moat.
frā-ter, -tris, M., brother.
frīg-us, -oris, N., cold, frost.
frūmentārius, a, um, pertaining to grain, of grain; *rēs frūmentāria*, provisions.
frūmentor, āri, ātus sum, forage, get provisions.
frūmentum, I, N., grain, corn.
fuga, ae, F., flight.
fugio, ere, fugi, fugitum, flee.
fugō, āre, āvi, ātum, rout, put to flight.
funda, ae, F., sling.

G

Galba, ae, M., Galba (*a Roman's name*).
galea, ae, F., helmet.
Gallia, ae, F., Gaul.
Gallicus, a, um, of Gaul, of the Gauls.
Gallus, I, M., a Gaul.
gener, eri, M., son-in-law.
gen-us, -cris, N., race; kind, style.
Germanus, I, M., a German.
gerō, ere, gessi, gestum, carry on, do; *with bellum*, wage; *with magistrātus*, hold.
gladius, I, M., sword.
grātus, a, um, pleasing, acceptable.
gravis, e, heavy; hard, bitter.
gubernā-tor, -tōris, M., pilot.

H

Helvētī, ōrum, M. plur., the Helvetians (*a tribe in Gaul*).
Helvētius, a, um, Helvetian, of the Helvetians.
habēō, ēre, uī, itum, have; hold, regard; *with orātio*, deliver.
hiberna ōrum, N., plur., winter quarters, winter camp.

Hibernia, ae, F., Ireland.
hic, haec, hoc [23], this, the following.
hiemō, āre, āvi, ātum, pass the winter, winter.
hiems, hiemis, F., winter.
hom-ō, -inis, M., man; *in plur.*, people.
hōra, ae, F., hour.
horridus, a, um, terrible.
host-is, -is, M. (*generally in the plur.*), enemy.
hūmāni-tās, -tātis, F., refinement.
hūmānus, a, um, refined, civilized.
humilis, e, low, lowly.

I

ibi, adv., there.
Idem, eadem, idem [23], the same.
idōneus, a, um, suitable.
Ign-is, -is, M., fire.
Ignōscō, ere, Ignōvi, Ignōtum, forgive, pardon, (*with dat.*).
ille, illa, illud [23], that; he, she, it, they.
illustris, e, distinguished.
immortālis, e, immortal.
impedimentum, I, N., hindrance, obstacle; *in plur.*, baggage, baggage-train.
impediō, Ire, Ivi, Itum, obstruct, hinder, hamper.
im-pellō, ere, -pull, -pulsum, incite, instigate.
imperium, I, N., command, order; rule, supremacy.
impero, āre, āvi, ātum, give orders, order, command (*with dat.*); require, demand.
impetrō, āre, āvi, ātum, obtain one's request.
impetus, ūs, M., attack; fury.
implōrō, āre, āvi, ātum, entreat.
imprōvisus, a, um, unforeseen; *dē imprōvisō*, unexpectedly.
1. in, prep. w. acc., into, to; at, on.
2. in, prep. w. abl., in; on.
in-cendō, ere, -cendi, -cēsum, burn, set on fire.
incitō, āre, āvi, ātum, arouse, stir up.
incōgnitus, a, um, unknown.
in-colō, ere, colui, dwell, inhabit.
incolumis, e, safe, in safety.
incur-sio, -sionis, F., raid, inroad.
incrēdibilis, e, incredible.
indul-geō, ēre, -si, -tum, favor (*with dat.*).
ind-uō, ere, -ui, -itum, put on.
Infer-ior, -ius, compar. adj., lower.
Inferō, Inferre intuli, illatum (*with bellum*), make; (*with injuriam*), cause, do.
In-ficiō, ere, feci, fectum, stain.
In-finitus, a, um, boundless, vast.
In-fluō, ere, -fluxi, -fluxum, flow [into].
in-gēns, -gentis, adj., huge.
inimicus, a, um, unfriendly, hostile.
initium, I, N., beginning; edge.

injūria, **ae**, **F.**, wrong-doing, injury, wrong.
inopia, **ae**, **F.**, want, scarcity, dearth, lack.
In-sequor, **I**, -**secūtus sum**, pursue.
insidiæ, **ārum**, **F. plur.**, ambush.
Instit-uō, **ere**, -**ui**, -**ūtum**, train; levy.
In-stō, **āre**, **stitī**, -**stātum**, press forward.
In-struō, **ere**, -**strūxi**, -**strūctum**, draw up.
Insula, **ae**, **F.**, island.
integer, **gra**, **grum**, fresh.
intel-lego, **ere**, -**lēxi**, -**lēctum**, understand, be aware.
inter, **prep. v. acc.**, among; between.
inter-clūdō, **ere**, -**clūsi**, -**clūsum**, cut off.
inter-ficiō, **ere**, -**fēcī**, -**fectum**, kill, put to death.
interim, **adv.**, meanwhile.
inter-ior, -**ius**, **compar. adj.**, interior; *interiōrēs*, those living in the interior.
inter-mittō, **ere**, -**misi**, -**missum**, interrupt, stop.
inter-pres, -**pretis**, **M.**, interpreter.
intrā, **prep. v. acc.**, within.
intrō-ducō, **ere**, -**duxī**, -**ductum**, lead [in].

inūtilis, **e**, useless.
in-veniō, **ire**, -**vēni**, -**ventum**, find.
ipse, **ipsa**, **ipsum** [23], -self; he himself.
is, **ea**, **id** [22], that; he, she, it, they.
itā, **adv.**, so, in such a way.
Itālia, **ae**, **F.**, Italy.
itaque, **adv.**, accordingly.
item, **adv.**, also.
iter, **itineris**, **n.**, march, road, route, journey.

J

jacīō, **ere**, **jēcī**, **jactum**, cast.
jam, **adv.**, now, by this time.
jubeō, **ēre**, **jūssi**, **jūssum**, order.
jūdicō, **āre**, **avi**, **ātum**, decide, judge, consider.
jūmentum, **I**, **n.**, beast of burden.
jūs, **jūris**, **n.**, right.
juvō, **āre**, **jūvi**, **jūtum**, aid, assist.

L

Labiēnus, **I**, **m.**, Labienus (*a Roman's name*).
lab-or, -**ōris**, **m**, toil.
labōrō, **āre**, **avi**, **ātum**, be in difficulty, be hard pressed.
lac, **lactis**, **n.**, milk.
laccess-ō, **ere**, -**ivi**, -**itum**, harass, attack.
lacrima, **ae**, **F.**, tear.
lacus, **ūs**, **m.**, lake.
lātītū-dō, -**dinis**, **F.**, width, extent.
 1. **lat-us**, -**cris**, **n.**, side, flank.
 2. **lātus**, **a**, **um**, broad, wide. **lātē**, **adv.**, widely.

lēgāt-iō, -**iōnis**, **F.**, embassy.
lēgātus, **I**, **m.**, ambassador; lieutenant, staff-officer.
leg-iō, -**iōnis**, **F.**, legion.
Lemannus, **I**, **m.**, Lemannus (*a lake now called Geneva*).
lēnis, **e**, gentle, light.
lēni-tās, -**tātis**, **F.**, sluggishness, gentleness.
levis, **e**, slight, trifling.
lēx, **lēgis**, **F.**, law.
 1. **liber**, **era**, **erum**, free.
 2. **liberī**, **ōrum**, **m. plur.**, children.
Litavicus, **I**, **m.**, Litavicus (*a Gaul's name*).
litterae, **ārum**, **F. plur.**, letter, despatch.
lit-us, -**oris**, **n.**, shore.
locus, **I**, **m.** (**plur. loca**, **ōrum**, **n.**), place, position, ground.
longē (**longius**, **longissimē**), far.
longus, **a**, **um**, long.
loquor, **I**, **locūtus sum**, speak, say.
lūna, **ae**, **F.**, moon.
Lutētia, **ae**, **F.**, Lutetia (*a town in Gaul*).
lūx, **lūcis**, **F.**, light; *prīma lūx*, dawn, daybreak.

M

magis, **compar. adv.**, more, rather.
magistrātus, **ūs**, **m.**, magistrate, office.
māgnitū-dō, -**dinis**, **F.**, size, extent.
māgnus, **a**, **um**, great, large.
māj-or, -**us**, **compar. adj.**, greater, larger.
malefīcium, **I**, **n.**, mischief, outrage.
mālō, **mālle** **mālui** [43], prefer, had rather, be more willing.
maneō, **ēre**, **mānsī**, **mānsūm**, remain, continue.
manus, **ūs**, **F.**, hand; *manū* (*with mūnītus*), by art.
Mārcus, **I**, **m.**, Marcus (*a Roman name*).
mare, **maris**, **n.**, sea.
maritimus, **a**, **um**, maritime, of or on the sea.
māteria, **ae**, **F.**, timber, materials.
mātūrus, **a**, **um**, ripe; early; **adv.**, **mātūrē** (*superl. mātūrrimē*), soon.
māximē, **superl. adv.**, very greatly, very much; most.
medius, **a**, **um**, middle, midst.
memoria, **ae**, **F.**, memory.
mēns-is, -**is**, **m.**, month.
mercā-tor, -**tōris**, **m.**, trader.
merīdiēs, **ēl**, **m.**, noon.
meus, **a**, **um** [21], my, mine.
mil-es, -**itis**, **m.**, soldier.
militaris, **e**, military.
mille [16], thousand.
minimē, **superl. adv.**, least; by no means.
min-or, -**us**, **comp. adv.**, smaller, less.
miror, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, wonder.
mirus, **a**, **um**, wonderful.

miser, era, erum, wretched, unhappy, pitiable.

mittō, ere, mīsi, missum, send.

mōbilis, e, fickle, capricious.

moderor, ārī, ātus sumi, check, control.

moneō, ēre, uī, itum, warn, advise.

mōns, montis, m., mountain.

mora, ae, f., delay.

Morini, ōrum, m. plur., the Morini (a tribe in Gaul).

1. **morior, ī, mortuus sum**, die.

2. **moror, ārī, ātus sum**, delay, linger.

mors, mortis, f., death.

mōs, mōris, m., custom.

mōtus, ūs, m., movement, motion, uprising.

moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move; with *castra*, move, break up.

multitū-dō, -dinis, f., multitude, great number.

multum, adv., much.

multus, a, um, much; in *plur.*, many.

muniō, ire, ivī, itum, fortify, protect.

mūnit-iō, -iōnis, f., fortification.

mūrus, ī, m., wall.

N

1. **nanciscor, ī, nactus** (or *nactus*) *sum*, find, get.

2. **nascor, ī, natus sum**, be born.

nāt-iō, -iōnis, f., nation, race.

nātūra, ae, f., nature; character.

nauta, ae, m., sailor.

nauticus, a, um, naval, pertaining to the sea; *rēs nauticae*, seamanship.

nāvīgō, āre, āvī, ātum, sail.

nāv-is, -is, f., ship.

nē, lest, that not (*p. 98*); **nē . . . quidem**, not even.

nec, see neque.

necessārius, a, um, critical.

necō, āre, āvī, ātum, kill.

neg-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, neglect, disregard.

negō, āre, āvī, ātum, deny, say . . . not, refuse.

nēmō [54, *a*], no one.

nēquāquam, adv., by no means.

neque (nec), and . . . not, nor; *repeated*, neither . . . nor.

Nerviī, ōrum, m. plur., the Nerviī (a tribe in Gaul).

neuter, tra, trum [14], neither.

nihil, n., *indeclinable*, nothing; *also adv.*, not at all

nisi, unless, except.

nōbilis, e, well-born, noble.

noceō, ēre, uī, injure, harm (*with dat.*).

nōlō, nōlle, nōlūī [43], be unwilling, not to wish.

nōn, adv., not.

nōndum, not yet.

nōnnullī, ae a, adj. plur., some, some few.

nōnus, a, um, ninth.

nōs, plur. of ego [48], we.

noster, tra, trum, our; **nostrī**, our men.

novem, nine.

novus, a, um, new.

nox, noctis, f., night.

nudus, a, um, unprotected, bare.

nullus, a, um, no, none; *also, in gen. dat. and abl.*, no one.

numerus, ī, m., number.

nunquam, adv., never.

nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, announce.

nūntius, ī, m., messenger; message, news.

O

ob, prep. w. acc., on account of, for.

obsecrō, āre, āvī, ātum, beseech, implore.

ob-ses, -sidis, m., hostage.

ob-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, blockade, beset.

obtemperō, āre, āvī, ātum, obey, submit to (*with dat.*).

ob-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, occupy, hold, possess.

occās-iō, -iōnis, f., opportunity.

occāsus, ūs, m., setting; *sōlis occāsus*, sunset.

1. **oc-cidō, ere, -cidī, -cāsum**, fall, be slain.

2. **oc-cidō, ere, -cidī, -cīsum**, kill, slay.

occultō, āre, āvī, ātum, conceal.

occupō, āre, āvī, ātum, seize.

oc-currō, ere, -currī, -cursum, meet; oppose, check; (*with dat.*).

Ocelum, ī, n., Ocelum (a town in *Italia* near the Alps).

octo [16], eight.

octōdecim [16], eighteen.

octōgintā [16], eighty.

oculus, ī, m., eye.

officiū, ī, n., duty, allegiance.

omnis, e, all; *sometimes in sing.*, every.

onus, -eris, n., burden, weight.

oppidum, ī, n., town.

opportūnus, a, um, opportune, fortunate.

op-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum, overwhelm; bear down.

oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātum, attack.

optimus, a, um, super. adj., best.

opus, -eris, n., work; fortification.

ōra, ae, f., shore, coast; *ōra maritima*, the sea coast.

ōrāt-iō, -iōnis, f., speech, address.

ōr-dō, -dinis, m., rank.

osten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum, show, point out; disclose, unmask.

P

pāgus, ī, m., district, canton, clan.

pul-us, -udis, f., marsh.

pār, paris, adj., equal, a match for.

- pāreō, ēre, uī, itum**, be obedient, obey (*with dat.*).
- parō, āre, āvī, ātum**, prepare, procure; *perf. part. pass.*, **parātus, a, um**, ready.
- pars, partis, f.**, part.
- passus, ūs, m.**, pace (*about five feet*; 1000 paces = one Roman mile).
- pate-faciō, ere, -fēcl, -factum**; *passive*, **pate-flō, -fierī, -factus sum** [46], open up, keep open.
- pateō, ēre, uī, extend.**
- pa-ter, -tris, m.**, father.
- patior, I, passus sum**, suffer, allow; endure.
- pauci, ae, a, plur. adj.**, few.
- paulum, adv.**, a little.
- pāx, pācis, f.**, peace.
- pecūnia, ae, f.**, money, sum of money.
- ped-es, -itis, m.**, foot soldier; (*in plur.*) infantry.
- pedester, tris, tre, adj.**, of infantry; *cōpia pedestrēs*, infantry.
- peditātus, ūs, m.**, infantry.
- pell-is, is, f.**, skin.
- pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsum**, defeat, rout, drive back.
- per, prep. v. acc.**, through by means of.
- per-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum**, carry, carry along, bring; lead safely.
- perfacilis, e**, very easy.
- per-ferō, -ferre, -tullī, -lātum, en-dere**, submit to; bring, report.
- per-ficiō, ere, -fēcl, -fectum**, finish; carry out.
- periculōsus, a, um**, dangerous.
- periculum, I, n.**, danger.
- per-maneō, ēre, -mānsī, -mān-sum**, remain, persist, continue.
- per-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum**, alarm, dismay.
- permultī, ae, a, plur. adj.**, very many.
- per-rumpō, ere, -rūpl, -ruptum**, break through, force a passage.
- per-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum**, see, find out.
- per-suādeō, ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūm**, persuade (*with dat.*).
- per-terreō, ēre, uī, itum**, terrify; *in the passive*, be panic-stricken.
- pertineō, ēre, uī, extend.**
- perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum**, throw into confusion, disturb.
- pervagor, ārī, ātus sum**, roam, range, scour the country.
- per-veniō, ire, -vēnī, -ventum**, come; *pervenire with ad and acc.* = reach.
- pēs, pedis, m.**, foot; *pedem referre* (to bear back the foot), retreat, fall back.
- pet-ō, ere, -ivī, -itum**, ask, seek, beg.
- phal-anx, -angis, f.**, phalanx, solid column.
- pīlum, I, n.**, javelin.
- plēnus, a, um**, full.
- plūrimus, a, um, superl. adj.**, very many, most; **plūrimum, adv.**, most, very much.
- plūs, plūris** [12], more.
- polliceor, ērī, itus sum**, promise.
- pōnō, ere, posuī, positum**, place; (*of camp*), pitch; lay down; *in passive*, be situated.
- pōns, pontis, m.**, bridge.
- populor, ārī, ātus sum**, devastate.
- populus, I, m.**, nation, people.
- porta, ae, f.**, gate.
- portō, āre, āvī, ātum**, carry.
- portus, ūs, m.**, harbor.
- poscō, ere, poposcl, demand.**
- possum, posse, potuī** [42], *with infinitive*, be able, can; *with adverb*, be powerful.
- post, prep. v. acc.**, after.
- postea, adv.**, afterwards.
- posterus, a, um**, next, following.
- postquam, conj.**, after.
- postulō, āre, āvī, ātum**, demand, require.
- pot-ēns, -entis**, powerful.
- potentia, ae, f.**, power, influence.
- potes-tās, -tātis, f.**, power.
- prae-ceps, -cipitis**, steep.
- praecipuē, adv.**, especially, particularly.
- praeda, ae, f.**, plunder.
- praedicō, āre, āvī, ātum**, proclaim, state.
- praedor, ārī, ātus sum**, plunder, raid.
- prae-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum**, send in advance.
- praemium, I, n.**, reward.
- praesidium, I, n.**, garrison; protection.
- prae-sto, āre, -stitī, be superior**, surpass, excel (*with dat.*); *in third sing*, it is better, preferable.
- prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, be in command of** (*with dat.*).
- pressō, ere, pressī, pressum**, press hard; *passive*, to be hard pressed.
- prīdiē, adv.**, the day before.
- prīmus, a, um**, first; **prīmum, adv.**, first; *quam prīmum*, as soon as possible.
- prīn-ceps, -cipis, m**, leading man, chief man.
- prīncipātus, ūs, m.**, leadership, foremost place.
- prīstinus, a, um**, former, old-time.
- privātus, a, um**, private.
- prō, prep. v. abl.**, in place of; before.
- probō, āre, āvī, ātum**, favor; recognize.
- prō-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, cēssum**, advance.
- prō-dō, ere, -didī, ditum**, betray.
- prō-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, ductum**, lead forth.
- proelium, I, n.**, battle.
- pro-ficiscor, I, -fectus sum**, set out.
- pro-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, -fugitum**, flee.
- prō-gredior, I, -gressus sum**, advance, proceed.

prohibeō, ēre, ul, itum, restrain, keep.

prō-jiciō, ere, -jēcl, -jectum, throw.

prope, adv., near, nearly.

prō-pellō, ere, -pull, -pulsum, drive off, dislodge.

propereō, āre, āvl, ātum, hasten.

propinquus, a, um, near, close.

prō-pōnō, ere, -posul, -positum, display.

propter, prep. w. acc., on account of.

propterea, adv., on this account, for this reason; (with quod, generally not translated).

prō-vidēō, ēre, -vidl, -visum, arrange for, procure.

prōvincia, ae, f., province (in Cæsar this means the southern part of Gaul).

prōvocō, āre, āvl, ātum, call out, challenge.

proximus, a, um, superl. adj., nearest, next.

pu-dor, -ōris, m., sense of shame.

puer, erl, m., boy.

pūgna, ae, f., battle, fighting.

pūgnō, āre, āvl, ātum, fight.

Q

quā, adv., where.

quadrāgintā [16], forty.

quaerō, ere, -quæslvl, -quæsl-tum, ask; seek, look for.

quam, adv., with comparatives, than; with superlatives, as — as possible.

quantus, a, um, how great, how much.

quartus, a, um, fourth.

quattuor [16], four.

quattuordecim [16], fourteen.

-que, conj., and (to be translated before the word to which it is added).

queror, I, questus sum, complain.

quī, quæ, quod, rel. pron. [24], who, which, what, that.

quid, neut. of quis, used as adverb, why.

quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam [26], a certain.

quidem, adv., after nē, even.

quīndecim [16], fifteen

quīngentl, ae, a, five hundred.

quīnque [16], five.

1. quis, quæ, quid, interrog. pron. [25], who, which, what.

2. quis (quī), qua, quid (quod), indef. pron. [26], any, anyone, anything.

quīquam, quæquam, quicquam or quodquam [26], any, anyone, anything.

quīsq̄ue, quæque, quīque or quodque [26], each.

quod, conj., because.

R

rāmus, I, m., branch.

rat-iō, -iōnis, f., consideration, reason; calculation, strategy; manner.

rat-is, -is, f., raft.

rebell-iō, -iōnis, f., renewal of war; rebell-iōnem facere, to renew the war.

rec-ens, -entis, recent; unexhausted.

receptus, ūs, m., retreat, means of retreat.

reciperō, āre, āvl, ātum, recover.

re-cipiō, ere, -cēpl, ceptum, receive; with sē, betake, recover.

recūsō, āre, āvl, ātum, reject.

red-dō, ere, -didl, -ditum, give back, restore, return.

red-igō, ere, -ēgl, -āctum, reduce, bring.

redit-iō, -iōnis, f., return.

re-dūcō, ere, -dūxl, -ductum, lead back.

re-ferō, -ferre, -tull, -lātum, bring back; report; carry back; pedem referre, retreat, fall back.

re-ficiō, ere, -fēcl, -fectum, repair; recruit, rest.

reg-iō, -iōnis, f., region, district.

rēgnum, I, n., royal power, kingdom.

re-jiciō, ere, -jēcl, -jectum, drive back.

re-linquō, ere, -līql, -lictum, leave, leave behind; abandon.

reliquus, a, um, adj., remaining, rest of (footnote 2, page 17).

re-maneō, ēre, -mānsl, -mānsum, remain.

rēm-ex, -igis, m., rower.

re-mittō, ere, -mīsl, -missum, send back.

1. Rēmī, ōrum, m. plur., the Remi (a tribe in Gaul).

2. rēnus, I, m., oar.

re-moveō, ēre, -mōvl, -mōtum, remove, withdraw.

renovō, āre, āvl, ātum, renew.

renūtiō, āre, āvl, ātum, bring back word; in third sing. passive, word is brought back.

repellō, ere, reppull repulsum, drive back, defeat.

repenthus, a, um, sudden.

reperiō, Ire, repperl, reptum, find.

repet-ō, ere, -ivl, -itum, demand back.

rēs, rel, f., thing, matter, affair; interests.

re-scindō, ere, -scidl, -scissum, break down, destroy.

re-sistō, ere, -stitl, resist (with dat.).

re-spondeō, ēre, -spondl, -spōnsum, reply, answer.

rēspūblica, relpūblicæ, f. [9], the state; public interests.

re-tineō, ēre, -tinul, -tentum, preserve, maintain; detain.

retull, from referō.

1. re-vertō, ere, -vertl, -versum (generally in perfect, pluperf. and fut. perf. tenses), return.

2. **re-vertor, I, -versus sum** (*generally in pres., impf. and fut. tenses*), return.

revocō, āre, āvī, ātum, recall.

rēx, rēgis, M., king, chieftain.

Rhēnus, I, M., the Rhine.

Rhodanus, I, M., the Rhone.

ripa, ae, F., bank.

rogō, āre, āvī, ātum, ask.

Rōmānus, I, M., a Roman.

Rōmānus, a, um, Roman.

S

Sabinus, I, M., Sabinus (*a Roman's name*).

sagitta, ae, F., arrow.

sal-ūs, -ūtis, F., safety.

satis-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, apologize; make amends.

saxum, I, N., stone.

scāla, ae, F., ladder.

scapha, ae, F., boat, yawl.

scientia, ae, F., knowledge.

scindō, ere, scidī, scissum, tear down.

sciō, Ire, Ivī, Itum, know,

sē, from sul.

sēd, conj., but.

sēdecim [16], sixteen.

senātus, ūs, M., senate.

sententia, ae, F., opinion.

septimus, a, um, seventh.

septuāgintā [16], seventy.

Sequanī, ōrum, m. plur., the Sequani (*a tribe in Gaul*).

sequor, I, secūtus sum, follow.

serō, ere, sevī, satum, sow.

serviō, Ire, Ivī, Itum, be a slave, be subject.

servi-tūs, -tūtis, F., bondage, slavery, subjection.

servō, āre, āvī, ātum, keep.

servus, I, M., slave.

sescentī, ae, a, six hundred.

sēsē, from sul.

sex [16], six.

sexāgintā [16], sixty.

si, conj., if.

sibi, from sul.

si, so.

significāt-iō, -iōnis, F., intimation, announcement, signal.

signum, I, N., standard; signal.

silva, ae, F., wood, forest.

silvestris, e, wooded.

similis, e, like, similar.

simul, adv., at the same time; **simul atque**, as soon as.

sine, prep. w. abl., without.

socer, eri, M., father-in-law.

socius, I, M., ally.

sōl, sōlis, M., sun.

soleō, ēre, solitus sum [68, b], be accustomed.

sollicitō, āre, āvī, ātum, try to influence, tempt, bribe, try to win over.

sōlus, a, um [14], alone; **sōlum, adv.**, only.

sol-vō, ere, -vī, -ūtum, loose; set sail (*with or without nāvēs as object*).

spatium, I, N., space, distance.

spērō, āre, āvī, ātum, hope.

spēs, speī, F., hope.

statim, adv., at once.

stat-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, decide.

statūra, ae, F., stature.

studeō, ere, uī, pay attention.

studium, I, N., zeal, eagerness.

1. **sub, prep. w. abl.**, under; *with monte*, at the foot of.

2. **sub, prep. w. acc.**, close to, close up to. **sub-eō, -Ire, -īl, -itum** [45], undergo, encounter.

subitō, adv., suddenly.

sub-jiciō, ere, -uī, -jectum, place close to; *in passive*, lie close by.

sublātus, from tollō.

sub-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, send to aid (*w. acc. and dat.*).

sub-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, drive off, dislodge.

subsidiū, I, N., assistance, reserves, reinforcements.

sub-veniō, Ire, -vēnī, -ventum, come to aid, aid (*with dat.*).

suc-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, approach, advance.

suc-currō, ere, -currī, -cursum, run to aid, run to the rescue of (*with dat.*).

sul, sibi, sē, sēsē [20], of himself, themselves; him, them.

sum, esse, fui [41], be.

1. **summa, ae, F.**, total.

2. **summus, a, um, superl. adj.**, greatest, very great.

super-ior, -ius, compar. adj., higher; former, previous, preceding.

superō, āre, āvī, ātum, conquer, prevail.

super-sum, -esse, -fui [41], survive.

suprā, adv. and prep. w. acc., above.

sus-cipiō, ere, -cepī, -ceptum, undertake.

sus-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum, withstand, endure.

suus, a, um, his, his own; their, their own.

T

tam, adv., so.

tamen, adv., yet.

tandem, adv., at last, at length.

tantulus, a, um, so small.

tantus, a, um, so great, such; **tantum, adv.**, so much, so far.

tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctum, cover, conceal.

tēlum, I, N., weapon.

temperō, āre, āvī, ātum, refrain; *perf. part. passive as adj.*, temperā-

tus, a, um, mild.

tempe-tās, -tātis, F., storm, weather.

temptō, āre, āvi, ātum, try, tempt.
 temp-us, -oris, N., time.
 ten-eō, ēre, -ui, -tum, hold; possess.
 tergum, I, N., back; *terga vertere* (turn the backs), flee.
 tertius, a, um, third.
 timeō, ēre, ui, fear, be afraid.
 tim-or, -ōris, M., fear.
 tollō, ere, sustull, sublātum, take away.
 tōtus, a, um [14], whole.
 trā-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, give up, surrender.
 trā-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead across.
 trāns, *prep. w. acc.*, across, beyond.
 trāns-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead across.
 trāns-eō, -ire, -ii (-ivi), -itum, cross.
 trānsitus, ūs, M., passage, crossing.
 transportō, āre, āvi, ātum, carry over, bring over.
 trecentī, ae, a, three hundred.
 trēs, tria [16], three.
 tribūnus, I, M., tribune (*a military officer among the Romans*).
 trīgintā [16], thirty.
 triquetrus, a, um, triangular.
 tū [19], you.
 tuba, ae, F., trumpet.
 turma, ae, F., squadron.
 turpis, e, disgraceful.
 turr-is, -is, F., tower.
 tuus, a, um, your.

U

ubi, *adv.*, when; where.
 Ubii, ōrum, M. plur., the Ubii (*a German tribe*).
 ulciscor, I, ultus sum, punish.
 ūllus, a, um [14], any.
 ūlter-ior, -ius, *compar. adj.*, further; *ūlteriōres*, those more remote.
 unde, *adv.*, whence, from which.
 undique, *adv.*, from all sides, on every side.
 ūnus, a, um [14], one; alone.
 urbs, urbis, F., city.
 urgeō, ēre, ursi, press hard; *passive*, to be hard pressed.
 ūsus, ūs, M., experience; advantage, use.
 ut, *conj.*, with *indic.*, as; with *subj.*, that, so that, in order that.
 uter, tra, trum [14], which (*of two*).
 uterque, utraque, utrumque [26], each (*of two*), both.
 ūtilis, e, useful.

V

vacō, āre, āvi, ātum, be unoccupied, lie waste.
 vacuus, a, um, empty.
 vadum, I, N., ford.
 valeō, ēre, ui, itum, be influential, be strong, be powerful.
 1. vall-ēs, -is, F., valley.
 2. vallum, I, N., wall, rampart.
 vastō, āre, āvi, ātum, lay waste.
 vel, *conj.*, or; *repeated*, either . . . or.
 vĕl-ōx, -ōcis, swift, active.
 Venetī, ōrum, M. plur., the Venetī (*a tribe in Gaul*).
 venia, ae, F., pardon.
 veniō, ire, vēni, ventum, come.
 ventitō, āre, āvi, ātum, come often.
 ventus, I, M., wind.
 Vercingetor-ix, -igis, M., Vercingetorix (*a Gallic noble*).
 vereor, ēri, veritus sum, fear.
 vērō, *adv.*, in fact; but, moreover.
 ver-tō, ere, -ti, -sum, turn.
 vester, tra, trum, your.
 vestiō, ire, Ivi, itum, clothe.
 vet-ō, āre, -ui, -itum, forbid, order . . . not.
 vetus, veteris, old.
 vexillum, I, N., banner (*a red banner was the signal for battle*).
 via, ae, F., road, way.
 victōria, ae, F., victory.
 vĕtus, ūs, M., life, living.
 vĕlus, I, M., village.
 videō, ēre, vidi, vĭsum, see, perceive; *in passive*, be seen; seem.
 vigilia, ae, F., watch.
 viginti [16], twenty.
 1. vinciō, ire, vixi, victum, bind.
 2. vincō, ere, vici, victum, conquer.
 vir, viri, M., man.
 vir-tūs, -tūtis, F., valor, bravery.
 vĭs, vim, vĭ, plur. vĭrēs [9], force, violence; plur., powers, strength.
 vitrum, I, N., woad (*a plant*).
 vivō, ere, vixi, victum, live.
 vix, *adv.*, scarcely.
 vocō, āre, āvi, ātum, call, summon.
 volō, velle, volui [43], wish, be willing.
 voluptās, -tātis, F., pleasure.
 Volusēnus, I, M., Volusenus (*a Roman's name*).
 Vorenus, I, M., Vorenius (*a Roman's name*).
 vōs [19], you.
 vulnerō, āre, āvi, ātum, wound.
 vuln-us, -eris, N., wound.

II. ENGLISH-LATIN.

N.B.—Words in parentheses should not be used in the translation of exercises in Part I.

A

- abandon**, *prō-dō*, ere, -didi, -ditum.
ability, *ingenium*, I, N.
able, be—, *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*. (III. 42).
abound in, *abundō*, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. abl.*
 1. **about** (=concerning), *dē*, *prep. w. abl.*
 2. **about**, with numerals, *circiter*, *adv.*
 3. **about, to be—to**, use the *fut. part. active with sum*.
absent, *absēns*, *absentis*.
accept, *ac-cipio*, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
acclivity, *acclivī-tās*, -tātis, F.
accomplish, *prō-ficiō*, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
accomplishments, *hūmani-tās*, -tātis, F. (*in the sing.*).
accordance, in—with, *prō*, *prep. w. abl.*
according to, in I., Ex. 58, use *abl. of manner*.
account, on—of, *propter*, *prep. w. acc.*
 1. **accustomed, be—**, *cōnsuēvī*, *isse* (*perfect tenses of cōnsuēscō*).
 2. **accustomed, become—**, *cōn-suēs-cō*, ere, -suēvī.
acquainted, become—with, *cō-gnōscō*, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, *w. acc.*
acquit, *ab-solvō*, ere, -solvī, -solutum.
 1. **across**, *trāns*, *prep. w. acc.*
 2. **across, lead—**, *trāns-ducō*, ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
action, course of—, *rēs*, *rei*, F.
actual, use *rē vērā*, =*in fact*.
added, to be—, *third sing. active of ac-cēdo*, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum.
adjacent, *finitimus*, a, um.
Aduatuci, *Aduatuci*, ōrum, M.
 1. **advance**, *prō-cēdō*, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum; *prō-gredior*, I, -gressus sum; [*signa ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*].
 2. **advance**, *noun*, *adventus*, ūs, M.
 3. **advance, send in—**, *prae-mittō*, ere, -mīsī, -missum.
 4. **advance guard**, *primum agmen* (*agminis*, N.).
 1. **advantage**, *ūsus*, ūs, M.
 2. **advantage, take—of**, *ūtor*, I, *ūsus sum*, *w. abl.*
 3. **advantage, to any—**, *satis com-modē*, *adv.*
advice, ask—of, *cōsul-ō*, ere, -uī, -tum, *w. acc.*
Aedui, *Aedui*, ōrum, M.
affair, *rēs*, *rei*, F.
 1. **after**, *prep.*, *post*, *w. acc.*
 2. **after**, *conj.*, *postquam*, *cum*; or use *perfect participle in nom. or abl. absol.*
afterwards, *postea*.
again, *rūsus*.
against, *in*, *prep. w. acc.*; with *contendō*, *ad*, *w. acc.*; with *bellum gerō*, *cum*, *w. abl.*
agency, through the—of, *per*, *prep. w. acc.*
agree, *cōn-sentiō*, ĩre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum.
 1. **aid**, *verb*, *juvō*, āre, *juvī*, *jūtum*, *w. acc.*; [*suc-currō*, *ere*, -*currī*, -*cursum*, *w. dat.*].
 2. **aid**, *noun.*, *auxilium*, I, N.; [*subsidiūm*, I, N.].
 3. **aid, come to—of**, *auxiliō venīre*, *w. dat.*
 4. **aid, go to—of**, *auxiliō eō*, ĩre, ĩf (*ivī*), *itum*, *w. dat.*
 5. **aid, send to—of**, *auxiliō mittō*, *ere*, *mīsī*, *missum*, *w. dat. and acc.*
alarm, *per-moveō*, ĩre, -mōvī, -mōtum; *com-moveō*, ĩre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
alertness, *diligentia*, ae, F.
Alesia, *Alesia*, ae, F.
all, *omnis*, e.
allegiance, *officium*, I, N.
Allobroges, *Allobroges*, um, M.
 1. **allow**, *patior*, I, *passus sum*.
 2. **allowed, be—**, *licet*, *licēre*, *licuit*, *impersonal w. dat.*
ally, *socius*, I, M.
almost, *paene*.
alone, *sōlus*, a, um; *ūnus*, a, um. (III. 14.)
already, *jam*, *adv.*
although, *etsī*; [*quamquam*, *quamvis*].
always, *semper*.
amazed, be—at, *admiror*, āri, ātus sum, *deponent, w. acc.*
ambassador, *lēgātus*, I, M.
ambush, *insidiae*, ārum, F., *in plural only*.
among, *inter*, *prep. w. acc.*

amongst, in *II.*, *Ex. 13*, use the dative.

ancestors, *mājōrēs*, um, m.

1. anchor, weigh—, = *set sail*.

2. anchor, at—, in *ancorīs*.

and, et, -que, atque, &c.

angry, be—with, *irāscor*, I, *Irātus sum*, *v. dat.*

announce, *nūntiō*, āre, āvī, ātum.

1. another, alius, a, ud. (*III. 14*).

2. another, one—, inter *sē*.

1. answer, verb, *respondeō*, ēre, -spondi, -spōnsum.

2. answer, noun, *responsum*, I, n.

3. answer, give (or make)—, = *answer*, verb.

1. any, ūllus, a, um (*III. 14*); [*after sī*, quī (quis), qua, quod]; = *any amount of*, quivīs, quaevis, quidvis or quodvis.

2. any one, quisquam; *with a negative use nēmō* = *no one*; [*after sī*, quis]. (*III. 26*).

3. anything, ūlla rēs, quidquam; [*after sī*, quid].

anxiety, without—, *aequō animō*.

apart, keep—, *dis-tineō*, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.

apologize, *satis-faciō*, ere, -fēcī, -factum.

appearance, *figūra*, ae, f.; [*speciēs*, ēī, f.; *aspectus*, ūs, m.]

apprised, become—of, *cō-gnōscō*, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, *v. acc.*

1. approach, verb, *ac-cēdō*, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum; [*appropinquō*, āre, āvī, ātum, *v. dat.*].

2. approach, noun, *adventus*, ūs, m.; [= *means of approach*, *aditus*, ūs, m.; or *use ad-eō*, -ire, -iī, -itum].

approval, *cōsensūs*, ūs, m. (*used of several persons*); [*volun-tās*, -tātis, f.]

April, *Aprīlis*, e, *ad.*

Arar, *Arar*, *Araris*, m.

Ardennes, *Ardūenna*, ae, f.

ardor, *studium*, ī, n.

Ariovistus, *Ariovistus*, I, m.

arise, *co-orior*, *irī*, -ortus sum.

armed, *armātus*, a, um.

Arminius, *Arminius*, I, m.

armor, *arma*, ōrum, n., in *plur. only*.

arms, *arma*, ōrum, n., in *plur. only*.

army, *exercitus*, ūs, m.

arouse, *cōfirmō*, āre, āvī, ātum.

arrange, *cōstit-uō*, ere, -uī, -ūtum.

arrangement, *rēs*, rei, f.

arrival, *adventus*, ūs, m.

arrow, *sagitta*, ae, f.

artillery, *tormenta*, ōrum, n., *plur.*

1. as = *since*, cum.

2. as, *after idem*, quī, quae, quod.

3. as = *while*, dum, or *use present participle*.

4. as, *sign of apposition*, untranslated; *use appositive or dative of purpose*.

5. as soon as, *simul atque*.

6. as as possible, *quam with superl.*

7. as to, *use the genitive*.

ascend, *ascendō*, ere, *ascendī*, *ascēnsum*.

ascertain, *cō-gnōscō*, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum.

ashamed, be—, *pudet*, *impersonal*.

1. aside, lay—, *dē-pōnō*, ere, -posul, -positum.

2. aside, turn—, *ā-vertō*, ere, -vertī, -versum.

1. ask* (*of making a request*), *petō*, ere, *petīvī*, *petitum*; *rogō*, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. ask* (*of asking a question*), *quaerō*, ere, *quaesivī*, *quaesitum*; *rogō*, āre, āvī, ātum.

3. ask for, *petō*, ere, *petīvī*, *petitum*, *v. acc.*

4. ask advice of, *cōsul-ō*, ere, -uī, -tum, *v. acc.*

assailant, *use present participle of ag-gredior*, I.

assemble (*intransitive*), *con-veniō*, īre, -vēnī, -ventum.

assembly, *concilium*, I, n.

assist, *juvō*, āre, *jūvī*, *jūtum*, *v. acc.*

1. assistance, *auxilium*, I, n.

2. assistance, go to—of, *auxiliō eō*, īre, īī (ivī), itum, *v. dat.*

3. assistance, send to of, *auxiliō mittō*, ere, *misī*, *missum*, *v. dat. and acc.*

asylum, *perfugium*, I, n.; *find an— in*, *perfugiō ūtor*, I, ūsus sumi, *v. abl.*

1. at, *of time when*, *use abl. without prep.*

2. at, *of place where*, *use locative, or in and abl.*

3. at, *after conjiciō* = *hurl*, in, *v. acc.*

4. at once, *statim*, *adv.*

5. at, *in phrase throw oneself at—feet*, *ad*, *v. acc.*

Athens, *Athēnae*, ārum, f., in *plur. only*.

1. attack, verb, (*of places*), *oppugnō*, āre, āvī, ātum; (*of men*), *ag-gredior*, I, -gressus sum; *ad-orior*, *irī*, -ortus sum; *impetum facere in*, *v. acc.*

2. attack, noun, *impetus*, ūs, m. [*In II.*, *Ex. 32*, *use proelium* = *battle*.]

1. attempt, verb (= *try*, *v. infinitive*), *cōnor*, ārī, ātus sum; [(= *make an attempt on*), *temptō*, āre, āvī, ātum].

2. attempt, make an—, *cōnor*, ārī, ātus sum.

August, *Augustus*, a, um.

Augustus, *Augustus*, I, m.

auxiliary, *auxiliar-is*, -is, m.; in *II.*, *Ex. 33*, *use the plural*.

1. avenge, *ulciscor*, I, ultus sum.

2. avenge oneself on (or upon), *ulciscor*, I, ultus sum, *v. acc.*

await, *exspectō*, āre, āvī, ātum.

away, take—, *tollō*, ere, *sustulī*, *sub-lātum*.

* The person who is asked is with *rogo* in the acc., with *peto* in the abl. with *ab*, with *quaero* in the abl. with *ex* or *ab*.

B

back, tergum, I, N.

baggage, **baggage animals**, impedimenta, ōrum, N., plur.

band, manus, ūs, F.

bank, ripa, ae, F.

bar, tālea, ae, F.

barbarian, barbarus, I, M.

battalion, cohort-s, -tis, F.

1. **battle**, proelium, I, N.; pugna, ae, F.2. **battle array, line of battle**, acies, ei, F.**bay, driven hopelessly to—**, in extrēmā spē salūtis.**be**, sum, esse, fuī; *to express distance, use absūm, abesse, āfui.*1. **bear**, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum. (III. 44.)2. **bear on**, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.**beat a retreat**, sē re-cipiō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum.**beaten**, victus, a, um.**because**, quod.**become**, fiō, fieri, factus sum. (III. 46.)1. **before**, *prep. (of time)*, ante, *w. acc.*; (*of place*) prō, *w. abl.*; (=near) apud, *w. acc.*; (*with summon*) ad, *w. acc.*2. **before**, *conj.*, antequam, priusquam.1. **begin**, incipiō, ere; *for the perfect tenses, use coepi, isse, coeptus sum.*2. **begin battle**, proelium com-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum.**behalf, on—of**, prō, *prep. w. abl.***behead**, securi ferō, Ire, Ici, Ictum (= *strike with an axe*).**behind, from—**, *use ex, w. abl.* = *from*.**behold**, videō, ēre, vidi, visum.**Belgians**, Belgae, ārum, M, plur.**believe**, crē-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, *w. dat.***bemoan**, miseror, āri, ātus sum.**bent, become—**, sē in-flectō, ere, -flecti, -flexum.**beseech**, ōrō, āre, āvi, ātum; implōrō, āre, āvi, ātum.**beset**, ob-sideō, ēre, -sēdi, -sessum.1. **best**, optimus, a, um.2. **best armed**, ornātissimus, a, um.**bestow upon**, dōnō, āre, āvi, ātum, *w. dat.*1. **betake**, re-cipiō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum.2. **betake oneself to flight**, sē fugae mandāre, (mandō, āre, āvi, ātum).1. **better**, mel-ior, -ius.2. **better, it is—**, praestat, āre, *impersonal*.**betray**, prō-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum.1. **between**, inter, *prep. w. acc.*2. **between, be—**, inter-cēdō, ere, -cēssi, -cēssum, *with inter and acc.***beyond**, trāns, *prep. w. acc.***Bibracte**, Bibracte, is, N.**bind**, vin-ciō, Ire, -xi, -ctum; [*figuratively*, ob-stringō, ere, -strinxī, -stric-tum].**bitter**, gravis, e.**boast of**, glōrior, āri, ātus sum, *w. abl.***boats, bridge of—**, nāvēs junctae.**Boii**, Bōii, ōrum, M, plur.**boldly**, audācter.**boldness**, audācia, ae, F.**bondage**, servi-tūs, -tūtis, F.1. **border**, noun, initium, I, N.2. **border** (=hem in), contineō, ēre.**born**, nātus, a, um.1. **both . . . and**, et . . . et.2. **both**, uterque, utraque, utrumque. (III. 26.) = *each*.3. **both, on—sides**, utrumque.**bough**, rāmus, I, M.**boundary, form—line between**, = *separate*.**bow**, arcus, ūs, M.; [*abl. plur.*, arcubus].**boy**, puer, eri, M.**branch**, rāmus, I, M.**brave**, fortis, e.**bravely**, fortiter.**bravery**, vir-tūs, -tūtis, F.; [fortitū-dō, -dimis, F.; *or use clause quid virtūte possint, etc.*].1. **break down**, re-scindō, ere, -scidi, -scissum.2. **break up camp**, castra moveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtum.**bridge**, pōns, pontis, M.**Brigantes**, Brigantes, a, um, M, plur.**brilliant**, praelārus, a, um.1. **bring**, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.2. **bring** (*followed by across*), trā-ducō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum.3. **bring back** (=lead back), re-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum; (=carry back), re-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum.4. **bring word**, nūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum.5. **bring back word**, renūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum.6. **bring in** (=collect), comportō, āre, āvi, ātum; (=import) importō, āre, āvi, ātum.7. **bring up the rear**, agmen claudō, ere, clausi, clausum.8. **bring together**, comportō, āre, āvi, ātum; cōferō, cōferre, contuli, collātum.**Britain**, Britannia, ae, F.1. **British**, = *of the Britons*.2. **British Isles**, = *Britain*.**Briton**, Britannus, I, M.**broad**, lātus, a, um.**bronze**, aes, aeris, N.**brother**, frā-ter, -tris, M.**Brutus**, Brūtus, I, M.**buffetting**, contumēlia, ae, F.**build**, aedificō, āre, āvi, ātum; [faciō, ere, feci, factum].**building**, aedificium, I, N.**burden**, onus, oneris, N.1. **burn**, in-cendō, ere, -cendi, -cēsum.2. **burn up**, com-būrō, ere, -būssi, -būsum.**burst in**, ir-rumpō, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum.**business**, negotium, I, N.; rēs, rei, F.1. **but**, sed.2. **but**, = *who—not*, quā.**buy up**, co-emō, ere, -ēmi, -emptum.**by**, ā, ab, *prep. w. abl.*

C

Cæsar, Caes-ar, -aris, m.

1. **call** (= *summon*), vocō, āre, āvī, ātum; (= *name*), appellō, āre, āvī, ātum; nō-minō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. **call together**, convocō, āre, āvī, ātum.

camp, castra, ōrum, n., *in plur. only.*

campaigner, old, *use the phrase* māg-num in castris ūsum habēre.

camp-follower, cāl-ō, -ōnis, m.

can, possum, posse, potuī. (III. 42).

capable, be — of, possum, posse, potuī.

captive, captīvus, I, m.

capture, capiō, ere, cēpī, captum.

Caractacus, Caractacus, I, m.

care (= *carefulness*), diligentia, ae, f.; [(= *object of concern*), cūra, ae, f.].

carefully, diligenter.

1. **carry**, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum (III. 44); (*of carrying a report*), per-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum.

2. **carry off**, ab-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -duc-tum.

3. **carry on**, gerō, ere, gessi, gestum.

4. **carry out**, cōn-ficiō, ere, -fēci, fec-tum.

carry over, trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātum.

Cartismandua, Cartismandua, ae, f.

case, since (*or although*) **this is the—**, quae cum ita sint.

Cassius, Cassius, I, m.

1. **cast** (= *throw headlong*), praecipitō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. **cast reproach in one's teeth**, ob-jiciō, ere, -jēci, -jectum, *w. dat. and acc.*, = impute to one.

Casticus, Casticus, I, m.

cattle, pec-us, -oris, n.

1. **cause**, noun, causa, ae, f.

2. **cause**, verb, cūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *with gerundive.*

caution, with—, cautē; **with the greatest—**, *use superl.*

1. **cavalry**, noun, equitātus, ūs, m. (*in sing.*); equitēs, um, m. (*in plur.*).

2. **cavalry**, adj., equester, tris, tre.

3. **cavalry-man**, equ-es, -itis, m.

census, cēnsus, ūs, m.; **take the—**, cēnsum habēō, ēre, uī, itum.

centre, *use adj.* medius, a, um.

centurion, centuri-ō, -ōnis, m.

1. **certain** (= *some*), quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam. (III. 26).

2. **certain** (= *fixed*), certus, a, um.

chain, vinculum, I, n.; [catēna, ae, f.].

challenge, ēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum.

1. **change**, commūtāt-iō, -iōnis, f.

2. **change**, political—, novae rēs, f. plur.

character, of such a—, tālis, e, adj.

Charles, Carolus, I, m.

1. **chief**, prin-ceps, -cipis, m.; rēgulus, I, m.

2. **chief man**, prin-ceps, -cipis, m.

3. **chief power**, rēgnum, I, n.; imper-ium, I, n.

chiefly, māximē.

children, liberī, ōrum, m.

choose, dē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.

choosing of his own—, *use the verb* dēligō (*choose*).

chosen, dēlēctus, a, um; ēlēctus, a, um.

circumstance, rēs, rei, f.

citizen, civ-is, -is, m.

citizenship, civi-tās, -tātis, f.

city, urbs, urbis, f.

clemency, clēmēntia, ae, f.

cliff, mōns, montis, m.

1. **close**, verb, claudō, ere, clausī, clau-sum.

2. **close**, be—at hand, ad-sum, -esse, -fui.

closely, angustē.

coast, ōra, ae, f.

cohort, cohor-s, -tis, f.

collect (= *get together*), cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum; [col-ligō, ere, -lēgī, lēctum];

(= *summon together*), convocō, āre, āvī, ātum; (= *carry to one place*), cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum.

1. **color** (= *hue*), col-or, -ōris, m.

2. **colors** (= *standard*), aquila, ae, f.; sig-num, I, n.

combat, *use gerund* of pūgnō, āre.

combatants, pūgnant-ēs, -ium, m.

1. **come**, veniō, ire, vēnī, ventum.

2. **come often**, ventitō, āre, āvī, ātum.

3. **come together**, con-veniō, ire, -vēnī, -ventum.

4. **come up with**, cōn-sequor, I, -secū-tus sum, *w. acc.*

1. **command**, verb, imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *v. dat. of person, acc. of thing.*

2. **command** (= *military power*), noun, imperium, I, n.; (= *order given*), imper-ātum, I, n.

3. **command**, have—of, be in—, be at head of—, prae-sum, -esse, -fui, *w. dat.*

4. **command**, chief—, summa (ae, f.) imperiī.

commander, imperā-tor, -tōris, m.

common, commūnis, e.

communication, hold—, col-loquor, I, -locūtus sum.

compare, comparō, āre, āvī, ātum.

compel, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum.

complain, queror, I, questus sum.

complaint, make—, queror, I, questus sum.

1. **complete**, verb, cōn-ficiō, ere, -fēci, -fectum.

2. **complete**, adj., certissimus, a, um.

comrade, their comrades, sui,

ōrum, m., plur.

conceal, occultō, āre, āvī, ātum; [cēlō, āre, āvī, ātum].

1. **concerns**, it—, interest; rēfert. (II. 63.)

2. **concerned**, so far as . . . is—, per, prep. *v. acc.*

concerning, *dē*, *prep.* *w. abl.*
conclude (= *make*), *faciō*, *ere*, *fēcī*, *factum*.

condition, *condic-iō*, *-iōnis*, *F.*

confer upon, *dē-ferō*, *-ferre*, *-tullī*, *-lātum*, *w. dat.*

conference, *colloquium*, *I*, *N.*

confidence, *fidūcia*, *ae*, *F.*

confine, *con-tinēō*, *ēre*, *-tinuī*, *-tentum*.

1. **confusion**, *tumultus*, *ūs*, *M.*

2. **confusion, throw into**—, *perturbō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

conquer, *vincō*, *ere*, *vici*, *victum*; *superō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

consider, *existimō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

Considius, *Considius*, *I*, *M.*

conspire, *conjūrō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

consternation. throw into state of—, *perturbō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

consul, *cōsul*, *cōsulis*, *M.*

consulship, in the—*of*, *use cōsul in the abl. absolute.*

1. **consult**, *cōsul-ō*, *ere*, *-uī*, *-tum*, *w. acc.*

2. **consult (or consult for) interests (welfare) of**, *cōsul-ō*, *ere*, *-uī*, *-tum*, *w. dat.*

contest (= *battle*), *certā-men*, *-minis*, *N.*, *pūgna*, *ae*, *F.*; (= *war*), *bellum*, *I*, *N.*

continent, *contin-ēns*, *-entis*, *F.*

continually, *continenter*.

continue, *maneō*, *ēre*, *mānsī*, *mānsum*.

convenient, *idōneus*, *a*, *um*.

conversation, *serm-ō*, *-ōnis*, *M.*

1. **converse**, *loquor*, *I*, *locūtus sum*.

2. **converse, hold**—, *loquor*, *I*, *locūtus sum*.

1. **corn**, *frūmentum*, *I*, *N.*

2. **corn, supplies of**—, *rēs frūmentāria*, *F.* (*use the sing.*).

cost, *cōn-stō*, *āre*, *-stitī*, *-stātum*, *w. abl.*

Cotta, *Cotta*, *ae*, *M.*

council, *concilium*, *I*, *N.*

country (= *land*), *ager*, *agrī*, *M.*; *fin-ēs*, *-ium*, *M. plur.*; (= *ground*), *locus*, *I*, *M.*; (= *state*), *rēspūblica*, *rēspūblicae* (*III. 9*); (= *native country*), *patria*, *ae*, *F.*; (= *rural districts*), *rūs*, *rūris*, *N.*

courage, *vir-tūs*, *-tūtis*, *F.*

1. **course**, *cursus*, *ūs*, *M.*

2. **course of action**, *rēs*, *rei*, *F.*

cover (= *complete*), *cōn-ficiō*, *ere*, *-fēcī*, *-fectum*.

coward, *ignāvus*, *I*, *M.*

cowardice, *ignāvia*, *ae*, *F.*

cowed, *perterritus*, *a*, *um*.

1. **cross, verb**, *trāns-eō*, *-ire*, *-iī* (*-ivī*), *-itum*.

2. **cross, adj.** (= *oblique*), *trānsversus*, *a*, *um*.

crossing, effect a—, *trāns-eō*, *-ire*, *-iī* (*ivī*), *-itum*.

crnelty, *crūdēli-tās*, *-tātis*, *F.*

crush, *frangō*, *ere*, *frēgī*, *frāctum*.

curiosity, *studium*, *I*, *N.*; *or use studeō*, *ēre*, *ui* (= *to be eager*).

custom, *cōnsuetū-dō*, *-dinis*, *F.*; *mōs*, *mōris*, *M.*

cut off (= *intercept or shut off*), *inter-clūdō*, *ere*, *-clūsī*, *-clūsum*; (= *kill*), *inter-ficiō*, *ere*, *-fēcī*, *-fectum*.

D

danger, *periculum*, *I*, *N.*

dangerous, *periculōsus*, *a*, *um*.

dare, *audeō*, *ēre*, *ausus sum*. (*III. 68, b.*)

daring, use phrase what they dare.

dark-blue, *caeruleus*, *a*, *um*.

dart, *tēlum*, *I*, *N.*

date, the of—, *use clause with quandō*, (= *when*).

daughter, *filia*, *ae*, *F.*

day, *diēs*, *ēi*, *M.*

daybreak, *prīma lūx*, *lūcis*, *F.*

deal (*of inflicting wounds*), *inferō*, *Inferre*, *intulī*, *illātum*; (*of causing death*), *use inter-ficiō*, *ere*, *-fēcī*, *-fectum*, = *slay*.

dear, *cārus*, *a*, *um*.

1. **death**, *mors*, *mortis*, *F.*

2. **death, put to**—, *inter-ficiō*, *ere*, *-fēcī*, *-fectum*.

decide (*form a resolve*), *cōnstit-uō*, *ere*, *-uī*, *-ūtum*; (= *form an opinion*), *iūdicō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; (= *of deciding a victory*), *pariō*, *parere*, *peperi*, *partum*.

declaration of war (= *war declared*).

declare (= *assert*), *cōnfirmō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; (= *make known*), *prōnūntiō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; (= *of declaring war*), *in-dicō*, *ere*, *-dixī*, *-dictum*.

deed, *factum*, *I*, *N.*

deep, *altus*, *a*, *um*.

1. **defeat, verb**, *repellō*, *ere*, *reppulī*, *re-pulsum*.

2. **defeat, noun**, *proelium adversum*, *N.*; [*calami-tās*, *-tātis*, *F.*].

1. **defence**, *mūnimentum*, *I*, *N.*

2. **defence, in face of**—, *use verb resistō*, *ere*, *restitī* (= *resist*), *or dē-fendō*, *ere*, *-fendi*, *-fēnsum* (= *defend*).

defend, *dē-fendō*, *ere*, *-fendi*, *-fēnsum*.

defer, *super-sedeō*, *ēre*, *-sēdī*, *-sessum*, *w. abl.*

dejection, *tristitia*, *ae*, *F.*

delay, *moror*, *ārī*, *ātus sum*.

delightful, *iūcundus*, *a*, *um*.

demand, *imperō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; *poscō*, *ere*, *poposci*.

dense, *dēnsus*, *a*, *um*.

deny, *negō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

1. **depart**, *dis-cēdō*, *ere*, *-cēssi*, *-cēssum*.

2. **depart this life** = *die*.

1. **departure**, *dis-cēssus*, *ūs*, *M.*; [*pro-fect-iō*, *-iōnis*, *F.*].

2. **departure, take one's**—, *dis-cēdō*, *ere*, *-cēssi*, *-cēssum*; *pro-ficiscor*, *I*, *-fectus sum*.

deprive, *dēspoliō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; [*of expressed by abl.*].

depth, *altitū-dō*, *-dinis*, *F.*

desert, *dēstīt-uō*, *ere*, *-uī*, *-ūtum*

design, *cōnsilium*, *I*, *N.*

desire, cup-iō, ere, -iŕi, -itum.
destroy, re-scindō, ere, -scidī, -scissum.
destruction, perniciōs, ēi, f.
detain, re-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum.
deter, dēterreō, ēre, uī, itum.
 1. **determine** (= *lead*, *induce*), cōnstit-uō, ere, -uī, -itum.
 2. **determine** (= *read*, *induce*), ad-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum.
die, morior, mori, mortuus sum; vitā (or ē vitā) dēcēdere (or excēdere).
differ, differō, differre, distuli, dilātum.
different, aliūs, a, ud; in **different directions**, = some in one direction, others in another. (II. 185.)
difficult, difficilis, e.
 1. **difficulty**, difficul-tās, tātis, f.
 2. **difficulty, with** —, vix, adv.
 3. **difficulty, with the greatest** —, aegerrimē, adv.
 4. **difficulty, without** —, facile, adv.
direct (= *order*), imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, w. dat.
 1. **direction**, pars, partis, f.
 2. **directions, from all** —, undique, adv.; or use pars (= *quarter*).
 3. **direction, in what** —, quam in partem.
disappointed in, dējectus, a, um, w. abl.; repulsus, a, um, w. ab and abl.
disaster, calamitās, -tātis, f.
discharge, fungor, ī, functus sum, w. abl.
disclose, osten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum.
disconcert, com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
discover, cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum; reperio, ire, repperī, repertum.
discretion, surrender at —, use the phrase sē suaque omnia potestātī permittere.
disembark, ex nāvibus ē-gredior (ī, -gressus sum).
disgrace, turpitū-dō, -dinis, f.
disgraceful, turpis, e.
dislodge, prō-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum.
dismay, per-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
dismiss, dī-mittō, ere, -mīsi, -missum.
dispel, ex-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum.
display, prae-stō, āre, -stitī.
displease, dis-plicēō, ēre, -plicuī, -plicitum, w. dat.
 1. **disposition**, animus, ī, m.
 2. **disposition, merciful** —, clēmētia, ae, f.
 1. **distance**, spatium, ī, n.
 2. **distance, at a** —, procul, adv.
 3. **distance, at a** — of, ā or ab, w. abl.
 4. **distance, from a** —, ēminus, adv.
distant, be —, absūm, abesse, āfui.
distress, be in —, labōrō, āre, āvī, ātum.
distribute, distrib-uō, ere, -uī, ūtum.
district, reg-iō, -iōnis, f.
disturb, perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum; [com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, mōtum].
ditch, fossa, ae, f.

divide, dī-vidō, ere, -visī, -visum.
do, faciō, ere, fēcī, factum; (= *carry on*), gerō, ere, gessi, gestum.
double, duplex, duplicis.
 1. **doubt**, verb, dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum.
 2. **doubt**, noun, dubitat-iō, -iōnis, f.
 3. **doubt, there is no** —, nōn est dubium (= *it is not doubtful*).
draught animal, jūmentum, ī, n.
 1. **draw** (of *drawing a sword*), dē-stringō, ere, -strinxī, -strictum.
 2. **draw near**, = *approach*.
 3. **draw out**, ē-vellō, ere, -velli, -vulsum.
 4. **draw up**, īn-struō, ere, -struxī, -strūctum.
 1. **drive** (= *urge on*), īn-pellō, ere, -puli, -pulsum; (= *drive back*), repellō, ere, reppuli, repulsūm; (of *driving headlong*), agō, ere, ēgī, āctum.
 2. **drive back**, repellō, ere, reppuli, repulsūm; re-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.
 3. **drive off**, sub-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
 4. **drive out**, ē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.
drown, be drowned by shouts, = cannot be heard for shouts, see II. 232, d.
Dunmox, Dunmor-ix, -igis, m.
during, use acc. of time how long.
duty, mūn-us, -eris, n.; **do duty**, officium (ī, n.) prae-stō, āre, -stitī.
dwel, īn-colō, ere, -coluī, -cultum.
dying words, see II. 236.

E

each (of *two*), uterque, utraque, utrumque; (of *more than two*), quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque [26].
 1. **eager**, alacer, cris, ere.
 2. **eager, be most** —, studeō, ēre, uī.
eagerly, cupidē.
eagerness, alacri-tās, -tātis, f.
eagle, aquila, ae, f.
early, mātūrus, a, um.
earnestly, māgnopere.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, e.
eat, vescor, ī (with abl.).
edge, the water's —, lit-us, -oris, n. (= *shore*).
eight, octo.
eighteen, duodēviginti; octōdecim; decem et octo.
eighth, octāvus, a, um.
eighty, octōgintā.
elect, creō, āre, āvī, ātum.
elections, comitia, ōrum, n.
eleventh, undecimus, a, um.
Elizabeth, Elisabetha, ae, f.
eloquence, to the spirit and eloquence of the chief, say "to the chief earnestly encouraging (them)."
else, aliūs, a, ud.
embark, nāvēs cōn-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsūm.
embassy, lēgāt-iō, -iōnis, f.
emergency, in case of —, say if there should be need of anything.

encamp, cōn-sidō, ere, -sēdi, sessum.
encourage, cohortor, arī, ātus sum.
end, fin-is, -is, m.
endure (=tolerate), patior, I, passus sum; (=withstand), per-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum.
enemy, host-is, is, m. (*usually in the plur.*)
 1. **engage**, com-mittō, ere, -mīsi, -missum.
 2. **engage in**, versor, arī, ātus sum, w. in *and abl.*
 3. **engage with**, cōn-figō, ere, -fixi, -flictum, w. cum *and abl.*
 1. **engagement**, proelium, I, n.
 2. **engagement, during the—**, = *while fighting.*
engine, tormentum, I, n.
English, Britannī, ōrum.
enjoy, fruor, I, fructus sum (*w. abl.*)
enquire, quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesitum.
enroll, cōn-scribō, ere, -scripsī, -scriptum.
enterprise, rēs, rei, f.
enthusiasm, with shouts of enthusiasm, use the phrase magnā voce.
entirely, use tōtus, a, um, *adj.*
entrust, com-mittō, ere, -mīsi, -missum.
envoy, lēgātus, I, m.
 1. **equal**, verb, adaequō, āre, āvī, ātum.
 2. **equal**, *adj.*, pār, paris.
equip, armō, āre, āvī, ātum; ornō, āre, āvī, ātum.
escape, ē-lābor, I, -lāpsus sum; ef-fugiō, ere, -fūgi, -fugitum.
escort, praesidium, I, n.
especial, use praecipuē = *especially.*
establish, cōnfirmō, āre, āvī, ātum; [*of establishing a precedent*, instit-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum].
evoke, vitō, āre, āvī, ātum.
even, etiam; **not even**, nē . . . quidem; **even if**, etiam si.
 1. **ever** (=always), semper.
 2. **ever, for—**, in perpetuum.
 1. **every**, omnis, e; [quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque = *each*].
 2. **every one**, omnēs, *plur.*, or quisque, *sing.*, = *each*.
everything, omnia; omnēs rēs.
example, exemplum, I, n.
excel, prae-cēdō, ere, -cēssi, -cēssum.
excellently, egregiē.
execute, inter-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
exercise (=show), ūtor, I, ūsus sum.
exhibit, ūtor, I, ūsus sum.
exhort, hortor, arī, ātus sum.
expect, expectō, āre, āvī, ātum.
experience, ūsus, ūs, m.
extend, pertinēdō, ēre, ui.
 1. **extent**, magnitūdō, -dinis, f.
 2. **extent, of great—**, māgnus, a, um.
extremely, māximē (*or use the superl. degree*).
extremity of, use *adj.* extrēmus, a, um.

F

1. **face, in the—of**, use the *abl. absol.*
 2. **face, put a brave—on**, vultum fingō, ere, finxi, fictum.
fall, dē-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
faithful, fidēlis, e; [fidus, a, um].
faithfully, fidēliter; summā fidē.
 1. **fall**, verb, cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsum; [con-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cāsum].
 2. **fall, allow to fall into hands of**, prō-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum (*betray*).
 3. **fall**, noun, mors, mortis, f. (=death); calami-tās; -tātis, f.
fame, fāma, ae, f.
famous, praeclārus, a, um.
far, longē; **too far**, longius.
 1. **farther**, *adv.*, longius.
 2. **farther**, *adj.*, ūlter-ior, -ius.
farthest, ūltimus, a, um.
father, pater, patris, m.
father-in-law, socer, eri, m.
fatigued, dēfessus, a, um.
favor, probō, āre, āvī, ātum; faveō, ēre fāvī, fautum (*w. dat.*).
favorable, idōneus, a, um.
 1. **fear**, verb, timeō, ēre, -ui; [per-ti-nescō, ere, ui; vereor, eri, veritus sum].
 2. **fear**, noun, tim-or, -ōris, m.; [metus, ūs, m.].
fearful, timidus, a, um.
February, Februārius, a, um, *adj.*
feel, intel-legō, ere, -lēxi, -lēctum.
feelings, animus, I, m. (*use sing.*).
fellow-citizen, civ-is, -is, m.
fertile, fertilis, e; fer-āx, acis.
few, pauci, ae, a; nōnnulli, ae, a; **very few**, perpauci, ae, a. . .
 1. **field**, ager, agri, m.
 2. **field** (=field of battle), leave the field, proelio ex-cēdō, ere, -cēssi, -cēssum.
 3. **field, take the—**, arma sūmō, ere, sūmsi, sūmptum; ad bellum pro-ficiscor, I, -fectus sum.
fierce, use *adverb*, =fiercely.
fiercely, ācriter.
fifteen, quindecim.
fifth, quintus, a, um.
fifty, quinquāgintā.
 1. **fight**, pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum.
 2. **fight a battle**, proelium faciō, ere, fēcī, factum.
 3. **fighting**, pūgna, ae, f.; *or use gerund of pūgnō*.
fill, fill up, com-pleō, ēre, -plēvi, -plētum.
finally, dēnique.
 1. **find**, reperio, Ire, repperi, repertum; in-veniō, ire, -vēni, -ventum.
 2. **find out**, cō-gnoscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum; com-perio, Ire, -peri, -pertum.
fine, pulcher, chra, chrum.
finish, per-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
 1. **fire**, ign-is, -is, m.
 2. **fire, set — to**, in-cendō, ere, -cēndī, -cēnsuin, w. acc.

3. **fire, be under—**, =take part in battle.

first, primus, a, um; **at first**, primō.

fish, pisc-is, -is, m.

five, quinque; **five hundred**, quingenti, ae, a.

fix (=appoint), ē-dicō, ere, -dixī, -dictum; (with diēs), dicō, ere, dixī, dictum.

flag, vexillum, i, n.

flee, cōn-fugiō, ere, -fūgī; fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitum.

fleet, clāss-is, -is, f.

flesh, carō, carnis, f.

1. **flight**, fuga, ae, f.

2. **flight, take to—**, sē fugae mandāre, (mandō, āre, āvi, ātum).

1. **flow**, fluō, ere, flūxī, fluxum.

2. **flow before**, praeter-fluō, ere, flūxī, -fluxum, *v. acc.*

1. **follow**, sequor, i, secūtus sum.

2. **follow up**, per-sequor, i, -secūtus sum.

3. **following**, *adj.*, posterus, a, um; [insequ-ēns, entis].

follower, camp—, cāl-ō, -ōnis, m.

folly, āmentia, ae, f.; [stultitia, ae, f.]

food, cibus, i, m.

1. **foot**, pēs, pedis, m.; **on foot**, pedibus.

2. **foot, at the—of**, sub, *with abl.*

3. **foot, throw oneself at the feet of**, see II. 106.

4. **foot, to the—of**, sub, *v. acc.*

footsoldier, ped-es, -itis, m.

1. **for** (of motion towards), in, ad, *v. acc.*; (with reason), dē, *v. abl.*; (of purpose), ad and gerund or gerundive; (of time how long), *acc. only*; (with infinitive clause) untranslated; (of arrangements for the future), in, *v. acc.*; (=on behalf of), prō, *v. abl.*

2. **for**, conj., nam.

forbearance, mānsuētū-dō, -dinis, f.

forbid, vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitum.

1. **force**, verb, com-pellō, ere, -pull, -pullum.

2. **force**, noun (=violence), vīs, f. [9]; **forces** (=troops), cōpiae, ārum, f. plur.

3. **forced** (of a march), māgnus, a, um.

ford, vadum, i, n.

forest, silva, ae, f.

forever, in perpetuum.

forget, ob-liviscor, i, -litus sum, *v. gen.*

1. **form** (=make), faciō, ere, fecī, factum.

2. **form** (=draw up), in-struō, ere, -struxī, -strūctum.

former, pristinus, a, um.

forsake, dis-cēdō, ere, -cēssi, -cēssum, *v. ab and abl.*

fort, castellum, i, n.

fortification, mūnit-iō, -iōnis, f.; opus, -eris, n.

fortify, mūniō, ire, ivī, itum.

forty, quadrāgintā.

forward, send—, prae-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum.

four, quattuor; four hundred, quadringenti, ae, a.

fourth, quartus, a, um; **three fourths**, =three parts.

1. **free**, verb, liberō, āre, āvi, ātum.

2. **free**, *adj.*, liber, era, erum.

freed, liberātus, a, um.

freely, liberē.

French, Gallī, ōrum, m.

1. **frequent**, *adj.*, crēber, bra, brum.

2. **frequent, verb, with no requented ford**, say which was not wont to be crossed by a ford.

fresh, integer, gra, grum.

friend, amicus, i, m.; (often expressed by possessive pronouns, footnote 2, page 34).

friendly, amicus, a, um.

friendship, amicitia, ae, f.

frightful, horridus, a, um.

1. **from**, ā, ab (=away from), ex (=out of); **from which**, unde; (with verbs of taking away), use the dat.; (with gerund in -ing), quā, quōminus *v. subjunctive*.

2. **from, be—**, absum, abesse, āfui.

front, in—of, prō, *v. abl.*; ante, *v. acc.*

full, plenus, a, um.

furnish, order to—, imperō, āre, āvi, ātum (*v. dat. of persons ordered, acc. of that to be furnished*).

G

1. **gain**, potior, irī, itus sum, *v. abl.*; ad-ipiscor, i, -eptus sum, *v. acc.*

2. **gain a request**, impetrō, āre, āvi, ātum.

Galba, Galba, ae, m.

gallant, in II., Ex. 29, not to be translated.

gallantly, ācriter.

Gallie, Gallicus, a, um; or use Gallōrum.

Gallus, Gallus, i, m.

garrison, praesidium, i, n.

gate, porta, ae, f.

1. **Gaul** (the country), Gallia, ae, f.

2. **Gaul** (a native of Gaul), Gallus, i, m.

Gaulish province, =prōvincia Gallia, in apposition.

1. **general**, imperā-tor, -tōris, m.

2. **general engagement**, proelium, i, n.

Geneva, Genāva, ae, f.

gentleness, clēmētia, ae, f.

George, Georgius, i, m.

German, Germānus, i, m.; or *adj.*, Germānus, a, um.

1. **get**, nanciscor, i, nactus or nactus sum.

2. **get ready**, expediō, ire, ivī, itum.

1. **give**, dō, dare, dedi, datum.

2. **give orders**, imperō, āre, āvi, ātum.

3. **give up** (=hand over), trā-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum; (=abandon), dē-sistō, ere, -stitī, *v. abl.*

glorious, pulcher, chra, chrum.

1. **go**, eō, ire, ii (ivi), itum.

2. **go forth**, ex-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum.

3. **go out**, ex-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum.

4. **go outside**, ē-gredior, I, -gressus sum, *v. extrā and acc.*

5. **going, to be—on**, fiō, fieri, factus sum; geror, I, gestus sum, *passive.*

6. **going, to be—to**, *use fut. part. in -urus and sum.*

government, rēspūblica, rēspūblicaē, F. [9.]

grant, dō, dare, dedī, datum.

great, māgnus, a, um; **how great**, quantus, a, um; **so great**, tantus, a, um; **very great**, maximus, a, um.

greatest, maximus, a, um; *or use adv., maxime.*

greatly, māgnopere, māgnō opere; **how greatly**, quantopere; quantō opere.

1. **ground** (=position), locus, I, M.

2. **ground, stand one's—**, cōn-sistō, ere, -stiti.

3. **ground, provisions of—corn**, molita cibāria, ōrum, N. *plur.*

1. **guard, verb**, custōdiō, Ire, Ivi, Itum.

2. **guard, noun**, praesidium, I, N.

guide, dux, ducis, M.

guilty, find—, condemnō, āre, āvi, ātum.

H

half a mile=five hundred paces.

halt, cōn-sistō, ere, -stiti.

1. **hand**, manus, ūs, F.

2. **hand to hand**, cōminus, *adv.*

3. **hand down**, prō-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum.

4. **hand, be at—**, ad-sum, -esse, -fui.

5. **hand over**, trā-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum.

hang out, prō-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum.

happen, accid-ō, ere, I; -fiō, fieri, factus sum.

harass, laccess-ō, ere, -lvi, -Itum.

harbor, portus, ūs, M.

1. **hard**, difficilis, e.

2. **hard pressed, to be—**, premor, I, pressus sum; urgeor, ēri; (*passive*).

harm, noceō, ēre, uī, *v. dat.*; laedō, ere, laesi, laesum, *v. acc.*

haste, make—, mātūrō, āre, āvi, ātum; contēn-dō, ere, -dī, -tum.

hasten, contēn-dō, ere, -dī, -tum.

1. **have**, habeō, ēre, uī, itum; (=cause), cūrō, āre, āvi, ātum.

2. **have to** (=must), *use gerundive with sum.*

he, is; sē.

1. **head**, cap-ut, -itis, N.

2. **head, be at the—of**, prae-sum, -esse, -ful, *v. dat.*

headlong, prae-ceps, -cipitis.

health, be in good—, valeō, ēre, uī.

hear, hear of, audiō, Ire, Ivi, Itum, *v. acc.*

hearing, without a—, indictā causā.

1. **heart**, animus, I, M.

2. **heart, lose—**, animum dē-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum.

1. **heavy**, gravis, e.

2. **heavy armed**, legiōnārius, a, um.

1. **height** (of measurement), altitūd-ō, -dinis, F.

2. **height** (=a high place), superior locus, I, M.; (*in plur., N.*).

3. **height of madness**, =highest madness.

help, auxilium, I, N.

Helvetian, Helvētius, I, M.; *adj.*, Helvētius, a, um.

Helvetii, Helvētīi, ōrum, M., *plur.*

hem in, con-tineō, ēre, -tinui, tentum.

Henry, Henricus, I, M.

hero, vir, viri, M.

heroic, fortis, e, *in either positive or superlative.*

hesitate, dubitō, āre, āvi, ātum.

hesitation, cunctāt-iō, -iōnis, F.; (**on** = gen.).

high, altus, a, um; =great, māgnus, a, um.

higher (of position), super-ior, -ius.

highest, summus, a, um.

hill, collis, is, M.; **up the hill**, ad-versō colle.

himself, ipse, a, um; sē.

hinder, impediō, Ire, Ivi, Itum.

hither, *adj.*, citer-ior, -ius.

1. **hold**, teneō, ēre, tenui, tentum.

2. **hold a levy**, delēctum habeō, ēre, uī, itum.

3. **hold out**, sus-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum.

4. **hold** (of holding power), ob-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum.

5. **hold** (=regard), habeō, ēre, uī, itum.

home, domus, ūs, F.; [domicilium, I, N.]; **at home**, domī.

honor, ornāmentum, I, N.; [hon-or, -ōris, M.]

1. **hope**, verb, spērō, āre, āvi, ātum; [ex-spectō, āre, āvi, ātum]

2. **hope**, noun, spēs, spel, F.

horse, equus, I, M.; (=cavalry), equitātus, ūs, M.

horseman, equ-es, -itis, M.

hostage, obs-es, -idis, M.

hostile, inimicus, a, um; [or = of the enemy].

hour, hōra, ae, F.

how (=in what manner), quōmodō; (=by what route), quā; **how great**,

how large, quantus, a, um; **how greatly**, quantopere, quantō opere;

how many, quot (*indeclinable*).

however, quāvis.

humanity, hūmāni-tās, -tātis, F.

hundred, centum.

1. **hurl**, con-jiciō, ere, -jēci, -jectum.

2. **hurl back**, re-jiciō, ere, -jēci, -jēc-tum.

hurt, of-fendō, ere, -fēdi, -fēsum.

husband, maritus, I, M.

I

if (= *in case that*), *sī*; (= *whether*), num.

imagine, *pūtō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

immediately, *statim*.

immense, *in-gēns*, *-gentis*.

imminent peril, *obsid-iō*, *-iōnis*, *F.*

impassable, *impeditus*, *a*, *um*.

imperfectly, *nōn plēnē*.

important, *māgnus*, *a*, *um*; **most**

important, *summus*, *a*, *um*.

impress, *com-moveō*, *ēre*, *-mōvī*, *-mō-*
tum.

in, *in*, *prep. v. abl.*

inclose, *con-tineō*, *ēre*, *-tinuī*, *-tentum*.

increase, *augeō*, *ēre*, *auxī*, *auctum*.

incredible, *incrēdibilis*, *e*.

induce, *ad-dūcō*, *ere*, *-dūxī*, *-ductum*.

indulge, *indul-geō*, *ēre*, *-sī*, *-tum*, *w.*
dat.

indulgence, show—, *indul-geō*, *ēre*,
-sī, *-tum*, *w. dat.*

inexperienced, *imperītus*, *a*, *um*.

infant, *in-fāns*, *-fantis*, *M.*

infantry, *peditātus*, *ūs*, *M.*; *pedestrēs*
cōpia, *F. plur.*

inferior, *infer-ior*, *-ius*.

1. **inflict** (*of punishment*), *sūmō*, *'ere*,
sūmptī, *sūmptum*; [*upon*, *dē v. abl.*].

2. **inflict death upon oneself**, *mor-*
tem cōn-sciscō, *ere*, *-scivī*, *-scitum*, *w.*
dat.

1. **influence**, *verb*, *ad-dūcō*, *ere*, *-dūxī*,
-ductum; *per-moveō*, *ēre*, *-mōvī*, *-mō-*
tum; *im-pellō*, *ere*, *-pullī*, *-pulsum*.

2. **influence, try to—**, *sollicitō*, *āre*,
āvī, *ātum*.

3. **influence**, *noun*, *auctōri-tās*, *-tātis*,
F.; *grātia*, *ae*, *F.*

influential, be—, *valeō*, *ēre*, *uī*.

inform, *certiōrem* (*certiōrēs*) *faciō*, *ere*,
fēcī, *factum*; [*of*, = *dē*, *w. abl.*].

inhabit, *in-colō*, *ere*, *-coluī*, *-cultum*.

injure, *noceō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itum*, *w. dat.*

injury, *injūria*, *ae*, *F.*

Inland, *inter-ior*, *-ius*.

inquire, *quaerō*, *ere*, *quaesivī*, *quaesi-*
tum; *rogō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

inroad, *incurs-iō*, *-iōnis*, *F.*

instead of, *prō*, *w. abl.*

insult, *contumēlia*, *ae*, *F.*

insultingly, *insolenter*.

intend (*use future partic. in -ūrus and*
sum).

intercept, *inter-cipiō*, *ere*, *-cēpī*, *-cep-*
tum.

1. **interest**, *ūtili-tās*, *-tātis*, *F.*

2. **interest, be—of**, *interest*; *rēfert*.
(II. 63.)

interpreter, *inter-pres*, *-pretis*, *M.*

into, *in*, *w. acc.*

invade, *in-gredior*, *I*, *-gressus sum*, *w.*
intrā and acc.

invaders, *use hostēs*, *ium*, *M.*, *plur.*, =
enemy.

invite, *access-ō*, *ere*, *-ivī*, *-itum*.

1. **iron**, *ferrum*, *I*, *N.*

2. **iron, of—**, *ferreus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*

island, *insula*, *ae*, *F.*

Italy, *Italia*, *ae*, *F.*

J

January, *Januārius*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*

javelin, *pilum*, *I*, *N.*; *tōlum*, *I*, *N.*

Join battle, *proelium com-mittō*, *ere*,
-misi, *-missum*.

Journey, *iter*, *itineris*, *N.*

Judge, *jūdicō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; *arbitror*,
ārī, *ātus sum*.

judgment, *cōnsilium*, *I*, *N.*

July, *Quintilis*, *e*, *adj.*

June, *Jūnius*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*

Jura, *Jura*, *ae*, *M.*

K

1. **keep**, *con-tineō*, *ēre*, *-tinuī*, *-tentum*.

2. **keep apart**, *dis-tineō*, *ēre*, *-tinuī*,
-tentum.

3. **keep from**, *prohibeō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itum*,
w. infin., or *w. ab and abl.*

4. **keep off**, *prohibeō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itum*.

kill, *inter-ficiō*, *ere*, *-fēcī*, *-fectum*; [*oc-*
cidō, *ere*, *-cidi*, *-cisum*.]

kind, of what—, *quālis*, *e*.

king, *rēx*, *rēgis*, *M.*

know, *sciō*, *ire*, *ivī*, *itum*.

L

Labienus, *Labienus*, *I*, *M.*

lacking, be—, *dēsum*, *deesse*, *dēfui*

ladder, *scāla*, *ae*, *F.*

lake, *lacus*, *ūs*, *M.*

lance, *lancea*, *ae*, *F.*

1. **land** (= *country*), *ager*, *agrī*, *M.*; [*fin-*
ēs, *-ium*, *M.*]; (*opposed to water*), *terra*,
ae, *F.*

2. **land, native—**, *patria*, *ae*, *F.*

3. **land, on—**, *pedester*, *tris*, *tre*, *adj.*

landing, effect a—, *ex nāvibus ex-*
pōnor, *I*, *-positus sum* (*passive*).

language, *lingua*, *ae*, *F.*

large, *māgnus*, *a*, *um*; **how large**,
quantus, *a*, *um*; **very large**, *māxi-*
mus, *a*, *um*.

larger, *māj-or*, *-us*.

largest, *māximus*, *a*, *um*.

latter *ille*, *a*, *ud*.

1. **last, verb, the battle lasts**, *pūg-*
nātur, *impersonal passive*.

2. **last, adv.**, *proximē*.

law, *lēx*, *lēgis*, *F.*

1. **lay aside**, *dē-pōnō*, *ere*, *-posuī*, *-posi-*
tum.

2. **lay down one's life** = *die*.

3. **lay waste**, *vastō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*;
[*populor*, *ārī*, *ātus sum*].

1. **lead**, *dūcō*, *ere*, *-dūxī*, *-ductum*; (= *in-*
fluence), *ad-dūcō*, *ere*, *-dūxī*, *-ductum*.

2. **lead across**, *trans-dūcō*, *ere*, *-dūxī*,
-ductum, *often w. two accusatives*.

3. **lead back**, *re-dūcō*, *ere*, *-dūxī*, *-duc-*
tum.

4. **lead out**, ē-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum.

leader, dux, ducis, m.

leadership, principātus, ūs, m.

1. **leading man**, prin-ceps, -cipis, m.

2. **leading place**, principātus, ūs, m.

leap down, dē-siliō, fre, -siluī, -sultum.

learn, cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum.

lease, red-imō, ere, -ēmi, -emptum.

1. **leave** (=leave behind), re-linquo, ere, -liqui, -lictum.

2. **leave** (=go away from), ab . . . dis-cēdō, ere, -cēssi, -cēssum.

3. **leave** (=go out of), ex . . . ē-gredior, i, -gressus sum.

leave open, =did not attempt to keep from invading.

left, sinister, tra, trum.

legion, leg-iō, -iōnis, f.

legionary, legiōnārius, i, m. (in II., Ex. 33, use the plur.).

lend, use ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum (=bring).

length, in —, express by using genitive of characteristic.

less, minus, adv.

lest, nē.

letter, litterae, ārum, f. plur.; epistola, ae, f.

let slip, dē-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum.

1. **levy**, verb, cōn-scribō, ere, -scripsi, -scriptum.

2. **levy**, noun, dēlectus, ūs, m.; **latest levies** = which had been last levied.

liberality, liberālī-tās, -tātis, f.

1. **liberty**, liber-tās, -tātis, f.

2. **liberty**, **be at**—, licet, v. dat., impersonal.

lie (=be situated), use sum, =be.

lieutenant, légātus, i, m.

life, vita, ae, f.; (in phrase **cost life**, say cost death).

light (=estimation), use locus, i, m. (=place).

light armed, use levis armātūrae, =of light armor.

like, similis, e, v. dat.

likely, **be - to**, use future participle in -ūrus with sum; [or volō, velle, voluī].

1. **line**, **line of battle**, aciēs, ei, f.

2. **line of march**, ag-men, -minis, n.

linger, moror, āri, ātus sum.

1. **little**, a —, paulum; (v. ante), paulō, adv.

2. **little**, **be within a very — of**, minimum abesse, v. quīn and subjunctive.

live, vivō, ere, vixī, vīctum; [on, =abl.].

lofty, altus, a, um.

1. **long**, adj., longus, a, um.

2. **long**, adv., diū; **longer**, diūtius.

3. **long**, **as — as**, dum, conj.

long-defended, express by a relative clause.

lose, ā-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum; (=let slip), dī-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum; (of losing men in battle), dēper-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum.

loss, dētrīmentum, i, n.

loss (=disaster), calamī-tās, -tātis, f.; (=disadvantage), dētrīmentum, i, n.; (of loss in battle), use amittō=lose, or interficiō=slay.

lot, fortūna, ae, f.

loud, māgnus, a, um.

love, dī-ligō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum; amō, āre, āvi, ātum.

low, humilis, e.

lower, infer-ior, -ius.

Lucius, Lūcius, i, m.

M

madden, in-cendō, ere, -cendi, -cēnsum.

made, **be**—, fiō, fieri, factus sum.

madness, fur-or, -ōris, m.

magistrate, magistrātus, ūs, m.

1. **make**, faciō, ere, feci, factum.

2. **make a march**, iter (gen. itineris n.), faciō, ere, feci, factum.

3. **make ready**, comparō, āre, āvi, ātum.

4. **make use of**, ūtor, i, ūsus sum, v. abl.

5. **make war on**, bellum inferō, inferre, intuli, illātum, v. dat.

1. **man**, vir, viri, m.; homō, hominis, m.; (=soldier), mil-es, -itis, m., or often by the possessive pronouns (footnote 2, page 64).

2. **man**, **to a**—, ad ūnum omnēs.

manner, rat-iō, -iōnis, f.

many, multi, ae, a; if followed by another adjective, supply et or -que, =and; how many, quot, indeclinable; so many, tot, indeclinable; very many, permulti, ae, a.

1. **march**, verb, iter faciō, ere, feci, factum, =make a march; [conten-dō, ere, -di, -tum].

2. **march**, noun, iter, itineris, n.

3. **march**, **line of**—, ag-men, -minis, n.

4. **March** (the month), Martius, a, um, adi.

Marius, Marius, i, m.

marriage, **give in**—, nūptum (supine) dō, dare, dedi, datum.

married, nūptus, a, um.

marsh, pal-ūs, -ūdis, f.

Mary, Maria, ae, f.

massed, **to be**—, con veniō, ire, -vēni, -ventum (=assemble).

Massilia, Massilia, ae, f.

master, **become**—of, potiōr, iri, itus sum, v. abl.

material, māteria, ae, f.; agger, aggeris, m.

matter, rēs, rei, f.

may, licet, impersonal v. dat.

mean, volō, velle, voluī, v. dat. of reflexive pronoun.

1. **means of approach**, aditus, ūs, m.

2. **means**, **by no**—, nēquāquam, adv.

3. **means**, **by**—of, per, prep. v. acc.

meantime, in the —, intēreā.

measure, cōnsilium, i, n.

meet with, nanciscor, I, nactus or nactus sum, *w. acc.*

memory, memoria, ae, *F.*

mention, commemorō, āre, āvī, ātum.

merchant, mercātor, -tōris, *M.*

merciful disposition, clementia (ae, *F.*) āc mānsuetūdō (-dinis, *F.*).

merit, vir-tūs, -tūtis, *F.*

merited, meritus, a, um.

message, nūntius, I, *M.*

messenger, nūntius, I, *M.*

middle, use medius, a, um, *adj.*

midnight, media nox (noctis, *F.*).

mildst, use medius, a, um, *adj.*

mile, = a thousand paces.

military, militāris, e.

milk, lāc, lactis, *N.*

mischief, maleficium, I, *N.*

missile, telum, I, *N.*

mode, gen-us, eris, *N.*

Mona, Mona, ae, *F.*

money, sum of money, pecūnia, ae, *F.* [(=coin), nūmmus, I, *M.*].

month, mēns-is, -is, *M.*

more, plūs, ampliūs.

Morini, Morinī, ōrum, *M.*

morning, on the following morning, postridiē ejus diēi māne.

morning, on the—, postridiē, *adv.*

mortal (=deadly), mortifer, era, erum.

most, mǎximē, or use superlative.

mountain, mōns, montis, *M.*

1. move, moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum.

2. move forward, prō-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.

multitude, multitūdō, -dinis, *F.*

1. must, use gerundive passive with sum.

2. must needs, necesse est, *w. dat.*

my, meus, a, um.

N

name, nō-men, -minis, *N.*

nation, nāt-iō, -iōnis, *F.*

native land, patria, ae, *F.*

nature, nātūra, ae, *F.*

naval battle, nāvālis pūgna, ae, *F.*

nearer, propius, *adv.*

nearest, proximus, a, um.

1. need, verb, use opus est (=there is need), impersonal, *w. abl.*

2. need, noun, ūsus, ūs, *M.*

neglect, neg-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.

neighbor, finitimus, I, *M.*

neighborhood, in the of, prope, *prep. w. acc.*

neighboring, finitimus, a, um.

1. neither, *adj.*, neuter, tra, trum [14].

2. neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque.

Nervii, Nervī, ōrum, *M. plur.*

news of disaster, =disaster announced.

next, posterus, a, um; proximus, a, um.

night, nox, noctis, *F.*

nine, novem.

ninth, nōnus, a, um.

no, nullus, a, um [14].

no one, nēmō; *gen.*, nullius; *acc.*, nēminem; *abl.*, nullō; that no one, nē quis.

noble, nōbilis, e.

noise, strepitus, ūs, *M.*

Nola, Nōla, ae, *F.*

none, nullus, a, um [14].

nor, neque.

northern parts of island, use extrēmī finēs, =remotest territories.

1. not, nōn (in final and imperative clauses, ne); and not, neque (or in final clauses, nēve, neu).

2. not a man, =no one.

3. not yet, nōndum.

noted for, in II., Ex. 32, say could not use to any advantage.

nothing, nihil, *N.*, indeclinable.

notice, at a moment's—, statim, *adv.*

November, November, bris, bre, *adj.*

now (=by this time), jam; (=at this present time, nunc).

1. number, numerus, I, *M.* [or use clause with quot =how many].

2. number, large—, multitūdō, -dinis, *F.*; māgnus numerus, I, *M.*

3. number, great numbers, =large number (use sing.).

4. number, to the— of, use ad *w. acc.*

numerous, crēber, bra, brun; [multi, ae, a].

O

oak, rōb-ur, -oris, *N.*

1. oath, jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandi, *N.*[9].

2. oath, take an—, jūrō, āre, āvī, ātum.

obedient, be—, pāreō, ēre, uī.

obey, pāreō, ēre, uī, *w. dat.*; obtemperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. dat.*

objections, raise—, recūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. quōminus and subjunctive.*

observe, videō, ēre, vidī, visum.

obstinately, summā pertināciā.

obtain a request, impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum.

occupy, ob-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.

October, Octōber, bris, bre, *adj.*

of (=about), de, *w. abl.*

1. officer, lēgātus, I, *M.*

2. officer, cavalry—, praefectus (I, *M.*) equitum.

old, vet-us, -eris.

on (of place where), in *w. abl.*; (of time when), use *abl. only*; (of making attack on), in *w. acc.*; (of direction), ab or ex *w. abl.*; (=concerning), de *w. abl.*

on account of, propter, *w. acc.*

1. once, at—, statim, *adv.*

2. once more, =again.

1. one, ūnus, a, um [14]; one hundred, centum; no one, nēmō.

2. one another, inter sē.

3. one at a time, singulāris, e, *adj.*

4. one, the one . . . the other, alter . . . alter.

only, ūnus, a, um, *adj.*

onset, impetus, ūs, m.

1. **open**, pate-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factus sum; *passive* pate-fiō, -fierī, -factus sum.

2. **open, leave**—, *in II.*, *Ex. 33.*, = *did not attempt to keep from invading.*

1. **opinion**, sententia, ae, f.

2. **opinion, be of the**—, existimō, āre, āvī, ātum.

opportune, opportūnus, a, um.

opportunely, oportūnē.

1. **opportunity**, occās-iō, -iōnis, f.; facultās, -tātis, f.; [potes-tās, -tātis, f.].

2. **opportunity, give**—, facultātem dare, or potestātem facere.

1. **oppose** (= resist), repūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. dat.*

2. **oppose** (= set in opposition), op-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum.

or, aut; (*in questions*), an; **or not** (*in questions*) annōn (*direct*), necne (*indirect*).

1. **order, jubeō**, ēre, jūssī, jūssum; imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. dat.*

2. **orders, give**—, imperō, āre, āvī, ātum.

3. **orders, receive**—, jūbeor, ērī, jūssus sum, (= *be ordered*).

4. **order, in that**—, ut, nē.

5. **order, in — to**, ut, causā, ad.

Orgetorix, Orgetor-ix, -igris, m.

Ostorius, Ostōrius, i, m.

1. **other, another, alius**, a, ud [14].

2. **other, the**—, (*of two*), alter, era, erum [14]; (= *the remaining*), reliquus, a, um.

3. **others, the**—, reliquī, ae, a; ceterī, ae, a.

ought, use gerundive passive with sum, [dēbeō, ēre, nī; oportet, ēre, oportuit].

our, noster, tra, trum.

out of, ex, ē, *w. abl.*

outer, exterior, -ius.

outflank, ab lateribus circum-veniō, ire, -vērī, -ventum.

outside, go—of, ē-gredior, i, -gressus sum, *w. extrā and acc.*

over (*of bridges over rivers*), in, *w. abl.*

overwhelm, op-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum.

owing, is—to, stō, stāre, stetī, statum, *w. per and acc.*

own, use possessive pronouns with or without ipsius, ipsōrum.

P

1. **pace**, passus, ūs, m.

2. **pace, slacken**—, dē celeritāte remittor, i, -missus sum, *passive*.

1. **panic, tim-or, -ōris, m.**

2. **panic, throw into a**—, perterreō, ēre, uī, itum.

1. **pardon, verb**, i-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, *w. dat.*

2. **pardon, noun**, venia, ae, f.

parent, par-ēns, -entis, m. or f.

1. **part, pars, partis, f.**; *in II.*, *Ex. 13, 10, not translated.*

2. **part, in**—, partim, *adv.*

3. **part, on his**—, autem, *adv.*

4. **part, on—of**, *in II.*, *Ex. 28, not translated.*

5. **part, for the most**—, māximam partem.

6. **part, take—in**, inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, *w. dat.*

participate in, inter sum, -esse, -fuī, *w. dat.*

party, fact-iō, -iōnis, f.

1. **pass** (= go), eō, ire, īī (ivī), itum.

2. **pass beyond**, ē-gredior, i, -gressus sum, *with extrā and acc.*

3. **pass the winter**, hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum.

peace, pāx, pācis, f.

penetrate (*of report*), = *be carried*.

people, populus, i, m.

perceive, cōn-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spec-tum; intel-lego, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.

perch, victory—on banners, use vincō or superō, = *conquer*.

perhaps, fortassē.

peril, periculum, i, n.; **to the**—, cum periculō.

permission, have—, licet, licēre, lic-uit, *impersonal, w. dat.*

1. **permit, patior, i, passus sum**.

2. **permitted, be**—, licet, *impersonal w. dat.*

1. **person** (= a man), untranslated.

2. **person, in**—, ipse, a, um, = *himself*.

persuade, persuādēō, ēre, -sī, -sum, *w. dat.*

pillage, praedor, ārī, ātus sum.

pilum, pilum, i, n.

pitch (*of a camp*), pōnō, ere, posuī, positum.

pity, feel—for, misereor, ērī, itus sum, *w. gen*

1. **place, verb**, pōnō, ere, posui, positum; collocō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. **place, noun**, locus, i, m. *sing.*; loca, ōrum, n. *plur.*

3. **place, leading**—, principātus, ūs, m.

4. **place, in that**—, ibi, *adv.*

5. **place, to that**—, eō, *adv.*

plan, cōnsilium, i, n.

pleasing, grātus, a, um.

plenty, cōpia, ae, f.

plunder, praeda, ae, f.

1. **point out, doceō**, ere, uī; os-tendō, ere, -tendī, -tentum.

2. **point, be on the—of, use fut. part.** *in ūrus with sum.*

3. **point, on that**—, = *about that*. (II. 94.)

pole, sud-is, -is, f.

political change, novae rēs, f. plur.

popular, acceptus, a, um.

population, = those inhabiting.

port, portus, ūs, m.

portion, pars, partis, f.

1. **position**, locus, I, M.; [or use quō in locō, with clause]. In II., Ex. 31 and 32, use castra.

2. **position, keep a** -, cōn sistō, ere, -stiti.

3. **position, take up**-, cōn-sidō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum.

possess, ob-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum; pos sideō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum.

1. **possessions, their**-, sua, ōrum, N. plur.

2. **possession, take of**, occupō, āre, āvi, ātum, v. acc.

possibility, potes-tās, -tātis, F.

possible, as . . . as -, quam, with superlative.

posterity, posterī, ōrum, M. plur.

1. **power, royal** -, **chief** -, **supreme** -, rēgnum, I, N.

2. **power, gain the sovereign of**, potior, Irī, itus sum, v. gen.

3. **power, in one's** -, in II., Ex. 25, use apud, prep., v. acc.

1. **powerful**, firinus, a, um; pot-ēns, -entis.

2. **powerful, be most** -, plūrimum pos-sum, posse, potui.

practice, cōnsuetū-dō, -dinis, F.

1. **praise**, verb, laudō, āre, āvi, ātum.

2. **praise**, noun, laus, laudis, F.

pray for, dēprecor, ārī, ātus sum, v. acc.

precedent, exemplum, I, N.

preceding, super-ior, -ius.

prefer (with nouns), ante-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum; (with the infinitive) mālō, malle, mālui.

preparations, make for, comparō, āre, āvi, ātum, v. ad and acc.

prepare, parō, āre, āvi, ātum.

1. **present**, donō, āre, āvi, ātum.

2. **present, be** -, ad-sum, -esse, -fui.

preserve, re-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.

1. **press forward**, in-stō, āre, -stiti.

2. **press hard**, urgeō, ēre, ursi; premō, ere, pressi, pressum.

3. **press upon them**, =press forward.

prevail, superō, āre, āvi, ātum.

prevent, prohibeō, ēre, ui, itum.

previous, super-ior, -ius.

previously, ante.

price, pretium, I, N.

priest, sacer-dōs, -dōtis, M.

prince, in II., Ex. 26, not to be translated.

prisoner, captivus, I, M.

private, privātus, a, um.

proceed, prō-gredior, I, gressus sum; prō-cēdō, ere, -cēssi, -cēssum.

proceedings, =things.

procure, parō, āre, āvi, ātum; comparō, āre, āvi, ātum.

produce, ef-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

promise, polliceor, ēri, itus sum.

prompt, hortor, ārī, ātus sum; im-pellō, ere, -puli, -pulsam.

protect, muniō, Ire, Ivi, itum.

protection, praesidium, I, N.

protract, prō-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum.

provide for, prō-vidēō, ēre, -vidi, -vī-sum, v. d t. or acc.

prove, probō, āre, āvi, ātum.

provided that, dum.

province, prōvincia, ae, F.

provisions, commeātus, ūs, M. (use the singular).

provoke to battle, laces-ō, ere, -Ivi, -itum.

proWess, vir-tūs, -tūtis, F.; **military prowess**, use quid virtūte possent.

punish, ulciscor, I, ultus sum.

punishment, supplicium, I, N.

pupil, discipulus, I, M.

1. **purpose**, rēs, rei, F.

2. **purpose, for the** -of, causā, v. gen. preceding.

1. **purse**, prō-sequor, I, -secūtus sum; cōn-sequor, I, -secūtus sum; sequor, I, sec tus sum.

2. **pursue a march**, iter faciō (ere, fēcī, factum).

pursuit, =those pursuing.

push forward (or onward), conten-dō, ere, -di, -tum.

1. **put**, collocō, āre, āvi, ātum; pōnō, ere, posui, positum.

2. **put in** (chains), con-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, with in and acc.

3. **put to death**, inter-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

4. **put spurs to a horse**, equum ad-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum.

5. **put on a brave face**, vultum fingō, ere, finxi, fictum.

6. **put an end to**, finem faciō, ere, fēcī, factum, v. gen.

Q

1. **quarters, from all** -, undique, adv.

2. **quarters, winter** -, hiberna, ōrum, N. plur.

queen, rēgīna, ae, F.

question, quaerō, ere, quaesivi, quaesitum.

quickly, celeriter.

quickness, celeri-tās, -tātis, F.

R

rage, the battle rages, pūgnātur, impersonal passive.

raise (=collect), comparō, āre, āvi, ātum.

rampart, vallum, I, N.

rank, ōr-dō, -dinis, M.

rate, at any -, certē.

1. **rather**, potius, magis.

2. **rather, had** -, mālō, malle, mālui.

reach, per-venio, Ire, -vēni, -ventum, with ad or in and acc.

readily, (=without cause), temerē.

1. **ready**, parātus, a, um; [for or to, =ad v. acc.].

2. **ready, make** -, comparō, āre, āvi, ātum.

3. **ready, get**— (of arms), *expediō, ire, ivi, itum; (of vessels), parō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
- rear**, *novissimum ag-men (-minis), n.; In the rear, ā tergō, or āversus, a, um, in agreement; to the rear, ad novissimos.*
- reason**, *causa, ae, f.; [or use clause with cūr or quamobrem].*
- rebuild**, *restit-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum.*
- recall**, *revocō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
1. **receive**, *ac-cipio, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum.*
2. **receive orders** = *be ordered.*
- recent**, *rec-ēns, -entis.*
- recover** (= *win back*), *reciperō, āre, āvi, ātum; [(= regain courage), sē re-cipio, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum].*
- redoubt**, *castellum, l, n.*
- refrain**, *temperō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
- refuse** (= *object*), *recūsō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
- regain**, *reciperō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
- regard**, *habeō, ēre, ui, itum.*
- regiment**, *leg-iō, -iōnis, f.*
- region**, *reg-iō, -iōnis, f.*
- regular** (of troops), *legiōnārius, a, um*
- reign, in the—of**, *use abl. absolute of regnāns=ruling.*
- reinforcements**, *subsidiūm, l, n.*
- relationship**, *cōgnāt-iō, -iōnis, f.*
- reliance, place — on**, *cōn-fidō, ere, -fisis sum, w. dat. (III. 68, b.)*
- reluctance, with—**, *invitus, a, um, adj. in agreement.*
- relying on**, *frētus, a, um, w. abl.*
- remain**, *re-maneō, ēre, -mānsi, -māns-um; maneō; permanēō.*
- remaining**, *reliquus, a, um.*
- remember**, *memoriam re-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum, w. gen.; [memini, isse; imperative, memento, -tote; reminisco, l].*
- Remi**, *Rēmi, ōrum, m. plur.*
- remind**, *commone-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum.*
- remove**, *rē-moveō, ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum; [of removing contest, ā-moveō, ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum].*
- renew**, *renovō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
- renewal**, *use the verb renovō = renew.*
- renown**, *fāma, ae, f.; glōria, ae, f.; laus, laudis, f.*
- reply**, *re-spondeō, ēre, -spondi, -spōnsum.*
1. **report, verb**, *nūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum; renūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
2. **report, noun**, *fāma, ae, f.*
3. **report, bring—**, *fāmam per-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, or use nūntio, = announce.*
- republic**, *rēspūblica, reipublicae [9], f.*
1. **request**, *pet-ō, ere, -ivi, -itum, with ab and abk.*
2. **request, gain —, obtain —**, *impetrō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
- require**, *imperō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
- reserve**, *subsidiūm, l, n.*
- resist**, *re-sistō, ere, -stiti, w. dat.*
- resistance, valiant—**, *use the phrase resisting valiantly.*
- resolution**, *cōnsiliūm, l, n.; form a resolution*, *cōnsiliūm in-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum.*
- resolve**, *cōnstit-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum.*
- resources**, *opēs, um, f. plur.*
- respect, in no—**, *nōn.*
- respond**, *re-spondeō, ēre, -spondi, -spōnsum.*
1. **rest, verb**, *pōnō, ere, posui, positum.*
2. **rest, victory rests upon**, *use vincō, = conquer.*
3. **rest, noun**, *use reliquus, a, um, adj.*
- restore**, *red-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum.*
- restrain**, *con-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum; prohibeō, ēre, ui, itum; [(of restraining tears), teneō, ēre, tenui, tentum].*
1. **result, be the —**, *fiō, fieri, factus sum.*
2. **result in**, *sum, esse, fui, with cum and abl. (= be attended with).*
- retainer**, *cli-ēns, -entis, m.*
- retire**, *sē re-cipio, ere, -cēpi, ceptum; sē cōn-ferō, -ferre, contuli, collātum; [upon, = ad, w. acc.].*
1. **retreat, verb**, *pedem re-ferō (-ferre, -tuli, -lātum); sē re-cipio, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum.*
2. **retreat, noun**, *receptus, ūs, m.; fuga, ae, f.*
3. **retreat, means of —**, *receptus, ūs, m.*
4. **retreat, beat a—**, *se re-cipio, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum.*
1. **return, verb**, *re-vertor, i, -versus sum; [red-eō, -ire, -ii (-ivi), -itum].*
2. **return, noun, use clause with verb.**
- revenue**, *vectig-al, -ālis, n.*
- revolt**, *dē-ficio, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.*
- reward**, *praemium, l, n.*
- Rhine**, *Rhēnus, l, m.*
- Rhone**, *Rhodanus, l, m.*
- ride up**, *adequitō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
1. **right, noun**, *jūs, jūris, n.*
2. **right, adj.**, *dexter, tra, trum.*
- ripe**, *mātūrus, a, um.*
- rival**, *adaequō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
- river**, *flū-men, -minis, n.*
- road**, *via, ae, f.; iter, itineris, n.*
- roam about**, *vagor, āri, ātus sum.*
- Roman**, *Rōmānus, l, m.; (adj.) Rōmānus, a, um.*
1. **Rome (as a place)**, *Rōma, ae, f.; at Rome, Rōmae.*
2. **Rome (as a nation)**, *populus (l, m.) Rōmānus = the Roman people.*
3. **Rome, of — (= Roman)**, *Rōmānus, a, um.*
- rout**, *fugō, āre, āvi, ātum; fundō, ere, fūdi, fūsum.*
- route**, *iter, itineris, n.*
- royal power**, *regnum, l, n.*
- rubbish**, *agger, aggeris, m.*
- rude artillery**, *in II., Ex. 32, omit in translation.*
- rudely**, *negligenter.*

- rugged**, asper, era, erum.
rule, imperium, i, n.
ruler, prin-ceps, -cipis, m.; *or use* regō, ere, rēxi, rēctum, =*rule*.
run down, dē-currō, ere, -curri or -cu-curri, -cursum.
 1. **rush to arms**, con currō, ere, -curri or -cucurri, -cursum.
 2. **rush out**, sē ē-jiciō, ere, -jēci, -jectum.

S

- Sabis**, Sab-is, -is, m.
sacred, sacer, era, crum.
safeguard, praesidium, i, n.
safety, sal-us, -ūtis, f.; **in safety**, use incolumis, e, *adj.*, =*safe*.
sail, nāvīgō, āre, āvi, ātum.
sailor, nauta, ae, m.
sake, for the—of, causā, *v. gen. preceding*.
sally, erupt-iō, -iōnis, f.
same, idem, eadem, idem.
satisfaction, give—, satis-faciō, ere, -fēci, -factum.
save (=rescue), ē-ripiō, ere, -ripiui, -reptum, *with ex and abl.*; (=spare), cōn-servō, āre, āvi, ātum.
say, dicō, ere, dixi, dictum; *if followed by negative, use* negō, āre, āvi, ātum, =*denu*.
scarcely, vix.
scarcity, inopia, ae, f.
Scots, Scōti, ōrum, m. *plur*.
scout, explorā-tor, -tōris, m.
 1. **sea**, mare, maris, n.
 2. **sea, on the—**, maritimus, a, um, *adj*.
 3. **sea coast**, ōra (ae, f.) maritima.
 1. **second**, secundus, a, um.
 2. **second, a — time**, iterum, *adv*.
secure, mūniō, ĩre, ĩvi, ĩtum.
see, vidēo, ere, vidi, visum.
seek, pet-ō, ere, -ivi, -itum; appet-ō, ere, -ivi, -itum.
seem, videor, ĩri, visus sum, *passive*.
seize (=take possession of), occupō, āre, āvi, ātum; (*with impedimenta*), potior, ĩri, ĩtus sum; (=take prisoner), comprehendo, ere, -hendi, -hensum.
select, dē-ligō, ere, -lēgi, -lectum.
senate, senātus, ūs, m.
 1. **send**, mittō, ere, misi, missum.
 2. **send forward, send in advance**, prae-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum.
separate, di-vidō, ere, -visti, -visum.
September, September, bris, bre, *adj*.
Sequani, Sequani, ōrum, m. *plur*.
seriously, graviter.
 1. **set fire to**, in-cendō, ere, -cendi, -cēnsium, *v. acc*.
 2. **set out**, pro-ficiscor, i, -fectus sum.
 3. **set sail**, nāvēs solvō, ere, solvi, solūtum, =*loose the ships*.
 4. **set to**, in II., Ex. 30, *render by imperfect tense*.
settle (=take up position), cōn-sidō, ere, -sēdi, sessum; [(=*decide*), cōnstit-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum].

- seven**, septem.
seventh, septimus, a, um.
seventy, septuagintā.
several, complūr-ēs, -ium; [*aliquot, in-declinable*].
severe, gravis, e.
shameful, turpis, e.
shatter, af-fligō, ere, -flixi, -flictum.
 1. **ship**, nāv-is, -is, f.
 2. **ship of war**, nāvis longa.
shock, impetus, ūs, m.
shore, lit-us, -oris, n.
 1. **short**, brevis, e.
 2. **short, (for) a short time**, paulisper.
shortly, brevī.
should, =*ought, use gerundive with sum*.
shout, clām-or, -ōris, m.
show, osten-dō, ere, -di, -tum.
shudder at, horreō, ĩre, ui, *v. acc*.
shut up, ab-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum.
 1. **side**, lat-us, -eris, n.; pars, partis, f.
 2. **side, from all sides**, undique, *adv*.
 3. **side, on both sides**, utrinque, *adv*.
 4. **side, on this —**, cis or citrā, *prep. v. acc*.
 5. **side, on the other — of**, trāns, *prep. v. acc*.
sight, cōnspectus, ūs, m.
sign, obsignō, āre, āvi, ātum.
signal, signum, i, n.
 1. **silent**, tacitus, a, um.
 2. **silent, be—**, taceō, ere, ui.
Siluria, Siluria, ae, f.
similar, similis, e.
since, cum.
six, sex; **six hundred**, sescenti, ae, a.
sixteenth, sextus (a, um) decimus (a, um).
sixty, sexagintā.
size, magnitū-dō, -dinis, f.; [*or use clause with quantus, a, um*].
skirmish, proelium (i, n.) leve or parvulum.
slaughter, caed-ēs, -is, f.
slave, servus, i, m.
slavery, servi-tūs, -tūtis, f.
slay, inter-ficiō, ere, -fēci, -fectum; occidō, ere, -cidi, -cisum.
sling, funda, ae, f.
slinger, fundi-tor, -tōris, m.
sloping, declivis, e.
small, parvus, a, um.
smaller, min-or, -us.
snatch away, ē-ripiō, ere, -ripiui, -reptum; [*from, use dat.*].
so (=to such an extent), tam; (=therefore), itaque; **so great**, tantus, a, um.
soldier, mil-es, -itis, m.
 1. **some** (=some or other), ali-quis, -qua, -quid or -quod; [(=*a few*), nōnnulli, ae, a].
 2. **some . . . others**, alii . . . alii.
 3. **some one**, aliquis.
 4. **some day**, aliquandō.
son, filius, i, m.

son-in-law, gener, eri, m.
sooner, = *rather*.
soon, as — as, simul atque.
sorry, be—, paenitet, *impersonal*.
1. sort, of what—, quālis, e, *adj.*
2. sort, what sort of man, quālis, e, = *of what sort*.
south, in *II.*, Ex. 33, say the lower part of the island.
1. sovereign, female—, rēgīna, ae, f.
2. sovereign, gain the—power of, potior, iri, itus sum, *w. gen.*
space, spatium, i, n.
spare, parcō, ere, peperci, *w. dat.*
speak, dicō, ere, dixi, dictum.
spear, hasta, ae, f.
specified, certus, a, um.
special, show — indulgence = indulge specially.
specially, praecipuē.
speech, orāt-iō, -iōnis, f.
speed, celeritās, -tātis, f.
speedily, celeriter.
spend, cōn-simō, ere, -sūmpsi, -sūmp-tum.
spirit, animus, i, m.; [vir-tūs, -tūtis, f.].
spirited, use ācritē = *in a spirited manner*.
spy, speculā-tor, -tōris, m.
squadron, turma, ae, f.
stain, in-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
stand one's ground, cōn-sistō, ere, -stiti.
1. standard, sīgnum, i, n.
2. standard bearer, = he who bore the standard.
state, civi-tās, -tātis, f.; rēspūblica, rei-pūblica, f. [9.]
statement, vōx, vōcis, f.; [or use dicō = *say*].
station, colloc, āre, āvi, ātum.
steep, prae-ceps, -cipitis; [arduus, a, um].
stimulate, excitō, āre, āvi, ātum.
stir up, incitō, āre, āvi, ātum.
stockade, vallum, i, n.
1. stone (for building), saxum, i, n.; [for hurling], lap-is, -idis, m.
2. stone, leave no — unturned, nihil praeter-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum.
stop, cōn-sistō, ere, -stiti.
1. storm, verb, expūgnō, āre, āvi, ātum.
2. storm, noun, tempestās, -tātis, f.
3. storm, take by—, = *storm, (verb)*.
stratagem, cōnsilium, i, n.
1. stream, rivus, i, m.; flū-men, -minis, n.
2. stream, a land of streams, = which has many streams, or where there are many streams.
street, via, ae, f.
strength, firmitū-dō, -dinis, f.
strengthen, firmō, āre, āvi, ātum; [mūniō, ire, ivi, itum].
stretch, pertinēō, ere, uī.
strike terror into the hearts of, timōrem in-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *w. dat.*

strive, conten-dō, ere, -di, -tum; [nitro, i, nisus sum].
strong, be—, valeō, ēre, uī.
1. struggle, verb, labōrō, āre, āvi, ātum.
2. struggle, noun, certā-men, -minis, n.; bellum, i, n.
subjection, servi-tūs, -tūtis, f.
submit, serviō, ire, ivi, itum.
successfully, bene; [fēliciter].
successive, continuus, a, um.
1. such (= so great), tantus, a, um.
2. such, of — a character, tālis, e.
3. such . . . as, in II. Ex. 3, use quī w. subjunctive.
1. sudden, repentinus, a, um.
2. sudden, make a sudden attack, use subitō, *adv.*, = *suddenly*.
suddenly, subitō.
suffer (= receive), ac-cipiō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum; (= *allow*), patior, i, passus sum.
sufficient, sufficiently, satis.
suggestion, at the—of, use auc-tor, -tōris, m., = *suggester, in abl. absol.*
suitable, idōneus, a, um.
summer, aes-tās, -tātis, f.
summon (of several persons), convocō, āre, āvi, ātum; (*of one person*), vocō, āre, āvi, ātum.
superior, be—, prae-stō, āre, -stiti.
1. supplies, commēātus, ūs, m.
2. supplies of corn, rēs frūmentāria.
suppose, arbitror, āri, ātus sum; jūdicō, āre, āvi, ātum.
supreme power, rēgnum, i, n.
sure, be—not to, cavē, *w. subjunctive*.
surpass, prae-stō, āre, -stiti, *w. dat.*; ante-cedō, ere, -cēssi, -cēssum.
1. surrender, verb, transitive, dē-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum; *intransitive*, sē dēdō
2. surrender, verb (of giving up arms), trā-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum.
3. surrender, noun, dēdit-iō, -iōnis, f.
surround, circum-veniō, ire, -vēni, -ventum; [(= *put round*), circum-dō, -dare, -dedi, -datum; (= *overwhelm*), circum-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fūsum].
swamp, pal-ūs, -ūdis, f.
swarms, multītū-dō, -dinis, f.
sway, dic-iō, -iōnis, f.
swiftness, celeritās, -tātis, f.
swim, nō, nāre.
swimmer, be a—, = *can swim*.
sword, gladius, i, m.

T

Tacfarinas, Tacfarinas, ae, m.
Tarentum, Tarentum, i, n.
1. take, capiō, ere, cēpi, captum; (*of taking a census*), habeo, ēre, uī, itum.
2. take away, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum.
3. take up (= fill up), contineō, ēre, uī; (*of taking up arms*), capiō, ere, cēpi, captum.
4. take up a position, cōn-sidō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum.

taught, be—, discō, ere, didicī, =learn; (be taught by, =learn from.

teacher, magis-ter, -trī, m.

tear, lacrima, ae, f.; **in tears**, =weeping.

tear down, scindō, ere, scidī, scissum.

tell, dicō, ere, dixī, dictum, *v. dat. of person.*

tempest, tempe-tās, -tātis, f.

ten, decem.

tent, tabernāculum, ī, n.

tenth, decimus, a, um.

terms, condic-iō, -iōnis, f. (use sing.).

terrify, terreō, ēre, ut, itum.

territory, ager, agrī, m.; fin-ēs, -ium, m. plur.

terror, terr-or, -ōris, m.; tim-or, -ōris, m.

test, periclitōr, ārī, ātus sum.

Thames, Tames-is, -is, m.; (acc. in -im).

than, quam.

1. **that**, pronoun, is, ea, id; emphatic, ille, a, ud.

2. **that**, conj., with noun clauses untranslated; with clauses of purpose, ut, nē; with clauses of result, ut.

their, suus, a, um; or eōrum.

then (=next), deinde.

there (=in that place), ibi; (=to that place), eō; (as introductory adverb), untranslated.

thereupon, tum.

they, eī, eae, ea.

thing, rēs, rei, f.; or in nom. and acc. use neuter of adj. or pronoun.

think, existimō, āre, āvi, ātum; arbitror, ārī, ātus sum.

third, tertius, a, um.

thirty, trigintā.

this, hic, haec, hōc.

though, =although. (II. 88.)

thousand, mille.

threaten, minor, ārī, ātus sum, *v. dat. of person and acc. of thing.*

three, trēs, tria; **three hundred**, trecentī, ae, a.

through, per, *v. acc.*

1. **throw** (of weapons), ad-igō, ere, -ēgī, -actum; con-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.

2. **throw** (into chains), con-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.

3. **throw oneself**, sē prō-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum; **throw oneself into**, ir-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *v. in and acc.*; **throw oneself in front of**, se offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātum, *v. dat.*

4. **throw away**, ab-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.

5. **throw down**, ab-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.

6. **throw out**, ob-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum.

7. **throw together**, coacervō, āre, āvi, ātum.

thus, itaque.

1. **time**, temp-us, -oris, n.

2. **time, a second —**, iterum, *adv.*

3. **time, a short —**, paulisper, *adv.*

4. **time, at that—**, tum, *adv.*; or *literally.*

5. **time, for a —**, aliquamdiū.

6. **time, one at a —**, singulāris, e, *adj.*

to, ad, *v. acc.*; in, *v. acc.*

to-day, hōdiē, *adv.*

to-morrow, crās, *adv.*

top, use summa, a, um, *adj.*

tortoise, testū-dō, -dōnis, f.

total, use summa, ae, f.; (noun, =sum total).

tower, turr-is, -is, f.; (acc. in -im).

towards, ad, *v. acc.*

town, oppidum, ī, n.

trader, mercā-tor, -tōris, m.

1. **transport**, verb, trānsportō, āre, āvi, ātum.

2. **transport**, *adj.*, onerārius, a, um.

traveller, viā-tor, -tōris, m.

treachery, perfidia, ae, f.

treat, agō, ere, ēgī, āctum.

tree, arb-or, -oris, f.

trench, fossa, ae, f.

tribe, nāt-iō, -iōnis, f.

tribune, tribūnus, ī, m.

trifling, levis, e.

triple, tri-plex, -plicis.

troopers, =cavalry.

troops, militēs, um, m.; cōpiae, ārum, f.

trunk, truncus, ī, m.

trust, cōn-fidō, ere, -fisis sum.

1. **try**, cōnor, ārī, ātus sum; or use the imperfect tense of the verb.

2. **try to influence**, try to win over, sollicitō, āre, āvi, ātum.

3. **try to prevent**, prohibeō, ēre, in pres., imperf., or fut. tense.

1. **turn aside**, ā-vertō, ere, -vertī, -ver-sum.

2. **turn back**, ver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum.

twelve, duodecim.

twenty, vigintī; **twenty-fifth**, vī-cēsīmus (a, um) quintus (a, um).

twice, bis.

two, duo, duae, duo; **two hundred**, ducentī, ae, a.

U

unable, be—, nōn possum, posse, potui, aggeris, m.

uncertain, incertus, a, um.

under, sub, prep. *v. abl.*

undertake, sus-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -cep-tum.

undertaking, cōnātus, ūs, m.

understand, intel-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lēc-tum.

unequal to, in II., Ex. 33 = since they could not bear.

unexhausted, rec-ēns, -entis.

unfavorable, aliēnus, a, um; iniquus, a, um; [incommodus, a, um].

unfriendly, inimicus, a, um.

unknown, incōgnitus, a, um.

unless, nisi.

unoccupied, be—, vacō, āre, āvi, ātum.

unsuccessful, adversus, a, um.

1. **until**, *conj.*, dum, donec.

2. **until**, *prep.*, ad, w. acc.

returned, leave no stone—, nihil praetermittō, ere, -misi, -missum.

unwilling, be—, nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi.

uphold, cōservō, āre, āvī, ātum.

upon, in, w. acc.

upper, super-ior, -ius.

uprising, mōtus, ūs, m.

urge, hortor, āri, ātus sum.

1. **use**, *verb.* ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, w. abl.

2. **use, make — of**, = use.

3. **use to come**, ventitō, āre, āvī, ātum.

4. **used to**, use the *imperfect tense*.

useful, ūtilis, e.

useless, inūtilis, e; [**for**, = ad w. acc.].

usual, hīs—, use suus, a, um.

utmost, summus, a, um.

V

Valerius, Valerius, ī, m.

valiantly, fortiter.

valley, vall-ēs, -is, f.

valor, vir-tūs, -tūtis, f.

value, of great—, māgnī.

1. **vanquish**, vincō, ere, vicī, victum;

superō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. **vanquished**, victus, a, um.

vehemence, vis, f. [9].

Venutius, Venūtius, ī, m.

venture, audeō, ēre, ausus sum.

Vesontio, Vesont-iō, -iōnis, f.

vessel, nāv-is, -is, f.

vicinity, express by using ab or ad, with names of towns.

victorious, vic-tor, -tōris, m.

victory, victōria, ae, f.

vigorous, make a—attack, māgnō impetū ag-gredior, ī, -gressus sum; ācri-ter impetum faciō, ere, fecī, factum.

vigorously, ācriter.

village, vicus, ī, m.

violence, vis, f. [9].

voice, vōx, vōcis, f.

voluntarily, ultrō.

W

wage, gerō, ere, gessi, gestum.

wagon, carrus, ī, m.

wait, wait for, expectō, āre, āvī, ātum, w. acc.

wall (of town), mūrus, ī, m.; (*of camp*), vallum, ī, n.

1. **want**, inopia, ae, f.

2. **wanting, be—**, dēsūm, deesse, dēfūi.

1. **war**, bellum, ī, n.

2. **war galley, war ship**, nāv-is (-is, f.) longa.

warn, moneō, ēre, uī, itum.

warriors = soldiers or forces.

waste, lay—, vastō, āre, āvī, ātum; [populor, āri, ātus sum].

watch, vigilia, ae, f.

way, in any—, ūllō modō.

wealth, divitiae, ārum, f. plur.

weapon, tēlum, ī, n.

weather, tempe-tās, -tātis, f.

1. **weep**, fleō, ēre, flevī, flētum.

2. **weeping**, flētus, ūs, m.

1. **weigh**, exāmīnō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. **weigh anchor**, nāves solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum, = *loose the ships*.

3. **weigh down**, op-primō, ere, -pressi, -pressum.

weight (=influence), auctōri-tās, -tātis, f.; (=heaviness), onus, oneris, n.; [*of spe (ified weight)*, pond-us, -eris, n.].

welfare, consult—of, cōsul-ō, ere, -uī, -tum, w. dat.

well-merited, meritissimus, a, um.

were to—, in II., Ex. 20, =ought, oportet.

what, quis, quae, quid.

whatever, omnīnō, adv.

when (relative), ubi, cum; (*interrogative*), quāndō.

whence, unde.

whenever, cum.

where, in II., Ex. 31, ibique, =and there.

whether, num; **whether . . . or**, utrum . . . an.

which (of two), uter, tra, trum; **from which**, unde.

while, dum; **or use pres. partic.**

who (relative), qui, quae, quod; (*interrogative*), quis, quae, quid.

whole, tōtus, a, um.

wholly, omnīnō; penitus.

why, cūr; quāre.

wide, lātus, a, um.

widely, lātē.

width, lātītū-dō, -dinis, f.

wife, con-junx, -jugis, f.; ux-or, -ōris, f.

1. **will, noun**, testāmentum, ī, n.

2. **will, against the —**, use invitus, a, um, adv. (=unwilling).

1. **willing, be—**, volō, velle, voluī.

2. **willing, be more —**, mālō, mälle, mālūi.

1. **win over**, conciliō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. **win, try to — over**, sollicitō, āre, āvī, ātum.

wing, cornū, ūs, n.

1. **winter, verb**, hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. **winter, noun**, hiems, hiemis, f.

3. **winter, pass the —**, hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum.

winter quarters, hiberna, ōrum, n. plur.

wipe out, dēl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.

wise, sapi-ēns, -entis.

1. **wish**, volō, velle, voluī.

2. **wish, not to—**, nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi.

with, cum, w. abl.; *or use abl. alone*.

1. **withdraw, withdraw oneself**, sē re-cipio, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum; dis-cēdō, ere, -cēssi, -cēssum; (*if from a ram-part*), dē-cēdō, ere, -cēssi, -cēssum.

2. **withdraw (=lead off)**, dē-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum.

1. **within** (*of time*), *use abl.*
 2. **within, be—a very little**, minimum abesse.
 1. **without**, sine, *w. abl.*
 2. **without, be—**, careō, ēre, uf, *w. abl.*
withstand, sustineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum; (*of storms*), ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
woad, vitrum, f, n.
woman, muli-er, -eris, f.
wont, be—to, *use perfect tenses of cōnsuēscō*, ere, -suēvī.
wood, silva, ae, f.
 1. **word, bring —**, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum.
 2. **word, bring back —**, renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum.
work, op-us, -eris, n.
workman, faber, brī, m.
worthy, dīgnus, a, um, *w. abl., or w. quī and subjunctive.*

- would that**, utinam, *w. subjunctive.*
 1. **wound**, verb, vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātum.
 2. **wound**, noun, vuln-us, -eris, n.
wretched, miser, era, erum.
wrong, injūria, ae, f.; [**wrongs done to . . . by . . .**, *use objective and subjunctive genitive*].
wrong-doing, injūria, ae, f.

Y

- yard**, three hundred yards = two hundred paces, (*roughly*).
year, annus, f, m.
yesterday, herī.
 1. **yet, tamen.**
 2. **yet, not—**, nōndum.
you, tū, vōs.
young man, adulēsc-ēns, -entis, m.
your, tuus, a, um; vester, tra, trum.

INDEX OF SUBJECTS AND WORDS.

(The references are to the Sections of Parts II. and III., not to the pages).

A

- Ablative absolute, II., 48-54, 125, (c); III., 85, (o); when not to be used, II., 52; substitutes for, II., 54.
- Ablative case, various uses of, II., 123-127; III., 85.
- Accent, page 3.
- Accompaniment, ablative of, II., 124, (b); III., 85 (e).
- Accusative and infinitive construction, III., 101, (b); in exclamations, III., 101, (b), vii.
- Accusative case, various uses of, II., 90-99; III., 83; Greek accusative, III., 83, (e), ii.
- Accusing and acquitting, construction with verbs of II., 67.
- Adjectives of first and second declensions, III., 10, 55; of third declension, III., 11, 56; declension of comparatives and superlatives, III., 12; comparison, III., 13, 57; agreement with noun, III., 9, (c), III., 78, 79, (b); used as a substantive, III., 88, (a); comparative and superlative sometimes only imply comparison, III., 88, (b); often translated by an adverb in English, III., 83, (d); used in a partitive sense in agreement with nouns, to denote the part or order, II., 114, (b); III., 88, (c).
- Adverbial accusative, II., 97, III., 83, (e); adverbial comparison, III., 57.
- Adverbs, formed from adjectives, III., 17; comparison, III., 17; formed from nouns and pronouns, III., 59; fossilized phrases, III., 59; use of, III., 108; used as prepositions, III., 83, (f), iii.
- Agent, dative of, with gerundives, II., 105; III., 82, (d); the primary and secondary agents, II., 128; dative of agent with perfect passives and in poetry, III., 82, (d), ii.
- Agreement, forms of, II., 9; III., 77-79; of verb, III., 79, (a); of predicate adjective, III., 79, (b); of predicate noun, III., 79, (c).
- Āiō, conjugation of, III., 72, (c).
Anaphora, III, 110, (k).
- animī, locative, III, 86, ii.
- Answer, *yes* or *no*, III., 108, iii.

- Antecedent, peculiarities of, II., 197; III. 93.
- Anticipation, accusative of, II., 208, N.B.
- Apodosis, II., 79-85; III., 99, (h), i.
- Apposition, II., 9, (a); III., 77.
- Archaic case-endings, III., 47, (c), 48, (c); verbal forms, III., 66.
- Arrangement of words and clauses, II., 1-8, 233; III., 110.
- Arsis* and *thesis*, III., 112.
- Asking, verbs of, with double acc., II., 71; III., 83, (f), i.; with *ut* or *ne*, II., 27; *ut* omitted, III., 99, (a), 2, i.
- Asyndeton*, III, 109, (e).
- Attraction of case in *ante diem*, II., 227; of relative, II., 197, (e); of mood, II., 220; III., 99, (k).

B

- Believing, verbs of, II., 55.
- bellī, locative use of, II., 125, (a), (2); III., 86, i.
- bōs, declension of, III., 9.

C

- Caesura and caesural pause, III., 114.
- Calendar, Roman, II., 221-229.
- Calends, II., 222, 223.
- capīō, conjugation of, III., 39.
- Cardinal numbers, III., 15; declension of, III., 14 and 16.
- Case-endings, synopsis of, III., 53; irregular, III., 47, (c), 48, (c), 49, (c), 50, (c), 51, (c).
- Cases, uses of, see under Nominative, Genitive, etc.
- causā, with genitive, III., 81, (d).
- Causal clauses, II., 165, 166, 167; III., 99, (g).
- Causal conjunctions, III., 74, ii., (d).
- Cause, ablative of, II., 123, (a); III., 85, (m).
- cavē, in prohibitions, II., 150.
- Characteristic, ablative of, II., 124 (b); III., 85, (c).
- Characteristic, genitive of, II., 115; III., 81, (e).
- Characteristic, relative clause of, II., 34, 35; III., 99, (c).

- Chiasmus*, III, 110, (*k*).
circumdō, double construction with, II., 74.
coepi, conjugation of, III., 72, (*a*).
 Cognate accusative, II., 96; III., 83, (*d*).
 Collective, noun with plural verb, II., 11; III., 79, (*a*), *i*.
 Commanding, verbs of, with dative, II., 55; followed by *ut* or *ne*, II., 27.
 Commands, how expressed, II., 149, 150; III., 98, (*a*), *i*.
Commodi et incommodi, dative of, II., 101.
 Comparative conjunctions, III., 74, *ii*, (*g*).
 Comparatives, declension of, III., 12; construction with, II., 123, (*c*); III., 85, (*f*).
 Comparison, ablative of, II., 123, (*c*); III., 85, (*f*); of adjectives, III., 13, 57; of adverbs, III., 17; conditional clauses of, III., 99, (*h*), *iv*.; relative clauses of, III., 99, (*e*), *iii*.
 Complementary infinitive, II., 19; III., 101, (*a*); extended use of, in poetry, III., 101, (*a*), *iii*.
 Complete action, tenses of, II., 201, 204, 205.
 Compound words, III., 76.
 Concessive clauses, II., 88; III., 99, (*i*).
 Concessive conjunctions, III., 74, *ii*, (*f*).
 Concords, II., 9; III., 77-79.
 Condemning, verbs of, II., 67.
 Conditional clauses, II., 78-87; III., 99, (*h*).
 Conditional conjunctions, III., 74, *ii*, (*e*).
 Conjugation of verbs, III., 27-46.
 Conjunctions, III., 74, 109.
 Consecutive clauses, II., 33; III., 99, (*b*).
 Consecutive conjunctions, III., 74, *ii*, (*b*).
Constructiō praeagnans, II., 125, (*a*), (*3*).
consulō, with dative or accusative, II., 59.
 Co-ordinate conjunctions, III., 74, *i*.
 Co-ordinating relative, II., 195; III., 93, *iii*.
 Correlatives, table of, III., 63; rendered by *as*, II., 197, (*f*).
 Crime, genitive of, II., 67.
cum (conjunction), *since* or *although*, II., 167; *when*, *whenever*, II., 168, 169, 170; *cum . . . tum*, II., 170, (*c*). See Temporal, Causal, and Concessive clauses.
cum (preposition), appended to pronouns, II., 7; with ablative of accompaniment and manner, II., 124, (*b*), (*1*); III., 85, (*e*).
- D**
- Dactyl and dactylic hexameter, III., 113.
 Dates, how expressed, II., 229.
 Dative, chief uses of the, II., 100-108; III., 82.
dēbeō, denoting duty or obligation, II., 160, (*b*).
 Declension of nouns, III., 1-9; of adjectives, III., 10-12, 14; of pronouns, III., 13-26; of numerals, III., 16.
 Defective nouns, III., 54, (*a*); adjectives, III., 56a; comparison, III., 57; verbs, III., 72.
 Definition, genitive of, III., 81, (*h*).
 Demonstrative pronouns, declension of, III., 22, 23; peculiar forms of, III., 61; uses of, II., 177-184; III., 92.
 Demonstrative pronouns and adverbs, table of, III., 63.
 Dependent questions, II., 43-47; III., 99, (*d*); clauses with indicative or subjunctive, III., 99; clauses in indirect narration, II., 214, (*a*), (*2*); III., 99, (*d*).
 Deponent verbs, III., 68; synopsis of conjugation, III., 40; gerundive of, II., 141, (*b*); peculiarities of, III., 68, (*b*), (*c*).
 Derivative suffixes, III., 75.
 Descriptions, imperfect used in, II., 199, (*c*), (*d*); III., 97, (*b*).
 Desiderative verbs, III., 75, *iii*.
deus, declension of, III., 9.
 Diaeresis, division of verse, III., 114; of syllables, III., 119.
 Difference, ablative of, II., 124, (*d*); III., 85, (*g*).
dignus, with ablative, II., 126; III., 85, (*d*); with a clause of characteristic, II., 35.
 Diminutive noun suffixes, III., 75, *i*, verbs, III., 75, *iii*.
 Direct object, II., 90, (*a*); III., 83, (*a*).
 Direct question, II., 40, 42.
 Disjunctive questions, II., 42, 44.
 Distance, accusative of, II., 92; III., 83, (*c*); ablative of, III., 85, (*g*), *i*.
 Distributive numerals, III., 58, (*c*).
domi, locative, II., 125, (*a*), (*2*); III., 86, *i*.
domus, declension of, III., 9.
dōnec, construction with, II., 172, 174.
dōnō, double construction of, II., 74.
 Dubitative subjunctive, II., 151, (*c*); III., 98, (*b*).
dum, how used, II., 171-174.
 Duration of time, II., 92, 125, (*b*); III., 83, (*c*), 85, (*b*), *iv*.
- E**
- Ecthipsis, III., 116, (*a*).
 Effecting, verbs of, II., 31.
 Elision or slurring, III., 116, (*a*).
 Emphasis, affected by the order of the words, II., 3, 5, 8, 233, (*a*); III., 110, (*b*), (*e*), (*h*), *iii*, (*i*).
 Enclitics, II., 7.
eō, conjugation of, III., 45; passive of, III., 71, (*a*); compounds of, III., 71, (*a*).
 Epistolary tenses, II., 204, (*c*).
 Ethical dative, II., 107; III., 82, (*f*), *iii*.

Euphonic changes in verb formation, III., 65.
 Exchanging, verbs of, II., 124, (c); III., 85 (i).
 Exclamations, accusative in, II., 98; III., 83, (h); accusative and infinitive in, III., 101, (b), vii.
exuō, construction of, II., 73.

F

fārl, conjugation of, III., 72, (e).
Favor, dative case after verbs meaning, II., 55.
 Fearing, verbs of, with *nē* (*nōn*), *ut*, II., 154; as modal verbs, II., 155.
 Feelings, genitive with verbs of the, II., 62; III., 81, (f), iii.; accusative with verbs of the, II., 94.
 Feet, in verse, III., 112.
ferō, conjugation of, III., 44; compounds of, III., 71, (b).
 Final clauses, II., 24-32; III., 99 (a).
 Final conjunctions, III., 74, ii., (a).
flō, conjugation of, III., 46; compounds of, III., 71, (c).
For, introductory, not translated into Latin, II., 207, (a).
fore ut, periphrasis with, II., 33, N.B.; III., 101, (b), v.
 Formation of words, III., 75, 76.
 Fractions, how expressed, III., 58, (e).
 Freedom, adjectives of, with ablative, III., 85, (h), i.
 Frequentative verbs, III., 75, iii.; tenses in frequentative clauses, II., 202, 204, (a).
frētus, with the ablative, II., 126; III., 85, (k), iii.
fruor and **fungor**, with the ablative, II., 65; III., 85, (a), ii.
ful, **fuera**, **fuera** in compound tenses, III., 97, (g), iii.
 Future conditions, II., 83; III., 99, (h), ii.
 Future infinitive, after verbs of hoping, etc., II., 13; III., 101, (b), iii.
 Future participle, II., 147; III., 102, (b).
 Future perfect, use of, II., 205; III., 97, (f); changed to pluperfect subjunctive, in indirect narration, after a secondary tense, II., 214, (a), (3).
 Future tense, use of, II., 200; III., 97, (c).

G

Gender, general rules for, III., 52; gender endings and exceptions, in the five declensions, III., 47, (b), 48, (b), 49, (b), 50, (b), 51, (b); agreement of adjectives and pronouns, II., 9, (a), (b), (c), (d); III., 78, 79.
 Genitive, uses of, II., 109-121; III., 81; use with adjectives extended in poetry, III., 81, (f), ii.
 Gerund, forms of, II., 133; III., 35; uses of, II., 133, 134; III., 103.
 Gerundive, forms of, I, I, 140; III., 34; uses of, II., 140-143; III., 104.

glōrior, ablative with, II., 65.
grātia, genitive with, III., 81, (i).
 Greek nouns, III., 47, (d), 48, (d), 49, (d).

H

habēō, with perfect participle, II., 203, 204, (b); III., 97, (g), i.
 Heroic verse, Latin, III., 113.
 Heteroclitite nouns, III., 54, (c).
 Heterogeneous nouns, III., 54, (b).
 Hexameter verse, III., 113.
 Hiatus, III., 116, (b).
hic, declension of, III., 23; peculiar forms of, III., 61; uses of, II., 177, 179, (a); III., 92, (a).
 Hindering, verbs of, II., 156-159.
 Historical infinitive, II., 131; III., 101, (d).
 Historical present, II., 198, (a), 28; III., 97, (a); sequence of tenses with, III., 107, iii.
 Hoping, verbs of, II., 13; III., 101, (b), iii.
 Hortatory (or Hortative) subjunctive, II., 151, (a); III., 98, (a).
humī, locative use of, II., 125, (a), (2); III., 86, i.

I

i-stems, declension of nouns, III., 6.
 Ictus in metre, III., 112.
idem, declension of, III., 23, 61; followed by *quī* or *āc*, II., 197, (f); uses of, III., 92, (e).
 Ides, II., 222, 223.
idōneus, with relative clause of characteristic, II., 35.
ille, declension of, III., 23; peculiar forms of, III., 61; uses of, III., 92, (c).
 Imperative mood, inflection of, III., 37, 38; uses of, II., 149, 150; III., 100; in indirect discourse, turned by subjunctive, II., 214, (a), (1).
 Imperfect tense, uses of, II., 199; III., 97, (b).
 Impersonal verbs, purely impersonal, III., 72, (g); intransitives used impersonally in passive, III., 72, (h), 96, (b); impersonal (or rather unipersonal) verbs, with clause or infinitive as subject, III., 72 (i).
 Inceptive or inchoative verbs, III., 75, iii.
 Incomplete action, tenses of, II., 198, 199, 200.
 Indeclinable nouns, gender of, III., 52, (c); list of, III., 54, (d); adjectives, III., 56a.
 Indefinite pronouns, II., 185-192; III., 26, 62, 95.
 Indefinite pronouns and adverbs, table of, III., 63.
 Indefinite relative pronouns and adverbs, table of, III., 63.
 Indicative mood, inflections of, III., 27, 28, 64, (c), 1; in principal clauses, III., 97; in dependent clauses, III., 99.

indignus, with ablative, II., 126; III., 85, (*d*); with clause of characteristic, II., 35.

Indirect discourse, II., 213-220; statements, questions and commands in, II., 214, (*a*), (1); subordinate clauses in, II., 214, (*a*), (2); pronouns in, II., 214, (*b*); adverbs in, II., 214, (*c*); real or apparent exception to rules, II., 215; conditional sentences in, II., 87. See also general rules in III., 106.

Indirect object, II., 100; III., 82, (*a*).

Indirect questions, II., 43-47; III., 99, (*d*).

Infinitive, forms of, III., 31, 32, 64, (*c*), 3; uses of, II., 12-23, 130-132; III., 101; extended use of, in poetry, III., 101, (*a*), iii.

Infinitive clauses, II., 206, N.B., 207, 211.

inquam (**inquit**), position of, II., 6; used parenthetically, II., 18; defective, III., 72, (*d*).

Inseparable particles, III., 76.

Instrumental ablative, II., 124; III., 85, (*a*).

Intensive verbs, III., 75, iii.

interdicō, construction of, II., 77.

interest, construction of, II., 63; III., 81, (*f*), iii.

Interest, dative of, II., 101, 102; III., 82, (*b*).

Interjection, accusative with, in exclamations, II., 98; III., 83, (*h*).

Interrogative particles, *nōne*, *num*, *-ne*, *utrum*—*an*, *annōn*, *ne*ne II., 40-44.

Interrogative pronouns, III., 25, 62, 94; uses of, III., 94.

Interrogative pronouns and adverbs, table of, III., 63.

Intransitive verbs, II., 55; used impersonally in the passive, II., 57, 142, 234, N.B.; III., 72, (*h*), 82, (*e*), iii., 96, (*b*).

-iō, verbs in, of third conjugation, III., 39; list of, III., 67.

ipse, declension of, III., 23; uses of, II., 184; III., 92, (*f*).

Irregular nouns, declension of, III., 9; case-endings of nouns, III., 47, (*c*), 48, (*e*), 49, (*c*), 50, (*c*), 51, (*c*); case-endings of adjectives of third declension, III., 56, (*b*); verbal endings, III., 66.

is, declension of, III., 22, 61; uses of, III., 89, ii.; 92, (*d*).

iste, declension of, III., 23; uses of, II., 178; III., 92, (*b*).

It, no equivalent in Latin, when used as an impersonal or representative subject, II., 9, (*e*), N.B.

itaque, position of, II., 6.

Iterative verbs, III., 75, iii.

-ius, adjectives with genitive singular in, III., 14.

J

jam, with present and imperfect, III., 97, (*a*), (*b*).

jubeō, construction with, II., 23.

Jūpiter, declension of, III., 9.

Jūsjurandum, declension of, III., 9.

Jūssū (defective), III., 54, (*a*); ablative of cause, III., 85, (*m*), ii.

juvō, takes accusative, II., 58.

K

Knowing, verbs of, with accusative and infinitive, II., 12; with interrogative and subjunctive, II., 45.

L

laedō, accusative after, II., 58.

licet, used in third person singular, III., 72, (*i*); used with an infinitive, to denote permission, II., 163; sometimes followed by subjunctive, II., 163, (*b*); used as concessive particle, III., 74, ii., (*f*), 99, (*i*), i.

Likeness, adjectives of, II., 102; III., 82, (*e*), v.

Limit of motion, accusative of, II., 93; III., 83, (*g*).

Locative ablative, II., 125; III., 85, (*k*).

Locative, the, II., 125, (*a*), (2); III., 86; noun in apposition with name of a place in the locative, III., 77, iii.

longinus, used without *quam*, II., 123, (*e*), (2); III., 85, (*f*), ii.

M

magis, comparison expressed by, III., 57.

māgnī, with verbs of estimating, III., 81, (*g*), i.

Making, verbs of, with two accusatives, II., 70; III., 83, (*f*), i.

mālō, conjugation of, III., 43; with complementary infinitive, II., 19.

Manner, ablative of, II., 124, (*b*); III., 85, (*e*).

Mastery, adjectives of, with genitive, II., 117.

māterfamiliās, declension of, III., 9.

māximē, comparison expressed by, III., 57.

Means, ablative of, II., 124, (*a*); III., 85, (*a*).

memini (defective), III., 72, (*b*); with genitive, II., 62; with accusative, II., 64; future imperative of, for present, III., 100, (*b*).

Memory, verbs of, II., 62, 64.

Metre of Virgil, III., 111-119.

Middle use of passive, III., 96, (*c*).

millitiae (locative), II., 125, (*a*), (2); III., 86, i.

mille (**millia**), how used, III., 58, (*f*); declension of *millia*, III., 16.

misereror, construction with, II., 62.

miseret, construction with, II., 68.

Months, names of, II., 222, footnote 1.

Moods, see Indicative, Subjunctive, etc.

Motion, limit of, II., 93; III., 83, (g); motion *from*, II., 123, (b), 129; III., 85, (h).

Multiplication, distributives used to express, III., 53, (c).

N

Natural gender, rules of, III., 52.

nātus, with ablative, II., 123, (a); III., 85, (l), i.

-ne (enclitic), II., 7; used in questions, II., 40, 41.

nē, with negative purpose, II., 25, 27, 29; with *dum*, II., 171; with imperative or subjunctive, to express prohibitions, etc., II., 152; omitted after *cavē*, II., 150; with clause of concession, III., 99, (r), ii.

nē . . . quidem, II., 6.

Nearness, adjectives of, with dative, III., 82, (e), v.

Necessity, how expressed, II., 161.

neque (or not), used in double indirect questions, II., 44.

nēfās, with ablative supine, II., 138.

nēmō, defective in case, III., 54, (a).

Neuter adjectives used substantively, III., 88, (a).

nisi, in conditional clauses, II., 78; with ablative absolute, II., 51; with single words, II., 89.

nōli (**nōlīte**), with infinitive, to express prohibitions, II., 150.

nōlo, conjugation of, III., 43; with infinitive, II., 19, 22.

nōmen **nōi**, construction with, II., 103; III., 77, viii.

Nominative case, III., 80.

nōn quod, nōn quō, with subjunctive, II., 165, (b), N.B.; III., 99, (g), iv.

Nones, II., 222, 228.

Nostr, **Nostrī**, **Nostrūm**, use of, III., 60, (b).

Nouns, declension of, III., 1-9; derivative suffixes used in forming, III., 75, i.

num, force of, II., 41; in dependent questions, II., 43.

Number, agreement in, adjective, II., 9, (c); pronoun, II., 9, (d); III., 93; verb, II., 9, (e), 10, 11.

Numeral adverbs, III., 58, (d).

Numerals, III., 15, 16, 58; method of combining, III., 58, (b).

O

Object, direct, II., 90; III., 83, (a); indirect, II., 100; III., 82, (a); noun clauses used as objects, II., 207-211.

Objective genitive, II., 112, 117, 120; III., 81, (d); with adjectives, III., 81, (f).

Oblique cases, page 218, footnote.

Oblique narration, see Indirect discourse.

ōdi, conjugation of, III., 72, (b).

oportet, used in third person, III., 72, (r); construction, II, 160, (c), 163, (b).

Optative use of subjunctive, III., 98, (a).

opus and **ūsus**, with ablative, III., 85, (a).

Ōrātiō obliqua, see Indirect discourse.

Order of words, II., 1-8; III., 110; of clauses, III., 110, (m).

Ordinal Numerals, list of, III., 15; declension of, III., 16.

P

paenitet, construction with, II., 68.

Participial phrases, value of, II., 148, (a).

Participles, II., 144-148, III., 64, (c), iv.; 102; with force of substantives, II., 148, (b); of adjectives, II., 148, (c); case-endings of present participle, III., 56, (b).

Particles, III., 74-76.

Partitive apposition, III., 77, iv.

Partitive genitive, II., 113, 114; III., 81, (b).

Passive voice, inflection of, III., 28, 30, 32, 34, 38; for impersonal use of, see Intransitive Verbs.

Paterfamiliās, declension of, III., 9.

Patronymics, III., 75, i.

Penalty, genitive of, II., 67; ablative of, III., 85, (i), i.

Perfect tense, uses of, II., 201, 202; III., 97, (d); perfect participle with *habēō*, II., 203, 204, (b); perfect participle with *fuī, fueram, fuerō*, III., 97, (g), iii.

Periodic sentence, page 115, footnote 1; II., 238; III., 110, (n).

Periphrastic conjugations, III., 69, 102, (b), 104, (a); indicative of, in apodosis, II., 85, N.B.

Permission, how expressed, II., 163.

Person, agreement of pronoun in, II., 9, (d); agreement of verb in, II., 9, (e), 10.

Personal construction of *verba sentiendī et declīrandī* in passive, II., 14; III., 101, (b), ii.

Personal endings, III., 64, (b).

Personal pronouns, declension of, III., 18, 19, 22; peculiar forms of, III., 60, (c); syntax of, II., 176, 180; III., 89.

Persuading, verbs of, with dative, II., 55; with *ut* or *nē* clause, II., 27; III., 99, (a), 2; with accusative and infinitive, II., 31.

Phrase, with value of a verb, II., 17, 55, 62; phrases, neuter, III., 52, (c).

Place, *from which*, II., 123, (b); III., 85, (h); *in which*, II., 125, (a); III., 85, (k); *to which*, II., 93; III., 83, (g).

Plenty, verbs of, II., 65, 78; III., 85, (a); adjectives of, II., 117, 126; III., 85, (a).

Pluperfect tense, uses of, II., 204; III., 97, (e).

Plural, nouns with special meaning in, III., 54, (e).

plus, declension of, III., 12; comparison of, III., 13; without *quam*, II., 123, (c), (2); III., 85, (f), ii.

Polysyndeton, III., 109, (e).

posse, used after *spērō*, II., 13; III., 101, (a), ii.
 Possession, dative of, II., 103; III., 82, (g).
 Possessive genitive, III., 8, (a).
 Possessive pronouns (adjectives), III., 21, 60, (c), 90; with appositive in genitive case, II., 184, (a); III., 77, ii.; containing the antecedent of a relative, III., 93, xi.
possum, conjugation of, III., 42; a modal verb, II., 19.
 Potential subjunctive, II., 151, (b); III., 98, (c).
 Predicate noun, II., 9, (b); III., 79, (c); adjective, II., 9, (c); III., 79, (b); genitive, II., 118; accusative, II., 70; ablative, II., 76, 124, (b), (3).
 Pregnant construction, II., 125, (a), (3). See also II., 177.
 Prepositions, III., 73, 87; in composition, III., 76.
 Present tense, uses of, II., 198; III., 97, (a).
 Price, genitive of, II., 118; III., 81, (g); ablative of, II., 124, (c); III., 85, (i).
 Primary tenses, II., 28; III., 107, footnote 1.
 Principal clauses, in the indicative, III., 97; in the subjunctive, III., 98.
 Principal parts of the verb, III., 64, (a).
 Prohibitions, II., 150; III., 98, (a), 1, 100.
 Promising, verbs of, with future infinitive, II., 13.
 Pronouns, declension of, III., 18-26, 60-62; uses of, II., 176-197; III., 89-95.
 Pronunciation of Latin, page 1.
prōsum, conjugation of, III., 70; takes the dative, II., 104.
 Protasis, II., 79; III., 99, (h), i.
 Purpose, expressed by subjunctive, II., 24-32; III., 99, (a); by supine after verb of motion, II., 136; III., 105, (a); by gerund and gerundive, II., 141, (a); III., 103, (c); 104, (b), iii.; 104, (c); dative of, II., 75, 101; III., 82, (c).

Q

Quaesō, conjugation of, III., 72, (f).
 Qualities, two, compared, II., 123, (c), (3).
 Quality, genitive of, II., 115, 118, III., 81, (c); ablative of, II., 124, (b), III., 85, (c).
 Quantity of syllables in scansion, III., 111, footnote 1; 115, footnote 2.
quam, modifies superlative, III., 88, (b); with comparatives, II., 123, (c), (1); III., 85, (f); compounded with *ante* and *prius*, II., 175, N.B.
quamquam, with indicative in concessive clause, II., 88, (b); III., 99, (i), i.
quamvis, with subjunctive, II., 88, (c); III., 99, (i), i.; joined with single word, II., 89.
 Questions, direct and indirect, II., 40-47; in indirect discourse, II., 214, (a), (1); dubitative and rhetorical questions, II., 151, (c); III., 98, (b).

qui, see Relative Pronoun.
quin, II., 36; with verbs of *doubting*, *preventing*, etc., II., 156-159, 208; III., 99, (b), i.
quisquam, II., 189; III., 95, vii.; declension of, III., 26.
quod (conjunction), II., 165; III., 99, (g), i.; introducing noun clauses, II., 209.
quōminus, II., 156-159, 208; III., 99, (a), 1, i.
quoque, position of, II., 6.
quum, see *cum* (conjunction).

R

Reciprocal relation, how expressed, III., 60, (e).
recorder, with accusative, II., 64.
 Reduplication of tense stems, III., 65.
 Reference, dative of, II., 106; III., 82, (f).
refert, construction of, II., 63.
 Reflexive pronoun, declension of, III., 20; peculiar forms of, III., 60, (c); of first and second person, III., 60, (a); uses of, III., 91; verbs, III., 83, (f), ii., 96, (c).
 Relative clauses, III., 99, (e).
 Relative pronouns, declension of, III., 24; uses of, II., 193-197; III., 93; peculiar forms of, III., 62.
 Relative pronouns and adverbs, table of, III., 93.
 Repeated action, present tense denotes, II., 198, (b); imperfect tense denotes, II., 199, (a); expressed in subordinate clauses by the perfect, II., 202; by the pluperfect, II., 204, (a). See also III., 97.
Rēspublica, declension of, III., 9.
 Result, clauses of, II., 33-39; III., 99, (b).

S

Saying, verbs of, construction, II., 12; used personally in the passive, II., 14.
 Scanning, III., 115.
Sē, uses and reference of, III., 91, ii., iii.
 Secondary tenses, II., 28; III., 107, footnote 1.
 Semi-deponents, III., 68, (b).
 Sense construction, II., 11; III., 79, (a), i.; 79, (b), ii., iii.
 Separation, ablative of, II., 123, (a); III., 85, (h); genitive of, in poetry, 81, (f), iv.
 Sequence of tenses, II., 28, 38, 46; III., 107.
 Service, dative of, II., 75, 101; III., 82, (c).
 Serving, verbs of, with dative, II., 55.
si, with conditional clauses, II., 78-87; III., 99, (h).
 Smell, verbs of, with accusative, II., 94.
sōlus, declension of, III., 14; with relative clause of characteristic, II., 35.
 Source, ablative of, II., 123 (a); III., 85, (l).
 Space, extent of, accusative of, II., 92; III., 83, (o).

Sparing, verbs of, with dative, II., 55.
 Specification, accusative of, II., 97; III., 83, (e); ablative of, II., 124, (e); III., 85, (d).
 Spondaic verse, III., 116, (b).
 Stems of the five declensions, III., 47, (a), 48, (a), 49, (a), 50, (a), 51, (a); present, perfect and supine stems of verbs, III., 64, (a).
 Subject, agreement of verb with, II., 9, (e), 10, 11; III., 79, (a); subject of infinitive, II., 12; of historical infinitive, II., 131.
 Subjective genitive, II., 111; III., 81, (c).
 Subjunctive mood, inflection of, III., 29, 30, 64, (c), 2; in principal clauses, III., 98; in dependent clauses, III., 99; in clauses of purpose, II., 24-32; of result, II., 33-39; in dependent questions, II., 43-47; in conditional clauses, II., 81-87; in concessive clauses, II., 88; independent uses of, II., 150-152; with verbs of *fearing, hindering*, etc., II., 154-159; with *quod*, II., 165, (b); with *cum*, II., 167, 169; with *dum, donec, quoad*, II., 171, 174; with *antequam* and *priusquam*, II., 175; with *quā*, II., 194, 196; in indirect discourse, II., 214, (a); of virtual indirect narration, II., 216, 220; III., 99, (e), i.; by attraction, II., 220; III., 99, (k). For synopsis of uses, see III., 98, 99.
 Subordinate conjunctions, III., 74, ii.
 Substantival use of infinitive, III., 101, (c).
 Substantive clauses, II., 206-211.
 Suffixes, derivative, III., 75.
sum, conjugation of, III., 41; peculiar forms of, III., 70; compounds of, III., 70.
sunt qui, with clause of characteristic, II., 183, (a).
 Supine, forms and uses of, II., 135-139; III., 105.
 Swearing, verbs of, II., 13.
 Syllabication, page 2.
 Synaeresis or synzesis, III., 119.
 Synalæpha, III., 116, (a).
 Syncopated verb forms, III., 66.
 Synesis, II., 11.

T

Teaching, verbs of, with two accusatives, II., 71.
 Telling, verbs of, with indirect question, II., 45; III., 99, (d).
 Temporal clauses, II., 168-170, 172-175; III., 99, (f).
 Temporal conjunctions, III., 74, ii, (c).
 Tense stems, formation of present, perfect and supine, III., 65.
 Tenses of the indicative, II., 198-205; III., 97; of the infinitive, II., 16, 132, (c); of participles, II., 144-147; of the subjunctive in indirect questions, II., 46; III., 106, (b); 107, (b).
terrā marique, without preposition, II., 125, (a), (2).

The . . . the, quō . . . eō, II., 124, (d); III., 85, (g), ii.
 Thinking, verbs of, construction with, II., 12; III., 101, (b).
 Third declension, accusative in *im*, ablative in *i*, genitive plural in *ium*, III., 49, (c).
 Threatening, verbs of, with future infinitive, II., 13; with dative, III., 69.
 Time, duration of, II., 92; III., 83, (c); time *when* and *within which*, II., 125, (b); III., 85, (b).
tōtus, declension of, III., 14; nouns with, in ablative without preposition, III., 85, (k), ii.
 Towns, limit of motion with names of, II., 93, (a); III., 83, (g); *place where*, with names of, II., 125, (a), (1); III., 85, (k), i.; *place from which*, with names of, II., 123, (b); III., 85, (h).
trāns, compounds of, with accusative, II., 95; compounds with two accusatives, II., 72.
 Transitive verbs, compounded with some prepositions, take dative and accusative, II., 69.

U

ubi, with perfect indicative, II., 54.
ullus, declension of, III., 14; uses of, II., 189.
ūnus, declension of, III., 14; plural of, III., 58, (a); followed by a clause of characteristic, II., 35.
 Urging, verbs of, construction with, II., 27; III., 99, (a), 2.
ūsus (*need*), with ablative, III., 85, (a), ii.
ut (**utī**), to denote concession, II., 88, (c); III., 99, (i), ii.; in final clauses, II., 25; III., 99, (a); in consecutive clauses, II., 33; III., 99, (b); substantive clauses introduced by, II., 208; a temporal conjunction, III., 74, ii, (c), 99, (f), i.; omission after certain verbs, II., 149, 163, (b); III., 99, (a), 2, 1.
uterque, declension of, III., 26; use of, II., 192.
utinam, with subjunctive, to express wish, II., 151, (a); III., 98, (a), 2.
ūtor, with ablative, II., 65; with two ablatives, II., 76; gerundive used impersonally, II., 142.
utrum . . . an, II., 42, 44.

V

Value, genitive of, III., 81, (g); ablative of, II., 124, (c); III., 85, (i).
Verba sentiendī et declinandī, construction of, II., 12; III., 101, (b); personal construction in passive, II., 14; III., 101, (b), ii.
 Verbal adjectives, with genitive, II., 117, (b); gerundive, II., 140-143; III., 104; participles, II., 144-148; III., 102.

Verbal nouns, infinitive, II., 130, 132; III., 101; gerund, II., 133, 134; III., 103; supine, II., 135-139; III., 105.

Verbs, conjugation of, III., 27-46; principal parts of, III., 64, (a); deponent, III., 68; semi-deponent, III., 68, (b); defective and impersonal, III., 72; irregular forms, III., 66; position of, II., 2; III., 110, (h); agreement of finite verb with subject, II., 9, (e).

Verse, III., 111.

vescor, with the ablative, II., 65.

Vester, Vestri, Vestrum, use of, III., 60, (b).

videor, dative with, III., 82, (d), iii.

Virtual indirect narration, II., 216, 220; III., 99, (e), i.

vīs, declension of, III., 9.

Vocative case, III., 84.

Voices, inflections of, III., 27-39; active and passive, III., 96.

volō, conjugation of, III., 43; a modal verb, II., 19; with accusative and infinitive, II., 22; with subjunctive, II., 151, (b).

W

Want, adjectives of, with ablative, II., 126; III., 85, (h), i.

Way by which, III., 85, (a), ii.

Wish, how expressed, II., 151, (a), 152; III., 98, (a), 2.

Words, formation of, III., 75, 76; order of, II., 1-8; III., 110.

Y

Year, months of, II., 222, footnote 1.

You, expressed by *tū* or *vōs*, III., 89, iv.

Your, expressed by *tuus* or *vester*, III., 90, ii.



182319

Carruthers, Adam and Robertson, J.C.
Primary Latin book.

LaL.Gr
C3196p.2

**University of Toronto
Library**

**DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET**

Acme Library Card Pocket
LOWE-MARTIN CO. LIMITED

